Contents

Preface xi

Linguistic map of Catalan xiii

Introduction 1

Pronunciation: The alphabet, The vowels, Principles of accentuation (Syllabification, Word stress), The consonants, Word liaison, Pronunciation and reading practice, Punctuation

Lesson 1 27

The noun and definite article, The indefinite article, Plurals, Uses of the definite article, Omission of the indefinite article, The verb ésser, Interrogation, Vocabulary, Exercises

Lesson 2 33

Contractions, Uses of de, More plurals, Days of the week, Use of plural nouns, Translating some and any, The verb tenir, Negation, Vocabulary, Exercises

Lesson 3 40

Verb conjugations and the infinitive, The Present tense, The first conjugation, Polite forms, Vocabulary, Exercises

Lesson 4 46

The second conjugation, The third conjugation, Reinforcing questions, Vocabulary, Exercises

Lesson 5 52

The adjective, Singular adjectives, Plural adjectives, Notes on the use of adjectives, Word order, The verb ser, Vocabulary, Exercises

Lesson 6 60

The imperfect tense, The verb dir, Use of the imperfect tense, Idiomatic use of acabar, Another contraction, Notes on the use of ja, Vocabulary, Exercises

Lesson 7 67

Possessives, Use of the possessives, Possessive pronouns, The verbs poder and voler, Partitive de, Vocabulary, Exercises

Lesson 8 74

The preterite tense: Periphrastic form, Imperfect and preterite, Definite article without a noun, Prepositions with de, Vocabulary, Exercises

Lesson 9 81

The future tense, Use of the future tense, The conditional tense, Use of the verb valer, Probability and obligation, Vocabulary, Exercises

Lesson 10 87

Compound tenses (Perfect tense, Pluperfect tense, Future and conditional perfect tenses, Perfect infinitive), Notes on the compound tenses, Perfect and preterite tenses, Vocabulary, Exercises
Contents

Lesson 11
Ésser and estar, Interjections, Vocabulary, Exercises

Lesson 12
Ésser and estar (continued), The passive voice, Saber and conèixer, Vocabulary, Exercises

Lesson 13
Negatives, Indefinite adjectives, Indefinite pronouns, Vocabulary, Exercises

Lesson 14
Demonstrative adjectives, Demonstrative pronouns, Uses of quin, The imperative, Position of adjectives, Two irregular verbs néixer and dur, Vocabulary, Exercises

Lesson 15
Relative pronouns (The unstressed relative, Stressed relatives, Compound relatives), Qui used as a noun, Other antecedents of a relative, The neuter article, Vocabulary, Exercises

Lesson 16
Strong pronouns, Weak object pronouns, Position and use of weak object pronouns, General note on the weak pronouns, Vocabulary, Exercises

Lesson 17
Adverbial pronouns en and hi, The neuter pronoun ho, Uses of the indirect object, Vocabulary, Exercises

Lesson 18
Combinations of weak pronouns, Combinations after the verb, Combinations before the verb, Groups of third person pronouns, Combinations of three pronouns, General remarks on the pronouns, Vocabulary, Exercises

Lesson 19
Reflexive verbs, Reflexive pronoun as direct object, Reflexive pronoun as indirect object, The verb anar-se’n, The reflexive in a passive sense, Translating to be and to become, Vocabulary, Exercises

Lesson 20
The comparative, Translating than in comparisons, Other terms of comparison, Superlatives, Agreement of the past participle, Vocabulary, Exercises

Lesson 21
The verb and its objects, Notes on some prepositions (A and en, Com and com a, Per and per a), Vocabulary, Exercises

Lesson 22
The present participle, The gerund, Progressive tenses, English idioms and the Catalan gerund, Vocabulary, Exercises

Lesson 23
Impersonal expressions, Impersonal verbs, Government of infinitives, Infinitives in adverbal expressions of time, Vocabulary, Exercises
Lesson 24
The present subjunctive, Use of the subjunctive, Vocabulary, Exercises

Lesson 25
The imperfect subjunctive, Sequence with the subjunctive, Use of the subjunctive (continued), Vocabulary, Exercises

Lesson 26
Adverbs, Position of adverbs, Comparison of adverbs, Temporal expressions, Vocabulary, Exercises

Lesson 27
Numerals, Dates, Age, Measurements, Prepositions and numbers, Time, Vocabulary, Exercises

Lesson 28
Numerals (continued), Partitives and fractions, Collective numerals, The conjunction sino, Exclamations, Vocabulary, Exercises

Lesson 29
The imperative and the subjunctive, The negative imperative, The subjunctive in a main clause, The simple preterite, Use of the simple preterite, The past anterior tense, Vocabulary, Exercises

Lesson 30
The verb after si, An alternative conditional, Suffixes, A note on fer and the substitute fumër, Vocabulary, Exercises

Appendix I
Irregular verbs

Appendix II
Combinations of two weak object pronouns

Appendix III
Proper names

Appendix IV
Suggestions for further reading and study

Key to the Exercises

Vocabulary

Catalan-English

English-Catalan

Index
Preface

Catalan, a member of the Romance family of languages, which includes French, Castilian (Spanish), Italian, Portuguese and Rumanian, is the mother tongue of about seven million people. It is spoken in the old principality of Catalonia (since 1977 the autonomous Generalitat de Catalunya, corresponding to the Spanish provinces of Barcelona, Girona, Tarragona and Lleida); the old kingdom of Valencia (consisting of the provinces of València, Castelló and Alacant); a strip of eastern Aragon; the Balearic Islands; the Co-Principality of Andorra; the old French province of Roussillon, and the city of l’Alguer (Alghero) in Sardinia. Within the Spanish territories mentioned, Catalan has joint official status with Castilian. A glance at the map on p. xiii will give a picture of the geographical situation and extent of the Catalan-speaking territories which cover roughly 60,000 square kilometres or 23,250 square miles. More people speak Catalan than speak Danish, Finnish, Norwegian, Lithuanian, Irish or Albanian; and the Catalan regions are greater in area than each of five modern European states—Denmark, Switzerland, Holland, Belgium and Albania. These facts alone would be sufficient to justify the appearance of a course in the modern Catalan language for English speakers. The real justification of this book, however, is supplied by two considerations of a different order: that the Catalan parts of the Mediterranean world are much visited by English-speaking tourists, and that the Catalans, through their language, are the inheritors of a culture and a living literary tradition of which many larger nations would be proud to boast.

In writing this book I have tried to keep in mind the requirements of those who are most likely to be its users: the interested traveller who wishes to learn the first language of the places he visits, and the student who comes to Catalan through the pursuit of his Hispanic or philological studies. Of course, the needs of the two do not coincide completely, and it might be felt that I have tended more towards catering for the latter. If this is so my defence would be that, while the elements of a phrase book can be culled from a serious grammar, the reverse is certainly not true. This should not be understood to mean, however, that Teach Yourself Catalan is intended only for specialists. On the contrary, the brief supplied by the title has been taken very seriously. Thus I have allowed myself to assume in the reader an acquaintance with fundamental grammatical concepts but not necessarily a previous knowledge of other foreign languages. Those who are familiar with other Romance languages will be able to form their own conclusions about family resemblances between these and Catalan. I have tried to make the examples and exercises as varied and as interesting as possible, using them to illustrate a clear and thorough coverage of the basic grammar and of common idioms. The range of vocabulary introduced has been based to a large extent on the findings of J. Llobera on Catalan word frequency (see Appendix IV, 1, p. 278). The student who works carefully through this book should achieve a sound and adaptable proficiency in the language.

Standard Catalan is centred on the language of Barcelona and it is this which is studied here. The space available does not allow coverage of the variations of dialect and accent which Catalan, like all major languages, displays. The linguistic map will give an initial picture of the principal dialectal divisions of the language, and there are works referred to in Appendix IV, 1, to guide those who wish to pursue further some of these aspects. Suffice it to say, though, that standard Catalan is understood throughout the various regions and that the written language is completely uniform.

The titles of studies of the Catalan language that I have used in preparing this book are incorporated in Appendix IV,
as a guide to further reading for students. I consider this to be the most appropriate form of acknowledgment. In addition I have used certain features of other works in the Teach Yourself language series, and I am grateful for her advice to the author of the Italian volume, Dr. Kathleen Speight. For some aspects of presentation I have been guided by Professor H. Ramsden’s *An Essential Course in Modern Spanish*.

In the course of writing *Teach Yourself Catalan* I have incurred numerous debts of gratitude which I am happy to acknowledge here. Joan-Lluís Marfany was involved in the planning stage and then generously helped me with his comments on the final draft. Max Wheeler gave me his expert assistance in the preparation of the phonetic introduction and Paul Russell-GBett made several helpful comments on the typescript of this part. Arthur Hunt came to my rescue in the preparation of the linguistic map. Maria Solà and Anna Maria Solé patiently endured my queries and consultations about their native language, and gently corrected some of my abuses of it. My other colleagues in the Department of Hispanic Studies at Sheffield University have done much more than merely tolerate the enthusiasms of a catalanófil in their midst: John England, in reading through the completed typescript and helping to improve a number of points, became the book’s first, distinguished guinea-pig. Jean Hampshire skilfully typed most of the first draft and Valerie Tibbenham most of the second and final one. My wife throughout has shown understanding and enthusiasm. Amadeu Soberanas has given me constant encouragement and bibliographical help. To all of these I am sincerely grateful. I am indebted, finally, to Editorial Selecta and to Pere Calders and Ramon Folch i Camarasa for permission to use the passages from *Cròniques de la veritat oculta* and *La maroma*.

*Sheffield, 1975*
2 Catalan

English vowels. It is necessary to avoid the English (and American) tendency to slur or diphongize single vowel sounds. The five vowel letters represent a range of ten distinct sounds.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Letter</th>
<th>Phonetic symbol</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a</td>
<td>[á]</td>
<td>1. Stressed a is an open vowel between standard English cat and father: avi [áβi], mà [má], pare [páɾə], àpat [ápat].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e</td>
<td>[é]</td>
<td>2. Unstressed a has a neutral sound, pronounced like a and e in the endings of the English sugar, butter: casa [káɾə], porta [póɾta], patata [páɾáta]. This is also the usual pronunciation of unstressed e.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i</td>
<td>[i][i]</td>
<td>Stressed e has two sounds:</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Open e is like e in the English yet, sell: cel [sél], terra [téɾɾə], cafè [kafé].
2. Closed e is like e in the English they but without the final ‘glide’ sound: fet [fet], cent [séɾɾə], llet [kéɾə], procès [prusés].

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>o</th>
<th>[ə]</th>
<th>3. Unstressed e has the same sound as unstressed a: recte [rrékə], exemple [aɾazemplə], carretera [karrəɾəɾə]. Before a, however, unstressed e has the value of closed e: teatre [teəɾə], real [rréɾə].</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

The alphabet

The Catalan alphabet is basically the same as the English one, except that:

1. k and w are found only in assimilated foreign words and their derivatives: kàiser, clown, wagnerià.
2. Except in certain proper names (e.g. Ruyra, Nova York) the letter y is found only in the combination ny: Catalunya, Espanya, lluny.

The vowels

The Catalan vowels are sharper and simpler in quality than

Introduction

PRONUNCIATION

It is not easy to learn how to speak any language from a book. There can be no substitute for conversation practice with native speakers in ‘real’ situations. As a preparation for this, however, the following pages offer a simple guide to the elements of Catalan pronunciation which should provide a sound basis for the development of oral proficiency in the language. When he comes to study the chapters on grammar and to do the exercises, the student is advised to read aloud the Catalan words and sentences as he meets them. At first some referring back to this Introduction will be involved. This is intended, since familiarity with the sounds of the language will be gained only through repeated practice and revision. After a while it should be found that looking back becomes less necessary as the main features of Catalan pronunciation are memorized.
4 Catalan

We can now summarize the distinctive vowel sounds of standard Catalan:

**Spelling and pronunciation**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Letter</th>
<th>Symbol</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>[á]</td>
<td>1. gran [grán]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[é]</td>
<td>2. tres [trés]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[è]</td>
<td>3. cec [sék]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[ø]</td>
<td>4. la [la], el [el]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[ï]</td>
<td>5. dividir [diβiðiɾ]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[ó]</td>
<td>6. groc [grók]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[ó]</td>
<td>7. fons [fóns]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[u]</td>
<td>8. muntanya [muntáɲa], gustos [gústus]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

And in addition the two semiconsonants:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Letter</th>
<th>Symbol</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>[j]</td>
<td>9. dèiem [dèjəm]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[w]</td>
<td>10. diuen [diwən]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Principles of accentuation**

It is already clear from our survey of the vowels that very important in Catalan pronunciation is the question of word stress. In all Catalan words, except monosyllables, one syllable will be pronounced with more stress than the other(s). (This is expressed in our phonetic transcriptions by the accent mark ' over the vowel that takes the stress.) Correct pronunciation obviously depends upon the proper placing of stress. To appreciate the workings of this process it is necessary to understand how a Catalan word breaks up into syllables.

**Syllabification**

In general a Catalan word has as many syllables as it has vowels. Thus temps [teməs], ell [ɛʎ] bò [bȯ] and mul [muʎ] are monosyllables; dia [di-a], pena [pɛ-na], portar [pur-tar] have two syllables; aviat [a-βi-át], president [pre-zi-ðen],

---

**Letter** | **Phonetic symbol** | **Pronunciation**
--- | --- | ---
[j] | 2. Unstressed i between two vowel sounds is like the consonant y in the English yes: noia [nɔia], feien [fɛen].
[o] | Stressed o has two sounds:
[ó] | 1. Open o is like o in the English coffee: bo [bɔ], obra [ɔβɾa], escola [eskolə].
[ó] | 2. Closed o is like o in the English note without the final [w] glide: boca [bɔkɔ], fosc [fɔsk], senyor [səɲɔr]
[u] | 3. Unstressed o sounds approximately between oo in the English foot and oo in boot: rodó [ruðo], orella [uɾeʎa], mallorquí [maʎurki].
[u] | 1. Whether stressed or unstressed, but slightly longer in the former case, Catalan u sounds approximately between u in the English put and u in rude, the same as unstressed Catalan o:
[w] | (stressed) fum [fʊm], junta [ʒuɲta], madur [məðʊr]; (unstressed) natural [naɾurəl], fumar [fumə].
[gu, gu] | 2. Between two vowels u sounds like the consonant w in the English away: creuen [kɾəwən], estueja [ɛstiweɾa].
gü, gü | 3. For the pronunciation of u after g and q, see below under Diphthongs (p. 5), Written accent marks (p. 8), g 1 (pp. 11-12), g 2 (p. 12) and qu (pp. 14-15).
Introduction

duana [du-á-na] three syllables; història [is-tó-ri-ə], bicicleta [bi-si-klé-tə] four syllables, and so on.

Diphthongs. Exceptions to the above rule are certain groups of two vowels which together constitute a single syllable. These diphthongs are: ai, ei, oi, ui, au, eu, ie, ou, uu. The first vowel has its normal value (stressed or unstressed) and the second i or u is transcribed as a semiconsonant [i] or [u] respectively. Thus llei [léj] and ou [5w] are monosyllables; aire [ái-rə] and capiú [káp-tiw] words of two syllables. When i or u does not form a diphthong with the preceding vowel this is indicated by an accent mark ` or by a diaeresis " (see pp. 7-8): vel [bə-l], veina [bə-l-n], agrafa [ə-yrə-fə]. (Certain prefixes, suffixes and verb endings do not form diphthongs: reunir [rə-u-n], coincidir [kə-in-si-dí]; egoisme [ə-yu-iz-mə], altruista [ə-l-tru-ist-tə]; agrair [ə-yrə-ə], fruint [fru-in].)

Another group of diphthongs is ua, üe, üi, uo after g or q, thus: guant [gwán], quatre [kwá-trə], aigua [áj-ywə], agües [áj-ywəs], quota [kwó-tə]. Without the diaeresis gu, qu before e or i represents just the [g] or [k] sound with silent u: see under g (pp. 11-12) and qu (pp. 14-15).

Division into syllables. The first step is to look at the vowels of a word in the way just explained. Unstressed i and u standing between vowels behave like consonants and form a syllable with the vowel which follows them: joia [jɔ-ja], diuen [di-won]. Then the separation of consonants is made as follows:

1. A single consonant between two vowels forms a syllable with the second vowel: petita [pə-ti-tə], mecànic [mə-ká-nik], telèfon [tə-lé-fun].

2. Of two or more consonants between vowels the last consonant (or the last two if they are bl, br, cl, cr, dr, fl, fr, gl, gr, pl, pr, tr) forms a syllable with the second vowel: liista

6 Catalan

[xis-tə], programa [pru-yrá-mə], aplicar [ə-pli-ká], ofendre [u-fén-dra].

3. The groups gu, qu, ny, ll are not divided: aigua [áj-ywə], aquelles [ə-ké-ˈəs], canya [ká-ˈnə].

4. Compound words with prefixes are divided according to components and thus often constitute exceptions to 1 and 2 above: desanimat [daz-ə-ni-mát], nosaltres [nuz-át-trəs].

For purposes of dictation or dividing a word at the end of a line of writing, the rules of syllabification are strictly observed.

Word stress

A few monosyllables (mainly articles, certain conjunctions, pronouns and prepositions) are unstressed: el [əl], la [la], un [un], que [kə], i [i], et [ət], es [əs], us [us], hi [i], li [li], en [ən], a [ə], de [də], per [por], amb [əm].

Other monosyllables are stressed: sac [sák], temps [təms], trist [trist], lloc [lɔk], dur [dú].

Words of more than one syllable are stressed according to the following rules:

1. The stress falls on the penultimate (next to last) syllable of words ending in:

(a) a vowel but not a diphthong: costa [kós-tə], aire [ái-rə], companyia [kum-pə-ni-ə], espardenya [əs-pər-ðə-ˈnə];
(b) a vowel (excluding diphthongs) + s: ostres [ɔs-tres], vicis [bi-sis], divendres [di-βèn-dres], capaços [kə-pá-sus];
(c) -en or -in: examen [agz-ə-mən], origen [u-ri-ˈʒən], passin [pá-sin].

2. The stress falls on the final syllable of words which end in:

(a) a diphthong or a diphthong + s: espaï(s) [əs-pai(ʃ)], estiu(s) [əs-tiu(ʃ)], dinou [di-nəw];
(b) any group of consonants; n after a, o or u; any other
Introduction

single consonant except s: despatx [des-patʃ], seran [ser-ran], algum [al-yum], final [fin-nal], cansat [kan-sat], costum(s) [kus-tum(s)], foraster(s) [fur-as-ter(s)].

3. In all other cases stress is indicated by a written accent.

Written accent marks. When a word is not pronounced according to rules 1 and 2 above, the stressed vowel is marked by a written accent which, in the cases of e and o, shows in addition whether it is an open or closed vowel. As a guide to accentuation and spelling, remember that a can take only a grave accent ̀; that i and u can take only an acute accent `; that e and o can take either a grave or an acute, according to whether their pronunciation is open (è [e], ò [ɔ]) or closed (é [é], ó [o]).

Words whose stress falls on the antepenultimate syllable always bear a written accent. Read aloud the following words and observe how the accent mark indicates stress which would not be shown otherwise:

1. memòria [ma-mo-ri-ə], pèrdua [per-du-ə], màquina [ma-ki-na].
2. camí [ka-mi], cançó [kan-so], pagès [pa-ge-s], català [ka-ta-la].
3. intí [in-ti], fàcil [fa-sil], telèfon [te-le-fun].

Some words which have no accent in the singular are written with one in the plural form, in consequence of the rules above: (examen) exàmens [ez-am-ne-s], (origen) orígens [u-ri-ge-s].

Adverbs ending in -ment and certain compound words bear a secondary stress: fàcilment [fa-sil-men], qualsevol [kwat-so-bal], contracorrent [kon-tra-ku-ren].

The diaeresis has two uses in Catalan. When i or u follows a vowel with which it does not form a diphthong, the diaeresis indicates this if the case is not affected by the rule for the written accent. Veí is pronounced as two syllables [ba-i], and the accent is required to show that the latter is stressed. In the feminine form veïna, with the diaeresis showing that three syllables are pronounced [ba-i-na], no accent is needed because stress falls naturally on the penultimate syllable. (Without the diaeresis veïna would be pronounced [be-na].) Thus we have agrària [ə-γra-i-ə], construir [kus-trui-tə] and continuïtat [kun-ti-nui-tə], but païs [pa-is] and then països [pa-is-zos]. The diaeresis is used also to indicate that u is pronounced [u] in the groups güi, güi, güi, güi. Thus, gestió [kwest-ti-o], següent [se-ywen], arguir [ar-ywi], but què [ke], guerra [ge-rwa].

The other diacritical marks used in Catalan are the cedilla ç (ce trençada) and the dot in ñi, both of which denote a particular pronunciation; see under ç (pp. 10–11) and ñ (p. 13) respectively.

It should also be remarked that a written accent is occasionally used to differentiate between words with different meanings but otherwise identical spellings. Thus bé (well) and be (sheep); dóna (he gives) and dona (woman); nét (grandson) and net (clean).

As we have seen from the foregoing, written accents have important functions as guides to both pronunciation and spelling, and they should be treated with respect.

The consonants

Consonants can be classified as voiced and unvoiced, the former being produced with a vibration of the vocal cords and the latter without such vibration. There are six unvoiced sounds, with voiced equivalents, and all other consonants are voiced:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unvoiced</th>
<th>Voiced</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Consonant</td>
<td>Pronunciation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c</td>
<td>[k]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>p</td>
<td>[p]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Introduction 9

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Letter</th>
<th>Phonetic symbol</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>t</td>
<td>[t]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f</td>
<td>[f]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>s, ss, ç</td>
<td>[s]</td>
<td>z [z]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>x, ix</td>
<td>[ʃ]</td>
<td>j [ʒ]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

‘Plosives’ or ‘stops’ are consonants whose sound is produced in the following manner: there is a complete closure of the air passage, the air is compressed and on release of the closure issues suddenly with an explosive sound or ‘plosion’. The plosives are:

Unvoiced     Voiced

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Letter</th>
<th>Phonetic symbol</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>c</td>
<td>[k]</td>
<td>g [g]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>p</td>
<td>[p]</td>
<td>b, v [b]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>t</td>
<td>[t]</td>
<td>d [d]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This initial classification of the consonants will be referred to in the course of our description of pronunciation.

1. Before e or i sounds approximately like c in the English acid: cèntim [séntim], acer [əsər], comercant [kumərsiən].

2. In most other positions sounds like c in the English cat: cama [káma], taca [tákə], caràcter [kərəktər], amic [amik]. Note how the [k] and the [s] sounds come together in accent [aksən].

3. The [k] sound is doubled when c stands between a stressed vowel and l: article [artiklə], but clau [kləw], aclair [əklər].

4. Before a voiced consonant, sounds voiced (see g 1 below): anècdota [snégətə].

5. Silent after n at the end of a word; the n is then pronounced like ng in the English strong: blànc [blaɲ], cinc [sɪn], bancs [bants]. See under n 2 (p. 14) below.

6. Before a voiced consonant, sounds voiced (see g 1 below): anècdota [snégətə].

7. Silent after n at the end of a word; the n is then pronounced like ng in the English strong: blànc [blaɲ], cinc [sɪn], bancs [bants]. See under n 2 (p. 14) below.

8. Silent after n at the end of a word; the n is then pronounced like ng in the English strong: blànc [blaɲ], cinc [sɪn], bancs [bants]. See under n 2 (p. 14) below.

9. Silent after n at the end of a word; the n is then pronounced like ng in the English strong: blànc [blaɲ], cinc [sɪn], bancs [bants]. See under n 2 (p. 14) below.

10. Catalan

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Letter</th>
<th>Phonetic symbol</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>b</td>
<td>[b]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5. In all other cases b has a sound which is ‘softer’ than [b], rather like an English b pronounced with only the very slightest contact between the lips: probable [prəbəbla], dèbil [dɛbi], abracar [əbraɾəsə], herba [əɾba], bisbe [biɾbe].
### Introduction

#### Letter | Phonetic symbol | Pronunciation
--- | --- | ---
[z] | 2. Sounds voiced before a voiced consonant: felïçment [fəlizmèn].
[d] | 1. At the beginning of a word or after n, m, l or a plosive, sounds rather like d in the English do; the Catalan sound is more 'dental', produced with the tip of the tongue on the teeth: dependent [dəpəndənt], divendres [diβəndrəs], fàlda [fälda], capdavall [kəbdəβəl].
[t] | 2. Sounds like its unvoiced equivalent (t in the English tea) at the end of a word or preceding an unvoiced consonant: fred [frɛt], liquid [lɪkɪt], adquirir [ətkɪri].
[θ] | 3. Sounds approximately like th in the English this in most other positions: vida [βiða], perdó [pəɾðo], dedicar [dədikə].
— | 4. Silent at the end of a word after l or n, and in the group rds: dividend [diβiðənd], perds [pərs]. See also under t 3 (p. 17).
[f] | Sounds always like f in the English fun: família [fəməliə], bufar [bufə], escalf [əskəlf].
[g] | 1. g (+ a, o, u, r, l) at the beginning of a word or after n, sounds like g in the English get: gana [gənə], gorra [gɔrrə], gust [gust], guant [gwənt], ningú [nɪŋu].

---

#### Catalan

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Letter</th>
<th>Phonetic symbol</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>gu (+ e, i)</td>
<td>In an initial position gu (+ e or i) gives this [g] sound: guerra [ɡərə], guia [ɡiə].</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[γ]</td>
<td>2. When g (+ a, o, u, r, l), gu (+ e, i) is not in an initial position, nor preceded by n, it sounds softer and less explosive, with less contact of the vocal organs than in the g sound of English mug: plegar [ploɣə], negoci [næɣəsi], regular [rəɣərə], aigua [əɣə], agradar [əɣəɾəðə], Verdaguer [βəɾðəɣəɾə], seguir [səɣər].</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gu ( + e, i)</td>
<td>The diaeresis indicates that the ò is pronounced [w] and forms a diphthong with a following e or i: seguent [səɣənt], argúr [əɾɣəɾ].</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[gg]</td>
<td>3. Usually sounds double between a stressed vowel and 1: regla [ɾəɣəɾə], segle [ɾəɣələ].</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[3]</td>
<td>4. Before e or i sounds like s in the English measure, vision (cf. Catalan j before a, o, u): germà [gəɾmə], girar [ʒirə], metge [mətə], bogeria [buɾəɾə].</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ig [tʃ]</td>
<td>5. Sounds like tʃ in the English scratch in the endings -aig, -eig, -oig, -uig: maig [məʃtʃ], lleig [ʎətʃ], roig [ɾətʃ], fuig [fuʃtʃ]. The ending -ig when stressed after a consonant is pronounced [ʃtʃ]: mig [mʃtʃ], desig [dazʃtʃ].</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[k]</td>
<td>6. At the end of a word (except in the cases mentioned in 5 above and in 7 below), sounds unvoiced like c in the English cat: llarg [ʎəɾə], càstig [kəʃtik], pròleg [prɔlə].</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Letter</td>
<td>Phonetic symbol</td>
<td>Pronunciation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>h</td>
<td></td>
<td>Always silent: home [əmə], hospital [uspitəl].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>j</td>
<td>[ʒ]</td>
<td>Sounds always like s in the English measure, vision: jardí [ʒərdi], mitja [midʒə], objecció [ubʒəksiə], joc [ʒɔk]. jugar [ʒuʒə].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>k</td>
<td>[k]</td>
<td>Appears only in assimilated foreign words; sounds always like k in the English kit: kòdak [kədək].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>l</td>
<td>[l]</td>
<td>1. At the beginning of a word, after a consonant or between vowels, sounds like l in the English lit: litre [ˈlɪtə], blau [blɔː], ample [ˈæmplə], filla [ˈfiʎə]. 2. Between a vowel and a consonant, or at the end of a word, l is pronounced by drawing back the tongue, giving a sound which resembles l in the English fault: el [əl], altre [əˈtɾə], vols [bɔls], malalt [mɔləlt], escalit [əskəlɨt], pernil [pərˈniːl]. 3. Double l with a dot between l·l is pronounced double: intel·ligent [inˈtɛllizənt], novel·la [nuˈβɛlla]. 4. Double l without the dot is pronounced rather like lli in the English</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ll</td>
<td>[ll]</td>
<td>1. Sounds in most positions like p in the English pot: preparar [prəˈpəɾə], pla [pla], vespre [ˈbɛsprə]. 2. Silent after m at the end of a word or between m and another consonant except l or r: camp [kəm], temps [tɛms], assumpte [əsəmˈtuθe].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>l·l</td>
<td></td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qu</td>
<td>[k]</td>
<td>Without a diaeresis over the u before</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n</td>
<td>[n]</td>
<td>1. Before a vowel and in all other positions except those listed below, sounds approximately like n in the English none: nas [nəs], plena [pləˈna], junta [ʒʊntə], parent [ˈpærənt]. 2. Before final c or g, or before initial c, qu [k], or g [g] of another syllable, sounds like ng in the English strong: cinc [sɪŋ], sang [səŋ], encara [ənˈkəɾa], tranquil [trəŋˈkilt], enganyar [ənˈɡəɾia]. 3. Before f or v, sounds like m: enfadat [ənfəˈdət], canvi [kənˈvi], enviari [ənˈviəri]. 4. The group ny is inseparable and sounds rather like ni [ŋi] in the English onion: bany [ˈbəɲ], senyal [ˈsəɲəl].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>m</td>
<td>[m]</td>
<td>Sounds usually like m in the English man: mare [məɾə], amo [əmə], desmèrit [dəzəməɾət], comte [kəmtə], premsa [pɾɛmsə].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ny</td>
<td>[ŋ]</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Catalan

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Letter</th>
<th>Phonetic symbol</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>e or i, qu</td>
<td>sounds like k in the English kit: què [kê], quinze [kínzə].</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qu, qü [kw]</td>
<td>Otherwise qu before a or o and qü before e or i is pronounced like qu in the English quit: quatre [kwátrə], quota [kwóta], qüestió [kwéstió].</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>r</td>
<td>[r] 1. Single r in most positions is pronounced with a single vibration, stronger than any English r, and approximating to the Scottish pronunciation: cara [kára], drap [dráp], comerç [kumérs], crim [krím]. 2. Sounds double and is strongly rolled at the beginning of a word, or after l, m, n, s: roba [ròβə], regió [règió], somriure [sumrèiuə], enraonar [onr̥aonər]. Double rr is given the same pronounced trill: terra [těrrə], arròs [arròs]. 3. Final r is pronounced in some instances and is silent in others. There is no comprehensive rule which covers every case. The final r is pronounced at the end of most learned words and of others like amor [əmòr], car [kár], cor [kör], mar [már], pur [púr]. But r is silent at the end of many words like dur [dúr], flor [flòr], por [pòr], ahir [əl], carrer [kərər], and their plural forms durs [dúrs], flors [flòrs], etc. Also silent at the end of infinitives: cantar [kəntər], saber [səβər], dormir [durmir] (but also silent in the infinitive form: cantar-se [kəntəɾə-se], saber-ho [səβəɾə-ho], etc.). The first r is not pronounced in arbre [əɾβɾə]; in the verb prendre and derivatives (aprender, sorprendre, etc.) the first r is silent in the infinitive [pɾəndɾə] and in tenses formed from the infinitive stem, prendre [pɾəndɾə], prendria [pɾəndɾiə], but is pronounced in other parts, prenc [pɾəɾ], prenia [pɾəˈniə].</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>s</td>
<td>[s] 1. At the beginning and end of a word, sounds like s in the English say; within a word it is also generally pronounced [s] unless standing between vowels or before a voiced consonant: sis [síz], sastre [səstra], ensenyar [ənˈsəɲəɾ], capses [kəpˈses]. Between vowels this unvoiced sibilant sound [s] is represented by ss: assaig [əsəˈtʃ], massa [məsə] (cf. also c 1, p. 10, and ç 1, p. 10). 2. Between vowels or before a voiced consonant, sounds voiced like s in the English rose: casa [káσə], mesos [məzə̃], bisbe [bɪˈbə], separatisme [səpəɾaˈtismo]. Also pronounced [z] in words like enfonsar [əmfonˈsəɾ], endinsar [əndinzəɾ].</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ss</td>
<td>[z]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>t</td>
<td>[t] 1. Sounds in most positions approximately like t in the English toast, but more 'dental', being produced with the tip of the tongue on the teeth: total</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Letter</td>
<td>Phonetic symbol</td>
<td>Pronunciation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>v</td>
<td>[b]</td>
<td>1. At the beginning of a word or after</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>n, sounds like b in the English boat:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>vida [biˈða], vaca [bəˈka], viu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>[biˈu], enviar [əmbiˈa], conversa [kumbəˈrsa].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f</td>
<td>[f]</td>
<td>2. In all other positions, sounds ‘softer’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>and is formed almost without contact</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>between the lips (see b 5, p. 10):</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>aviat [əβiˈa], núvol [nʊˈβul], servir</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>[səɾβiˈl], desviar [daβiˈa].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>w</td>
<td>[b][β]</td>
<td>Appears only in assimilated foreign</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>words and is pronounced like a b or v:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>wàter [bəˈteɾ], darwinisme</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>[dəɾβinɪˈzma].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>x</td>
<td>[ʃ]</td>
<td>1. At the beginning of a word or after</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>a consonant, sounds like sh in the</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>English shot: xocar [ʃuˈkaɾ], xiular</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>[ʃiˈluɾ], punxa [puˈnxa] (cf. tx in 2, below).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2. Has the same sound [ʃ] when preceded</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>by a vowel + i; the i is silent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>except after gu: guix [ɡiˈɾ], calaix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>[kaˈɾ], això [əˈʃo], mateix [maˈteɾ],</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>coix [koˈɾ], fluix [fluˈɾ].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>3. Sounds in other instances like x in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>the English box or like gs in the English</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>legs, according to position and context:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>explicar [eksplikəɾ], fixar [fiksəɾ]; but</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>èxit [eɡzit], exàmen [eɡzəˈmen].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>y</td>
<td>[i]</td>
<td>Appears only in assimilated foreign</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>words and in certain proper names;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>sounds always as would i in the same</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>position: yacht [ʃuˈɾt], Ruyra [ɾuˈɾa].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>For the group ny, see under n 4, p. 14.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>z</td>
<td>[z]</td>
<td>Sounds always like z in the English</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>zoo: zero [ˈzɛɾu], tretze [tɾeˈɾa].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Note that the sounds [s] and [z] in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Catalan, made by c, ç, s, ss and z,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>differ from their English counterparts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>in that they strike the foreign ear as</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>having a slightly ‘whistling’ sound.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
As a first practice in pronunciation it will be useful to read aloud and memorize the Catalan names of letters of the alphabet.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Letter</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
<th>Letter</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>[á]</td>
<td>n</td>
<td>ena</td>
<td>[éna]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b</td>
<td>be (alta)</td>
<td>[bé (āltə)]</td>
<td>o</td>
<td>o</td>
<td>[ó]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c</td>
<td>ce</td>
<td>[sé]</td>
<td>p</td>
<td>pe</td>
<td>[pé]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d</td>
<td>de</td>
<td>[dé]</td>
<td>q</td>
<td>cu</td>
<td>[kú]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e</td>
<td>e</td>
<td>[é]</td>
<td>r</td>
<td>erra</td>
<td>[éra]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f</td>
<td>efa</td>
<td>[efə]</td>
<td>s</td>
<td>essa</td>
<td>[ésa]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>g</td>
<td>ge</td>
<td>[gé]</td>
<td>t</td>
<td>te</td>
<td>[té]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>h</td>
<td>hac</td>
<td>[ák]</td>
<td>u</td>
<td>u</td>
<td>[ú]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i</td>
<td>(llatina)</td>
<td>[í (lkatina)]</td>
<td>v</td>
<td>ve (baixa)</td>
<td>[bé(baixa)]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>j</td>
<td>jota</td>
<td>[zdə]</td>
<td>w</td>
<td>ve doble</td>
<td>[bé dóoble]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>k</td>
<td>ka</td>
<td>[ká]</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>xeix, ics</td>
<td>[jɛʧ], [iks]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>l</td>
<td>ela</td>
<td>[élə]</td>
<td>y</td>
<td>i grega</td>
<td>[i grego]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>m</td>
<td>ema</td>
<td>[ęma]</td>
<td>z</td>
<td>zeta</td>
<td>[zɛta]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 The name of the letter depends on its pronunciation in a given word: thus peix → pe-e-i-xeix, èxit → e-les-i-te.

**Word liaison**

Our analysis of pronunciation has been concerned so far with the sounds of individual words. In actual speech, though, in Catalan as in other languages there is a running together in pronunciation of words closely linked within a given sentence. Most utterances contain natural internal groups, which in writing will be partly registered by punctuation, and it is the word-group rather than the individual word that one usually has to consider as the unit of pronunciation. The final sound of one word is in many cases modified by the initial sound of its neighbour (and sometimes the latter in its turn influenced by the former) in a way that often resembles the assimilation of sounds within a single word. Fluency in pronunciation depends essentially upon these liaisons. The major points to be observed are the following.

1. Two accented vowels in contact are not affected: pi alt [pi ál], carrer ample [karrer ámbpla]. Neutral [ə] in contact with another vowel tends to be elided: aquesta eina [ākstə ēnə], mà esquerra [má skɛrrə], porta oberta [pɔrt uβɛrta], no arribava [nɔ rriβəβa]. Of two neutral [ə] in contact only one is pronounced: quinze amics [kɪnz amiks], una església [un əsklɛsia]. A final stressed vowel and an initial i, u or unstressed o join to form a diphthong: va obrir [baw βɾi], serà inútil [səɾə nútil], qui ho fa [kiw fə].

2. Final -nc, -ng before a vowel are pronounced [ŋk]: cinc homes [sɪŋk əməs], sang i aigua [sǎŋk i əgywə]. The final b of amb is pronounced before a vowel: pa amb oli [pə amb ɔli], amb honor [əmb unɔɾ]. The t of final -nt is pronounced before a vowel in the exceptional cases of sant before a name beginning with a vowel, vint followed by a hyphen, a gerund followed by a hyphen + vowel, and occasionally cent followed by a vowel: Sant Hilari [sənt iləri], vint-i-dos [bintiðos], anant-hi [ənənti], venent-ho [bənɛntu], cent homes [sɛnt əməs].

3. Final -f, -s, -c, -ix, -tx, -ig are voiced before a vowel or a voiced consonant: baf horrible [baw urribblə], vols venir [bɔlz ˈbəni], les altres [ləz ətəɾəs], dolç o salat [dɔləz o salət], capaç d’això [kəpəs dəjəʊ], dibuix antic [diβjuˈ antik], despatx obert [dəspətʃ ˈubɛɾt], mig any [miɾdʒ ˈaɲ], passeig meravel·lós [pəsəˈʤə merəβələs].

4. The unvoiced plosives -p, -t, -c [k] become voiced before a voiced consonant: sap guanyar [ˈsəp ɡəˈɲɲəɾ], prop de [ˈprɔp da], pot venir [ˈpɔt ˈbəni], poc modest [ˈpɔt muˈdɛst]. Note also tot llest [ˈtəɾʎ ˈləst].
5. Initial b, g, d become fricative [β], [ɣ], [ð] after the vowels and after -f, -s, -ç, -r, -ix, -tx, -ig: una boira [una βojɾa], més blanc [mez βlanɾ], la guia [la ɣia], peix gros [pexplain yrɔs], vaig demanar [βaɾɾd ɔmanaɾ], per dinar [pəɾ ðinaɾ], pa dur [pəɾ ðuɾ]. In addition b and g become fricative after -l: el barri [əl βaɾɾi], fil groc [fiɾ yrɔk].

6. Final -s before r, s, x is not pronounced: dues raons [duəɾ raɾoɾs], els sastres [əɾ sastɾes], molts xais [molt jaiɾs].

7. Final -n before b, m, v, p is pronounced [m]: un marit [um marit], mon pare [mun pəɾɾaɾ], bon vi [bɒɾ biɾ], ben bé [bɛm bɛ].

PRONUNCIATION AND READING PRACTICE

Study the following passage of modern Catalan prose with the phonetic transcription, which has been made according to the analysis given in the preceding pages. Read it aloud several times, at first sentence by sentence and then as a whole, paying careful attention to word stress and liaison. Do not worry if it seems to be a slow process: thorough reference to the phonetic analysis is a major part of the exercise. We are not concerned at this stage with translating the passage, but the translation given on pp. 328-331 can be referred to for help in putting ‘meaning’ into your reading.

Lunch at Montserrat

bəɾm puʒat ɾɾastawɾan s ʊŋ kwɔɾ ðə ðεɾas i əβia
Van pujar al restaurant a un quart de dues. Hi havia móta tâwla βujɾɔs i puγɾəɾən askûi karãm bα moltes taules buides i pogueren esscollir. ‘Caram’, va pəɾsə t saŋo ʒukɔm zɔm krɜɾa kə aɾtəɾa plə pensar el senyor Joaquim, ‘jo em creia que estaria ple

22. Catalan

kɒm un ɔw
com un ou,’

də saŋiə ɾətəŋə ɾən kəməɾə kə saŋəβə purtə
De seguida els atengué un cambrer que semblava portar múlə pɾəɾə məɾə pɾəɾə pəɾ juɾə də la saŋʊɾə rrəɾə kə mələtə presə. Massa presə pel gust de la senyora Rosa, que nə kəʃə ɾəɾə də miɾɾəɾa lə kəɾta en et fɔɾis
no acabava mai de mirar-se la carta. En el fɔɾis dəskumfiɾə ɾəɾə pləɾ kə nə kəŋəɾə pəɾ nəɾm i də ɾəɾə dəsɨfəvə dəl pləɾ kə də καmrə li saɾia uɾəɾ əɾəɾən la pləɾ kə ɾəɾə jə ɾəɾə
banda, en canvi, li saɾia demanar un pləɾ kə jə se saɾia də məməɾia sabia de memòria
sabia de memòria
és kə si nə kɔɾɾən diyə t kəməɾə rrəɾipikən əɾə
— És que si no corren — digué el cambrer, repicant en el βɔɾk amb et ɾəɾəp əɾis əɾi ɾəɾəs dəkɨ əɾm
bloc amb el lləɾiɾ əɾə, vindran els turistes dəɾiɾə a un
muməɾn i əɾəɾəɾə nəɾ jə əɾrə maɾəɾa dəɾəɾəɾə
moment i aɾəɾorəs no həɾəɾa məɾəɾa dəntəɾəɾə
əɾkəɾ ɾəɾə məɾə dɨɾiɾiə ɾəɾə kə manʃəɾiɾə əɾis pəɾiɾ
Encara era məɾə dɨɾiɾiɾi əɾəɾə dəɾəɾə
la senyora rrəɾə nə buli ɾəɾə parkə si i nə kəʃə bə La senyora Rosa no volia gastar perquè si, i no acabava de
səɾiɾəɾə
decidir-se.
əɾ saŋə ʒukɔm əɾia parkə ɾəɾəɾəɾə bə
El senyor Joaquim patia perquè səɾonava de
ləɾəɾəɾəɾə ɾəɾə kəməɾə kə fiɾn i təɾə paɾmaɾiɾə də
la impaciência del cambrer, que fins i tot es permetia de
təɾə təɾə uɾəɾə əɾəɾəɾəɾə dəɾəɾəɾə dəɾəɾə
rantəɾə təɾə təɾə əɾəɾəɾə dəɾəɾəɾə desəɾəɾəɾə

finəɾəɾən əɾiɾɾə lə ɾəɾəɾia kəɾtəɾə rəɾəɾəɾən də bɾəɾə
Finalment arribà la decisió: quatre racions de brou,
səɾəɾə ɾəɾə kəɾə rəɾəɾəɾə dəɾəɾəɾəɾəɾə kə əɾis
sense ou, és clar, dues racions d'entremesos (que es
'El cambrer s'allunyà ràpidament de la taula, en el precís instància va sufrir les pèrtes i entàla una cúpula de instant que s'obrien les portes i entrava una llopadà de furostés forasters.

Pel que es veia eren d'una caravana que anaven amb autocars i s'hi van un uràri prefixat finz alzàr-se davant d'el haver rodat per Montserrat admirant-ne les belleses, al dictat d'un guia, i, ara, com a toc de campana, es dispuzàban a dinar.

C'és basté, Bàrbara asparàs, més que bim minuts sentson.

Els Baster varen esperar més de vint minuts, sense tornar béwr al seu cambrer per furtúna les pàl·lides de tornar a veure el seu cambrer. Per fortuna, l' espectacle dels turistes era distret, i no es varen impacientar gaire. Quan finalment, els serviren el brou, ja eren prop de les dues.

El dinar no fów un egzist, sertamén la sanyora rróz.

El dinar no fou un èxit, certament. La senyora Rosa no sa aixamàti k en un restauran kóm akéy, dunesin no se sabia avenir que en un restaurant com aquell donessin un brou tân asklrisat i monkàd de supstància elz un brou tan esclarissat i mancat de substància. Els antremèus tampàg no maràskren la sèf apruèsio i nó entremesos tampoc no meresquen la seva aprovació, i no kàt dí las kustékas kò dà bàb manèra kòth pudian sé dà cal dir les costelles, que de cap manera no podien ser de jàf sayòniz ès xai, segons ella.

C'és nènz yàrra bhò bàran tasta rà(s) parké stàbàn.

Els nens gairebé no varen tastar res, perquè estaven kuijíbsd bò dà manzá dàbàn dà tàng tèn la cohibits d'haver de menjar davant de tanta gent. La sanyora rròz dàttra bàndra nó bò buérlus fursa parké senyora Rosa, d'altra banda, no va voler-los forçar, perquè cò la sínx aìbl dàmpèndr al bjàdà dà turnàdò i numz a les cinc havien d'emprendre el viatge de tornada, i només nònria feltàt k ak mòrgjèsin i parèlèksin emmíz dà hauria faltàt que es maregessin i perboquessin enmig de lauttukár l'autocar.

A l'hora de pagar el compte, la senyora Rosa es va skandalidzà i surti dalrratwàn am laimprèssió k escandalitzar, i sortí del restaurant amb la impressió que aìblan entrat en una kòbà dà xàdoras al sany Zhàckim bà havien entrat en una cova de lladres. El senyor Joaquim va bè fò dàmanàlì kò fèz òs kumantàriz am bów mèz haver de demanar-li que fes els comentaris en veu més bòsà parké li semblà k ak turistes kàrraàrèmèx àx baixa, perquè li semblà que uns turistes carvermells es mufàbàn déyPhotographie d'une page de document, avec un contenu textuel extrait initial. Convertissez le contenu textuel en un représentation de texte à lire naturellement. Ne retirez pas d'hallucinations.

Introduction 23

partirian èntre tòts kwàtra i kustàlhèz òänèy
partirien entre tòts quatre) i costelles d'anyell.

al kambrè saûnà ràpidaòmèn da làvàla an al prèís

El cambrer s'allunyà ràpidament de la taula, en el precís instàncias va sufrir les pòrtz i entàla una cúpula de instant que s'obrien les portes i entrava una llopadà de furostés forasters.

pel que es veia eren d'una caravana que anaven amb automòbils i s'hi van un uràri prefixat finz alzàr-se davant d'el haver rodat per Montserrat admirant-ne les belleses, al dictat d'un guia, i, ara, com a toc de campana, es dispuzàban a dinar.

C'és bastè, Bàrbara asparàs, més que bim minuts sentson.

Els Baster varen esperar més de vint minuts, sense tornar béwr al seu cambrer per furtúna les pàl·lides de tornar a veure el seu cambrer. Per fortuna, l' espectacle dels turistes era distret, i no es varen impacientar gaire. Quan finalment, els serviren el brou, ja eren prop de les dues.

El dinar no fów un egzist, sertamén la sanyora rróz.

El dinar no fou un èxit, certament. La senyora Rosa no sa aixamàti k en un restauran kóm akéy, dunesin no se sabia avenir que en un restaurant com aquell donessin un brou tân asklrisat i monkàd de supstància elz un brou tan esclarissat i mancat de substància. Els antremèus tampàg no maràskren la sèf apruèsio i nó entremesos tampoc no meresquen la seva aprovació, i no kàt dí las kustékas kò dà bàb manèra kòth pudian sé dà cal dir les costelles, que de cap manera no podien ser de jàf sayòniz ès xai, segons ella.

C'és nènz yàrra bhò bàran tasta rà(s) parké stàbàn.

Els nens gairebé no varen tastar res, perquè estaven kuijíbsd bò dà manzá dàbàn dà tàng tèn la cohibits d'haver de menjar davant de tanta gent. La sanyora rròz dàttra bàndra nó bò buérlus fursa parké senyora Rosa, d'altra banda, no va voler-los forçar, perquè cò la sínx aìbl dàmpèndr al bjàdà dà turnàdò i numz a les cinc havien d'emprendre el viatge de tornada, i només nònria feltàt k ak mòrgjèsin i parèlèksin emmíz dà hauria faltàt que es maregessin i perboquessin enmig de lauttukár l'autocar.

A l'hora de pagar el compte, la senyora Rosa es va skandalidzà i surti dalrratwàn am laimprèssió k escandalitzar, i sortí del restaurant amb la impressió que aìblan entrat en una kòbà dà xàdoras al sany Zhàckim bà havien entrat en una cova de lladres. El senyor Joaquim va bè fò dàmanàlì kò fèz òs kumantàriz am bów mèz haver de demanar-li que fes els comentaris en veu més bòsà parké li semblà k ak turistes kàrraàrèmèx àx baixa, perquè li semblà que uns turistes carvermells es mufàbàn déyPhotographie d'une page de document, avec un contenu textuel extrait initial. Convertissez le contenu textuel en un représentation de texte à lire naturellement.
26 Catalan

in English. They are used for proper names of persons and places, but not for the related adjectives or nouns:

Catalunya  català (Catalan); el català (Catalan [language], Catalan [person]); el catalanista (Catalanist).

Barcelona  barceloni (Barcelonese).
Ramon Llull  estudis lullíans (studies on Llull); el lullíisme (Llullism).

Capitals are not used either, in Catalan, for the pronoun jo (I), for the names of days or months, nor for titles, unless abbreviated:

el primer divendres d’agost = the first Friday in August
el senyor Miquel Costa = Mr. Michael Costa
Sr. Miquel Costa = Mr. Michael Costa (on envelopes, etc.)
Els orígens de la literatura catalana = The Origins of Catalan Literature

PUNCTUATION

To the English-speaking student the only unfamiliar feature of Catalan punctuation is the use of the dash to indicate and mark off dialogue. Its function will have been observed in the above extract. Note, however, that the dash is not used exactly like inverted commas since it does not close speech unless followed by an indication of saying, replying, etc.

Inverted commas (cometes), written ‘ ‘, “ “ or occasionally ‘ ‘, are used, however, for quotations and for monologues.
An inverted question mark ? is sometimes used to open a long question which does not begin with an interrogative word, or to mark off a question which appears separately in a longer sentence:

Tothom ho dit, ja ho sé, però ¿qui sap si és veritat? Everyone says it, I know, but who knows whether it is true?

Capital letters are used less frequently in Catalan than
Lesson 1

The noun and definite article

All Catalan nouns are either masculine, home (man), llibre (book); or feminine, dona (woman, wife), casa (house). The definite article takes the following forms:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Masculine</th>
<th>Feminine</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>el (l')</td>
<td>la (l')</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plural</th>
<th>Masculine</th>
<th>Feminine</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>els</td>
<td>les</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

el llibre = the book
els llibres = the books
la casa = the house
les cases = the houses

The apostrophized form of the definite article (l') is used before masculine singular nouns which begin with a vowel or h + vowel:

l'once = the uncle
l'home = the man

La becomes l' before feminine singular nouns beginning with a vowel or h + vowel, except before unstressed i, u, hi, bu:

l'ampolla = the bottle
l'obra = the work

but

la universitat = the university
la història = (the) history

The indefinite article

This has the following forms:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Masculine</th>
<th>Feminine</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>un</td>
<td>una</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plural</th>
<th>Masculine</th>
<th>Feminine</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>uns</td>
<td>unes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

28 Catalan

The plural indefinite article is frequently omitted:

un noi = a boy         (uns) nois = (some) boys
una dona = a woman     (unes) dones = (some) women
una persona = a person  (unes) persones = (some) people

Plurals

All plural nouns end in -s. In many cases the plural is formed quite simply by adding -s to the singular form of the noun:

l'edifici = the building    els edificis = the buildings
un gat = a cat             uns gats = cats
el professor = the teacher els professors = the teachers

In many other cases, however, the word undergoes some slight change before taking the final -s of the plural form. There are some basic rules which govern these changes. The first rule is that words which end in unstressed -a change the -a to -e- before taking the final -s:

la noia = the girl    les noies = the girls
la cosa = the thing   les coses = the things
el dia = the day      els dies = the days

Other plural formations will be dealt with in the next lesson.

Uses of the definite article

The definite article appears in formal titles: el senyor Oliver (Mr. Oliver), el doctor Prat (Dr. Prat); but is omitted in direct address: Sí, senyor Oliver (Yes, Mr. Oliver). The article appears before abstract nouns and before nouns used generically: la vida i la mort (life and death), El vi és car aquí (Wine is expensive here). Before personal names or surnames the definite article is often used, with little or no change of
emphasized here is that **en** is used before masculine names beginning with a consonant: l’Eduard (Edward), **en** Joan (John), la Maria (Mary), **en** Prat ([Mr.] Prat).

**Omission of the indefinite article**

No article is used before an unqualified noun complement indicating nationality or occupation:

En Pere és català = Peter is a Catalan.
Sóc metge = I am a doctor.
La senyora Puig és professora = Mrs. Puig is a teacher.

**The verb òsser (or ser)—to be**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(jo) sóc</td>
<td>(nosaltres) som</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(tu) ets</td>
<td>(vosaltres) sou</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ell) és</td>
<td>(ells) són</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ella) és</td>
<td>(elles) són</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

I am
you are
he, it is
she, it is
we are
you are
they are
they are

The subject pronoun in Catalan is frequently omitted, even when no other subject of the verb is expressed. This is possible because the part of the verb itself conveys which person is indicated. Són means **they are**, som means **we are**, and so on. When the pronoun is used it is to give emphasis or to avoid ambiguity:

No, senyor; jo sóc la Clara i ella és la Maria = No, sir; I am Clara and she is Mary.

**Interrogation**

A question is expressed by inversion of the verb and subject, or simply, and very often, by intonation:

És en Carles? = Is it Charles?
(Sou estudians? (vosaltres)?) = Are you students?

**VOCABULARY**

(Each Catalan noun is listed with its definite article, with the gender indicated in parentheses (*m.* or *f.*) when the article is *l*. Words which have already appeared in the text are generally not given again in these vocabularies. They can be checked, if needed, in the vocabularies at the end of the book. Catalan words whose English equivalent is identical or obvious will occasionally be introduced into the exercises; these too can be checked in the final Catalan-English word list.)

*adéu, adéu-siua, goodbye*  
*això, this, that*  
*l’àngles (*m.*), English(*man)*  
*l’animal (*m.*), animal*  
* aquí | here*  
*aci |*  
*bon dia, good day, good*  
*morning*  
*gràcies, thanks, thank you*  
*hola, hello*  
*i, and*  
*la mare, mother*  
*el pare, father*  
*què?, what?*  
*qui?, who?*  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Numbers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>un (<em>m.</em>), una (<em>f.</em>), one</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dos (<em>m.</em>), dues (<em>f.</em>), two</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tres, three</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quatre, four</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cinc, five</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sis, six</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>set, seven</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vuit, eight</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nou, nine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>deu, ten</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
EXERCISE 1

(a) Put into the singular:
les obres; els homes; dues noies; les universitats; dos edificis; llibres; les dones; uns nois i unes dones; som professors; sou els estudiants; són cases.

(b) Put into the plural:
l'ampolla; la mare; una rata; el metge; la tia; el dentista; sóc estudiant; és una persona; ets un noi; l'animal; un pare i un oncle; la vida i l'obra.

(c) Study and translate:
1. Tres i cinc són vuit; quatre i sis són deu.
2. Ets català? — Sí, senyor; sóc català.
4. La Clara és la mare i en Pere és el pare.
5. Tres homes i dues dones; set nois i vuit noies.
7. La tia Maria és professora i l'oncle Eduard és metge.
9. Els gats i les rates són animals.

(d) Translate:
1. Good morning, Mrs. Oliver. I am the doctor.
2. Everything is expensive here. What is this?
3. Father is a dentist and Mother is a teacher.
4. Goodbye, Aunt Clara, and thank you.
6. Is Uncle Peter here? — Yes, he is here.
Lesson 2

Contractions

The prepositions a (to, at, in, on), de (of, from, about) and per (by, for, through, along) join with the masculine definite article—el, els—to produce al, als; del, dels; pel, pels:

El senyor Planes és al despax = Mr. Planes is at the office.
patir dels nervis = to suffer from nerves
pel camí = along the way

Note that there is no combination with the apostrophized form (l’) of the masculine definite article:

a la porta de l’hotel = at the hotel door

Observe also the omission of the article after a in expressions like a casa ([at] home), a taula ([the] table).

The preposition de contracts to d’ before a word which begins with a vowel or h + vowel:

Tinc por d’això = I am afraid of this.
un grup d’homes = a group of men

Uses of de

Possession is expressed in Catalan by de:

la casa de l’oncle = Uncle’s house
La bicicleta és de la Maria = The bicycle is Mary’s.
De qui és això? = Whose is this?

In various types of expression—principally those denoting origin or separation; cause, reason or means; and certain

More plurals

Many nouns have slightly more complicated plural formations than those which we saw in the last lesson. It will be seen that the majority of these are spelling changes reflecting what, in pronunciation, are regular plural forms. Here are examples of the most common transformations, accompanied by explanatory notes:
Lesson Two

la boca-boques = mouth
la branca-branques = branch
la botiga-botigues = shop
l'amiga-amigues = friend (f.)
l'aigua-aigües = water
la llengua-llegües = tongue, language
la plaça-places = city square
la peça-peces = piece
la pluja-pluges = rain
la taronja-taronges = orange
la cançó-cançons = song
la mà-mans = hand
el pa-pans = bread, loaf
l'acció-accions = action
el camí-camins = way, path
el cafè-cafès = café, coffee
el menú-menús = menu
el braç-braços = arm
el país-països = country
el pis-pisos = flat, storey
el peix-peixos = fish
el despàt-despàtxos = office
el bosc-boscos = wood, forest
el disc-discos = record
el gust-gustos = taste

The singular ending -ca becomes -ques in the plural.
The singular ending -ga becomes -gues in the plural.
The singular ending -gua becomes -gues in the plural.
The singular ending -ça becomes -ces in the plural.
The singular ending -ja becomes -ges in the plural.

Words ending in a stressed vowel form the plural by adding -ns. Note that no written accent is needed in the plural since stress falls naturally on the last syllable.

Two common exceptions to the last rule.

Many words ending in -c, -s, -x, -tx, -sc, -st, -xt, with the stress on the last syllable, add -os to form the plural. Words ending in -x stressed on the penultimate syllable form the plural in -s: cf. complex(os) but index(s).

el nas-nassos = nose
el pas-passos = pace, step
el suis-suisos = Swiss
el gos-gossos = dog
el rus-russos = Russian

Many words ending in -s double the final s of the singular before taking the plural ending -os.

el(s) llapis = pencil
el(s) temps = time, weather
el(s) dilluns = Monday(s)
el(s) dimarts = Tuesday(s)
el(s) dimecres = Wednesday(s)
el(s) divendres = Thursday(s)
el(s) dijous = Friday(s)

A few nouns ending in -s are invariable. The days of the week are invariable except: el(s) dissabte(s) = Saturday(s), el(s) diumenge(s) = Sunday(s).
Autobús (motor bus) has the plural autobusos, but omnibus is invariable.

Days of the week

Learn these carefully from the last list. On with days of the week is often expressed in Catalan by the definite article, although in the singular the article can be omitted. (El) dijous means on Thursday, and (el) diumenge means on Sunday. On Tuesdays and on Wednesdays would be translated by Els dimarts i els dimecres.

Use of plural nouns

A masculine plural noun can often refer to both genders in a pair. Els pares can mean the parents as well as the fathers; els fills can mean the children as well as simply the sons. Note in particular, els senyors Rovira (Mr. and Mrs. Rovira), els Fortuny (the Fortunys, the Fortuny family).

Translating some and any

These words used partitively are not translated in Catalan:

Tinc paper i plomes = I have some paper and some pens.
No tenim taronges = We haven't any oranges.
The verb tenir—*to have*

(jo) tinc
(tu) tens
(ell, ella) té

(nosaltres) tenim
(vosaltres) teniu
(ells, elles) tenen

There are a number of important idioms with tenir:

tenir por (de) = to be afraid (of)
tenir raó = to be right
tenir calor = to be (feel) hot
tenir set = to be thirsty

Tenir calor/fred refer only to people: referring to things ésser is used with the adjectives calent -a (*hot, warm*) and fred -a (*cold*).

**Negation**

Simple negation is expressed by *no* immediately preceding the verb, affirmative or interrogative, that it negates:

No tinc por = I am not afraid.
No teniu fred? = Are you not cold?

**VOCABULARY**

almenys, at least
l’any (*m.*), year
avui, today
la cambra de banys, bathroom
la classe, class, classroom
l’escola (*f.*), school
la filla, daughter
la flor, flower
l’habitació (*f.*), room
hi ha, there is, there are
l’hospital (*m.*), hospital

ni, nor
o, or
on, where
la parada, stop
però, but
el pollastre, chicken
quants? (*m.*) = how many?
quantes? (*f.*) = how many?
sempre, always
si, if, whether

**Numbers**

onze, eleven
dotze, twelve
tretze, thirteen
catorze, fourteen
quinze, fifteen

setze, sixteen
disset, seventeen
divuit, eighteen
dinou, nineteen
vint, twenty

**EXERCISE 2**

(a) *Put into the singular*:

dues botigues; els dissabtes; les aigües; dos pisos; gossos suïssos; els catalans i els anglesos; les forces; dos braços; les mans; tenim els llapis; les places; unes classes de francès.

(b) *Put into the plural*:

l’habitació; el temps; el dijous i el diumenge; el nas; un mes; és un disc; té una filla; és el senyor Bofill; sóc el pare d’ell; no tens fred?; l’oncle té por; vi del país català.

(c) *Study and translate*:

1. No hi ha peix ni pollastre al menú d’avui?
2. La Marta i en Joan són amics d’un dels fills del professor de francès.
3. Els dilluns sempre sóc a casa, però els dimarts sóc al despatx o a la botiga de la Plaça d’Espanya.
4. Avui és dissabte i no tenim classe.
5. L’hospital és un edifici d’onze o dotze pisos.
7. De qui són els llapis i les plomes? — No són dels estudiants?
8. Sí, senyor; a la cantonada hi ha una parada d’autobús.
9. Gràcies pels discos, oncle, i per les flors.
10. Els Porter tenen un fill de setze anys i una filla de divuit mesos.
(d) Translate:

1. There is a group of people at the bus-stop.
2. Where are the girls’ pencils and papers? — Are they not in the classroom?
3. The hotel in the square has at least twenty rooms and thirteen or fourteen bathrooms.
4. You are right, Martha; the bicycles belong to Peter’s friends.
5. Men and women have two arms and two hands.
6. In the city there are squares, houses of three or four storeys, shops, hospitals, cafés, schools and hotels.
7. If you (pl.) are thirsty there is water or wine here; if you are hungry there is bread, some chicken and some oranges.
8. Mr. and Mrs. Roig have five children: two girls and three boys.
9. How many miles are there from here to Valencia?
10. On Fridays the girls are always at school, but on Saturdays and Sundays there are no classes.

Lesson 3

Verb conjugations and the infinitive

Catalan verbs are divided according to their infinitive endings into three groups or conjugations: first conjugation, ending in -ar; second conjugation, ending in -er or -re; and third conjugation, ending in -ir. The infinitive is made up of a stem + infinitive ending, the stem being that part of the verb which does not usually change: **parlar-parl**, **perdre-perd**, **dormir-dorm.** It is to the stem that other endings are added to denote person (the subject of the action) and tense (the time when the action takes place).

The Catalan infinitive is used after prepositions and as a verbal noun, corresponding to the English -ing:

- abans de sortir = before leaving
- sense saber per que = without knowing why
- Robar és un crim = Stealing is a crime.

The present tense

The one part of the Catalan verb translates three expressions in English: **parlo = I speak, I do speak, I am speaking.** Our three model verbs are conjugated in the present tense as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I</th>
<th>II</th>
<th>III</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>parlar</td>
<td>perdre</td>
<td>dormir</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(to speak, talk)</td>
<td>(to lose, miss)</td>
<td>(to sleep)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parl-o</td>
<td>perd-o</td>
<td>dorm-o</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parl-es</td>
<td>perd-s</td>
<td>dorm-s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parl-a</td>
<td>perd</td>
<td>dorm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parl-em</td>
<td>perd-em</td>
<td>dorm-im</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parl-eu</td>
<td>perd-eu</td>
<td>dorm-ju</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parl-en</td>
<td>perd-en</td>
<td>dorm-en</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Note that in the third person singular form of the second and third conjugations no ending is added to the stem. An exception to this is the verb córrer (to run), which is also irregular in the second person singular: corro, corres, corre, and then like perdí.

Be careful to place stress correctly in pronunciation. In all parts except first and second persons plural, stress falls on the stem: parlo [párlu]; perdem [pérðəm]; dorm [dórm]; but parlem [pàrlèm]; perdèu [pàrdèw]; dormim [dórmim].

The first conjugation

Although this is the largest class of verbs it is the one in which there are fewest variations from the basic pattern of conjugation. The verb donar (to give) has a written accent on dòna and dònies which distinguishes these words from the singular and plural of the noun dona (woman). In a number of other cases an actual spelling change in the stem is entailed in order to preserve the same sound throughout the conjugation of a particular verb. This occurs with verbs ending in -car, -car, -gar and -jar, which change the c, ç, g and j into qu, c, gu and g respectively before e or i of a verb ending. Read aloud and study these models:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>tancar</th>
<th>comenzar</th>
<th>pagar</th>
<th>menjar</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(to close)</td>
<td>(to begin)</td>
<td>(to pay [for])</td>
<td>(to eat)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tango</td>
<td>començó</td>
<td>pago</td>
<td>menjo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tanques</td>
<td>comences</td>
<td>pagues</td>
<td>menges</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tanca</td>
<td>comença</td>
<td>paga</td>
<td>menja</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tanquem</td>
<td>comencem</td>
<td>paguem</td>
<td>mengem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tanqueu</td>
<td>commenceu</td>
<td>pageu</td>
<td>mengeu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tanquen</td>
<td>comencen</td>
<td>paguen</td>
<td>mengen</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

There are other first conjugation verbs which undergo this sort of spelling change in the present and in other tenses, and we shall meet some in due course. All such verbs are still considered as belonging to the regular conjugation since they conform basically to the model pattern. There are only two verbs with infinitives in -ar which are truly irregular: estar (to be), which we shall study in Lesson 11, and the verb meaning to go, which is as follows:

anar: vaig, vas, va, anem, aieu, van.

Anar may be followed by a + infinitive to translate to go to, to go and + verb. In Catalan, though, this construction does not usually substitute the future tense; it is best used only when actual motion is implied:

A on vas? — Vaig a comprar el diari = Where are you going? — I am going to buy the newspaper.
Va a tancar la finestra = He is going to close the window.

Polite forms

When one addresses a child, a relative or a friend in Catalan the second person singular is used, and the second person plural for more than one in these categories:

Tens foc, pare? = Have you got a light, father?
Aneu al cine avui, nois? = Are you going to the cinema today, boys?

When one addresses someone who does not fall into these categories of familiarity or someone to whom particular respect is due, a special polite form is used. First there is the pronoun vostè (pl. vostès). Since this descends from a term of address meaning Your Grace—i.e. a third person form of address, like Your Majesty, Your Highness, etc.—it is always followed by a verb in the third person:

Vostè permet? = With your permission (pl. Vostès permeten?)
Parlen vostès català? = Do you speak Catalan?
Lesson Three  43

Although _vostè-vostès_ is now the most widespread polite form, there is another, older form of polite address which is still very much alive. When one person is addressed, the pronoun _vós_ is used with the second person plural part of the verb (cf. French _vous_):

_Vós teniu raó, senyor President = You are right, Mr. President._

_Vós sou la sal de la terra = You are the salt of the earth._

In the plural _vosaltres_ with the verb in the second person plural is used as for the familiar form.

The polite pronouns are omitted less frequently than other subject pronouns. When _vostè_ is omitted, however, context is invariably sufficient to make the meaning clear. One soon acquires the habit of recognizing whether a third person verb is a true third person or whether it is polite, and similarly for a second person plural verb.

**VOCABULARY**

_l’abric (m.), overcoat_  
_amb, with; by, in (transport)_  
_arà, now_  
_l’avió (m.), aeroplane_  
_el bitllet, ticket; bank note_  
_buscar, to look for, (try to) find_  
_anar a buscar, to fetch_  
_la carn, meat_  
_el carrer, street_  
_el cotxe_  
_l’auto (m.), motor car_  
_l’estació (f.), station_  
_la feina, work, job_  
_jugar, to play_  
_la maleta, suitcase_  
_mentrestant, meanwhile_  
_la patata, potato_  
_per què?, why?_  
_perquè, because_  
_plegar, to fold_  
_plegar (de la feina), to stop work_  
_portar, to carry, bring; to wear_  
_quan, when_  
_la revista, magazine_  
_sentir, to feel; to hear_  
_el tomàquet, tomato_  
_el tren, train_  
_les vacances, holidays_  
_viatjar, to travel_  

---

44  Catalan

**EXERCISE 3**

(a) _Write out and read aloud the present indicative tense of:_

_portar; tancar; viatjar; buscar; forçar; jugar; anar; permetre; córrer; sentir; plegar._

(b) _Study and translate:_

1. Avui pleguem, tanquem la botiga i comencem les vacances.
2. Quan tenen fred sempre porten un abric.
3. Viatgen vostès amb tren, amb aviò o amb auto?
4. De qui parla vostè, del pare o del fill?
5. Per què no aneu ara a buscar les maletes? — Perquè tinc son.
8. L’Enric porta a l’estació la maleta de la Teresa. Ella, mentrestant, va a pagar els bitllets i compra unes revistes.
9. Quan sento el tren corro a l’estació. Si perdem el tren busquem la parada de l’autobús.
10. Els dissabtes sempre anem amb els Ferrer a menjar al restaurant del carrer Casanova.

(c) _Translate:_

1. What are you (pl. pol.) talking about now, gentlemen?
2. We do not lose the way because we always travel with friends.
3. They are closing the door now because they feel cold.
4. Where are you (sing. pol.) going? — I am going to the cinema with a [girl] friend.
5. Why do we not go to the station in Peter’s car?

1 Words in parentheses ( ) are explanations or suggested means of translation. Words in square brackets [ ] are not to be translated.
Lesson Three  45

6. When the men finish work they look for a café, because they are always thirsty.
7. The teacher is talking with the students about the history of Catalonia.
8. What are you (pl. pol.) eating with the potatoes? — Meat and tomatoes.
9. The boys are running along the street because they are afraid of missing the train.
10. Mr. Prat folds [up] the newspaper and begins to speak to the woman from the shop.
11. The parents carry the cases to the train and the children run to pay for the tickets and to buy some magazines.
12. He gives meat to the dogs, but the cats eat fish.

Lesson 4

The second conjugation

The second conjugation presents special problems for the student. In fact, there are relatively few verbs of this group which correspond exactly to the model conjugation of perdre. The verb tables given in Appendix I list the principal variants and the student will be referred to these on a number of occasions in the course of this book. We shall begin here by considering a number of verbs ending in -re whose irregularities in the present tense can be reduced to certain patterns:

1. Verbs ending in -bre are conjugated like rebre (to receive): rebo, reps, rep, rebem, rebeu, reben

2. Most verbs ending in -aure are conjugated like caure (to fall), but plaure (to please) goes differently:
   (a) caic, caus, cau, caiem, caieu, cauen
   (b) plac, plaus, plau, plaem, plaieu, plauen

3. There are four variants for verbs ending in -eure:
   (a) creure (to believe, think) and seure (to sit); (b) beure (to drink) and deure (to owe); (c) treure (to take out, remove, take off, put out, etc.); (d) veure (to see):
   (a) crec, creus, creu, creiem, creieu, creuen
   (b) bec, beus, beu, bevem, beveu, beuen
   (c) trec, tres, treu, triaem, triaieu, triaen
   (d) veig, veus, veu, veiem, veieu, veuen

4. There are three variants for verbs ending in -iure:
   (a) viure (to live); (b) escriure (to write); (c) riure (to laugh):
(a) visc, vius, viu, vivim, viviu, viuen
(b) escric, escríu, escriu, escrivim, escriviu, escriuen
(c) ric, rius, riu, riem, rien, riuen

5. There are two main variants in the present tense for verbs ending in -oure: (a) coure (to cook); (b) moure (to move):
   (a) coc, cous, cou, coem, coeu, couen
   (b) moc, mous, mou, movem, moveu, mouen

6. Verbs ending in -ndre (and in -ldr) are conjugated in the present tense like prendre (to take):
   prenc, pres, pren, prenem, preneu, prenen

Remember that the first r is not pronounced in the infinitive [péndre].

Verbs of more than two syllables which end in -endre require a written accent in the third person singular form.
Aprendre (to learn), comprendre (to understand), dependre (to depend), despendre (to spend), ofendre (to offend) and suspendre (to suspend) take a grave accent: aprèn, comprèn, etc. Encendre (to light), entendre (to understand), estendre (to stretch [out]), atendre (to pay attention) and pretendre (to claim) take an acute accent: encén, entén, etc.

The third conjugation

Just as there are many second conjugation verbs which do not follow exactly the model of perdre, so the third conjugation has a group of verbs which, while they have the same endings as dormir, take also in some parts an increment -eix- between stem and ending. These are called inceptive verbs. In all except the first and second person plural parts of the present tense, their conjugation is formed by stem + eix + ending. Our model inceptive verb is llegir (to read):

llegeixo, llegeixes, llegeix, llegim, llegiu, llegixen

For practice recite aloud the present conjugation of these other inceptive verbs: aplaudir (to applaud); seguir (to follow); repetir (to repeat); dividir (to divide); partir (to divide, to depart).

In all other tenses except the imperative and the present subjunctive (which will be studied in Lessons 14 and 24) inceptive verbs do not have the increment and they follow the basic pattern of the third conjugation, the same as dormir. Thus it is in translating the present tense that one must be careful to recognize an inceptive verb. In fact, there are more of these than there are 'pure' verbs conjugated in the present like dormir. Here is a list of the principal third conjugation verbs that are not inceptive:

bullir (to boil): bullo, bulls, bull, bullim, bulliu, bullen
collir (to pick, gather): cullo, culls, cull, collim, colliu, cullen
recollir (to collect): conjugated like collir
cosir (to sew): cuso, cuses, cus, cosim, cosiu, cusen
fugir (to flee, escape): fujo, fuges, fug, fugim, fugiu, fügen
morir (to die): moro, mors, mor, morim, moriu, moren
omplir (to fill): omplo, omplies, omple, ompliu, ompliu,
omplen
obrir (to open): obro, obres, obre, obrim, obriu, obren
sortir (to leave, go out): surto, surts, surt, sortim, sortiu, surten

Observe how spelling changes in parts of some of these verbs are made in conformity with pronunciation.

Dormir and sentir also belong, of course, to the list of non-inceptive verbs. Venir (to come) is an irregular verb rather like tenir; it is conjugated as follows:

venc, vèns, vè, venim, veniu, vènen

Reinforcing questions

In English we have a way of reinforcing an assertion by repeating the main verb in a rhetorical question: isn't it ?,
aren’t we?, etc. The Catalan equivalents are interrogative terms like sí?, no? and oi?:

Vénen avui, oi? = They are coming today, aren’t they?
Viviu aquí, no? = You live here, don’t you?

VOCABULARY

l’agulla (f.), needle
allà, allí, there
el banc, bank; bench
bé, well; right
la bossa, bag, purse, handbag
el botó, button
cabra, to fit, be contained
calaix, drawer
la carta, letter; playing card
el company, companion, friend
el dependent, shop assistant
els diners, money
el dolç, sweet
doncs, well, then, so
l’empleat (m.), clerk
en, in, into, on
l’entrada (f.), entrance; ticket of admission
entrar (a), to enter, go in
el fil, thread
la finestra, window

llavors \{ then
aleshores \{ then
mirar, to watch, look at
(la) missa, mass
molt, very, a lot
la paraula, word
el programa, programme
el públic, public, audience
que (conj.), that; because, for
és que . . . , it is because . . . , the fact is that . . .
repartir, to share out
el riu, river
somriure, to smile
també, too, also, as well
el teatre, theatre
tornar, to return, go back; give back, put back
tornar a + inf., to . . . again
vendre, to sell
la veu, voice
el viatger, traveller, passenger

1 Details of distinction between a and en will be discussed in Lesson 21. Meanwhile attention should be paid to the way en is used in examples and exercises. In translation from English, guidance will be given in difficult cases.

EXERCISE 4

(a) Write out and read aloud the present indicative tense of:
repartir; treure; somriure; escriure; viure; vendre; aprendre; entendre; venir; sortir; fugir, seguir; obrir; cabre; caure; mour.

(b) Study and translate:
1. El riu divideix la ciutat en dues parts.
3. El públic riu i aplaudix molt quan un dels actors fuig d’un gos i cau de la finestra.
4. La Maria cus un botó a l’abric del pare, i llavors torna al calaix l’agulla i el fil.
5. A qui devem els diners per les entrades?
6. Per què no escrius una carta en català als amics de Barcelona? — Molt bé; ara vaig a buscar paper.
7. Quan tanquen les finestres el senyor Miralles obre la porta i surt al carrer. En Prat i l’Oliva tenen calor, ells també, i surten amb el company.
8. Els dos companys seuen en un banc de la plaça. En Joan obre el diari i comença a llegir; la Maria mira els cotxes.
9. Entrem al càfet i tornem a sentir allí la veu de la ràdio.
10. Repetixo que tot depèn de la paraula d’en Joan. Si ell escriu que ‘sí’, doncs jo també vinc al teatre.
11. Marta, per què portes els llibres a la mà? — És que no caben a la bossa.
12. En Josep parla molt bé l’espanyol, però no entén una paraula de francès.

(c) Translate:
1. I see that the case does not fit in the car.
2. Do you (sing. pol.) think that we drink a lot?
3. They sell sweets and programmes at the theatre entrance, don’t they?
4. Do you (*pl. fam.*) see the house with five storeys? Well, I believe that Martha’s parents live there.
5. The clerk takes out a bag from the drawer and then begins to share out the money.
6. You (*pl. pol.*) speak Catalan very well, don’t you? Do you also understand French?
7. We follow the men through the streets. They go back into the bank. We look through the window.
8. The actors smile when the audience applauds the piece.
9. When the friends come out of mass on Sundays they always go to the cinema.
10. If the girls don’t come it is because they have work [to do] at home.
11. The travellers are now in Barcelona. They write in (*en*) a letter that they are going back from there to Tarragona on Friday or Saturday.
12. The teacher opens the book and begins the class with the words, ‘Right, boys.’

Lesson 5

The adjective

An adjective in Catalan, like the definite article, agrees in gender and in number with the noun which it qualifies. The normal position of the adjective is after the noun.

Singular adjectives

Catalan has a considerable number of adjectives which are invariable for the masculine and feminine singular forms. Besides *gran* (*big*), many of these adjectives can be recognized by their endings in: -aça, -açaç, -oç; -al, -el, -il; -ar, -eríor; -ant, -ent:

- *un noi felic* = a happy boy
- *una noia felic* = a happy girl
- *un llivre útil* = a useful book
- *una eina útil* = a useful tool
- *un quadre semblant* = a similar picture
- *una pintura semblant* = a similar painting

A majority of adjectives, however, have distinctive masculine and feminine singular forms. First there are those which, although they look as though they might be invariable, constitute exceptions to the general rule given above:

- *calent -a* = warm, hot
- *lent -a* = slow
- *car -a* = dear, expensive
- *mal -a* = bad
- *clar -a* = clear, light
- *tranquil -i-la* = peaceful, quiet
- *content -a* = pleased
- *dolent -a* = bad

Some adjectives ending in neutral *-e* are invariable in the singular:
Lesson Five 53

agradable = pleasant, enjoyable
amable = kind, nice
jove = young

lliure = free
possible = possible
probable = probable

But there are several common adjectives which change the masculine ending -e to -a in the feminine:

altre -a = other, next
ample -a = wide
correcte -a = correct
pobre -a = poor
recte -a = straight, upright
directe -a = direct
esquerre -a = left
negre -a = black

It is seen from these instances that the feminine singular ending is -a. This applies to all adjectives that are not invariable in the singular.

In many cases the feminine singular adjective is obtained simply by adding -a to the masculine form:

un noi prim = a thin boy
una noia prima = a thin girl
És molt vella = She is very old (m. vell).
una sala petita i estreta = a small, narrow room (m. petit, estret)

There are, however, many other cases where a spelling change is entailed before the addition of the feminine -a:

un plat buit = an empty plate
una caixa buida = an empty box
una corbata roja i groga = a red and yellow tie (m. roig, groc)

Teresa és una bona barcelonina, grassa, rodona, però viva i plena de gràcia = Teresa is a good lady from Barcelona, fat, round, but lively and full of charm (m. bo [bon], barceloni, gras, rodó, viu, ple).

Bo is used after and bon before a masculine singular noun (cf. bon dia):

Plural adjectives

An adjective agrees with its noun in number as well as in gender. Thus good girls must have the feminine plural form of the adjective good to agree with the number and gender of girls: bones noies. Some adjectives which are invariable in the singular—notably those ending in -ac, -ic, -oc—have distinctive endings for the masculine and feminine plural: aços, aces, etc. Otherwise the masculine and feminine plural forms of adjectives are made from their respective...
singles, in accordance with the same rules which govern the formation of plural nouns. Study these examples:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Masculine</strong></td>
<td><strong>Feminine</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bo [bon]</td>
<td>bona</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vell</td>
<td>vella</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blanc (white)</td>
<td>blanca</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>viu</td>
<td>viva</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>felic</td>
<td>felic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>semblant</td>
<td>semblant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dolent</td>
<td>dolenta</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Remember that dos (two) has the feminine form dues, which always agrees with its noun:

La paraula té dues formes: l'una correcta i l'altra dolenta = The word has two forms: one correct and the other bad.

**Notes on the use of adjectives**

Many adjectives can stand as nouns: un pobre means a poor person, els pobres means the poor; una jove means a young girl, young woman, els joves means young people; els vius i els morts means the quick (living) and the dead.

Two adjectives together, or the last two adjectives of a series, are normally joined by i:

un advocat recte i intel·ligent = an upright, intelligent lawyer

An adjective can apply to two or more nouns together, in which case it will have a plural form. If all the nouns are feminine the adjective will agree:

Porto una gorra i una bufanda noves = I am wearing a new cap and scarf (m. nou).

56 Catalan

If the nouns are all masculine or of different genders the plural adjective will be masculine:

'La cervesa i els vins són molt cars = Beer and wines are very dear.

**Word order**

It will already be apparent that the word order of a Catalan sentence often differs from the English, the latter tending to be less flexible. A principal feature of Catalan is that the verb stands in an initial position or early in the sentence more frequently than it does in English. Because of its verbal inflexions Catalan is able to omit subject pronouns or to invert the order of subject and verb. As we have seen, the normal position of the adjective is after the noun, but we shall subsequently meet a good number of common adjectives which, like bo, mal, gran, constitute exceptions to this rule (see Lesson 14, pp. 117–18). As the verb moves towards the beginning of the sentence, adverbs and adverbial phrases tend to accompany it more closely than in English, and this in its turn can involve other changes of order. The whole question very soon becomes a matter of style and of feel for the language, for which it is impossible to legislate. Some further observations and details will be noted in the course of this book. Meanwhile, the student should study the examples and the exercise sentences with an eye to absorbing characteristic patterns of word order. As he progresses he will find that he becomes more and more familiar with the main features of Catalan sentence construction.

**The verb fer—to do, to make**

Learn the present indicative tense of fer from the verb list in Appendix I. Fer is used in many idioms which go beyond its basic meaning of to do, make. Several such phrases and expressions will be introduced in succeeding lessons. Here
we shall begin with a very common one, which is *to show, to put on* a film, a play, etc.

Avui al cinema fan una pel·lícula anglesa = At the cinema they are showing an English film today.

The construction *fer + infinitive* means *to make done or to have done* the action of the verb expressed by the infinitive. When the infinitive is a transitive verb the English equivalent is a passive construction:

**Per què no feu pintar el sostre?** = Why don’t you have the ceiling painted?

Faig fer un suèter de punt = I have a sweater knitted.

El pare fa dormir el nen = Father puts the little boy to sleep.

Un mecànic fa funcionar la màquina = A mechanic makes the machine work.

**VOCABULARY**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Catalan</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>la tarda, afternoon</td>
<td>下午</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>la tassa, cup</td>
<td>杯</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>el te, tea</td>
<td>茶</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tot -a, all, whole, every; <em>pl.</em> all; <em>adv.</em> quite, completely</td>
<td>所有</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tots dos</td>
<td>两</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>l’ull (m.), eye</td>
<td>眼睛</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vei veïna, neighbour(ing)</td>
<td>邻居</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>verd -a, green</td>
<td>绿色</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>el vi negre, red wine</td>
<td>红酒</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**EXERCISE 5**

(a) *Study and translate:*

1. Bona tarda. Què feu aquí? Què passa? No aneu al col·legi avui?
2. Els pantalons i les sabates són totes nous, però la camisa i la corbata són velles.
3. Vostè tenen molta calor, oi? Per què no prenen una cervesa o un got d'aigua fresca?
4. Els joves, tot ulls, miren la Rosa quan surt a comprar. Ella, sempre elegant, avui porta una falda de seda amb raltes blaves i grogues, molt curta, i un cinturó ample de cuir verd.
5. Moltes gràcies pels sandvitzos i per la tassa de te. Vostè és molt amable, senyoret.
6. Què fan avui al cine? — Doncs crec que és al Central que fan una obra nova d’en Buñuel i una pel·lícula curta francesa. És evident que totes dues són molt bones.
7. Senyores i senyors, a mà dreta vostè veuen la Plaça d’Espanya i a l’esquerra el castell de Montjuïc.
8. Els diumenges a la tarda és quan fem sortir els petits a jugar amb els fills dels veïns.
9. Tots els anys la senyoretà Coromines passa quinze dies de vacances al país vei, a casa d’un germà gran.
10. Si, noi, tens tota la raó; ara veig que la noia dels ulls blaus i dels cabells llargs i negres és la germana petita d’en Josep.
Lesson 6

The imperfect tense

The imperfect tense of the indicative (I was doing, you used to do, he did, etc.) is formed for the three conjugations as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>I</th>
<th>II</th>
<th>III</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>parlava</td>
<td>perdia</td>
<td>dormia</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parlaves</td>
<td>perdies</td>
<td>dormies</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parlava</td>
<td>perdia</td>
<td>dormia</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parlaven</td>
<td>perdien</td>
<td>dormien</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parlaveu</td>
<td>perdieu</td>
<td>dormieu</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Observe that in each part the stress falls upon the ending. The imperfect indicative tense of third conjugation inceptive verbs is formed as for dormir.

Relatively few verbs are irregular in the imperfect if one considers that the stem for this tense is the same as that of the first person plural of the present indicative. Thus prendre (pren-em) has prenia, etc.; beure and deure (bev-em, dev-em) have bevia and devia, etc.; moure (mov-em) has movia; escriure and viure (escriv-im, viv-im) have escrivia, vivia. Tenir, venir and anar are quite straightforward.

The following verbs are exceptions with irregular imperfects:

caure: queia, queies, queia, quéiem, quéieu, queien
creure: creia, creies, creia, créiem, créieu, creien
ésser: era, eres, era, érem, èreu, eren
fer: feia, feies, feia, fèiem, fèieu, feien
plaure: plaia, plaies, plaïa, plaïem, plaïen
riure: reia, reies, reia, rèiem, rèieu, reien
treure: treia, treies, treia, trèiem, trèieu, treien
veure: veia, veies, veia, vèiem, vèieu, veien

Note how the stress in these verbs (except plaure) differs from that of verbs with a regular imperfect.

The imperfect of third conjugation verbs ending in a vowel + -ir requires the use of a diaeresis in all parts except the first and second person plural, to denote the stress on the i of the ending (cf. plaure above):

conduir (to drive, to lead): conduia, conduïes, conduia, conduïem, conduieu, conduien

The verb dir—to say, to tell

The irregular verb dir (to say, tell) can profitably be introduced at this stage. In the present tense it is conjugated thus:

dic, dius, diu, diem, dieu, diuen

In the imperfect tense dir is one of those verbs which bear the stress on the stem:

deia, deies, deia, dèiem, dèieu, deien

Use of the imperfect tense

The imperfect tense considers verbal action in its duration, without specific reference to beginning or end. It expresses continuity or repetition in the past, and is also the tense of description:

Abans viviem a Girona = Formerly we lived in Gerona.
Les muntanyes dominaven tota la costa = The mountains dominated the whole coast.

62 Catalan

Quan èreu joves veníeu sovint a Granollers = When you were young you often used to come to Granollers.
Una vegada era un rei = Once upon a time there was a King.

Be careful to translate would correctly when it is used in an English imperfect:

Quan teniem set anàvem a beure a la font = When we were thirsty we would go to the spring to drink.

Idiomatic use of acabar

Acabar means to end, to finish. However, when it is followed by de + infinitive it translates to have just. In this idiom acabar is used only in the present and imperfect tenses:

Acaben d’arribar els policies = The policemen have just arrived.
Acabàvem de tornar a la feina = We had just returned to work.

Another contraction

There is a contraction of casa (de) which combines with the definite article rather like the prepositions a, de and per. Reduced first to ca, it is then contracted to cal (can before a name introduced by en), cals before el, els. This word is usually preceded by a or de and means to, at or from the house or shop of:

Normalment mengem a ca l’Andreu o a can Martorell = We normally eat (lunch) at Andreu’s or at Martorell’s.
Vinc de cals arquitectes = I have come from the architects’.
Sortia amb la Maria de cal metge = He used to go out with Mary from the doctor’s house.
Notes on the use of ja

The basic meaning of ja is already:

Ja eren lluny de Barcelona = They were already a long way from Barcelona.

Ja also translates now when it emphasizes that any earlier stage is over and done with:

Tot això ja és molt diferent = All this is very different now.

In other contexts ja translates (no) longer, yet (with an interrogative) and presently. Often it serves simply to reinforce a verb and may not be translated in English:

Ja no tens dret a fer això = You no longer have the right to do that.
Ja són aquí? = Are they here yet?
Cambrer! — Ja vinc, senyor = Waiter! — I’m coming (now), sir.
Ja veig que era molt fàcil = I can see that it was very easy.

With a future tense (see Lesson 9, p. 81) ja indicates certainty on the part of the speaker:

Ja ho faré = I will see to it.
Ja veurem si és veritat o no = We shall (soon) see whether it is true or not.

VOCABULARY

abans de, before
l’acudit (m.), joke
ahir, yesterday
abans-d’ahir, day before yesterday
l’arbre (m.), tree
l’ascensor (m.), lift
baixar, to go down, come down; take down
el barri, district, quarter
brut -a, dirty
cada, each, every

la catedral, cathedral
la cuina, kitchen
darrera, behind, after
després, afterwards, later
després de, after
l’escala (f.), stairs; ladder
les escombraries, rubbish, garbage
la fulla, leaf
et futbol, football (game)
hi havia, there was, there were
el jardi, garden
el matí, morning
el menjador, dining room
mentre, while
net -a, clean
netejar, to clean

ni . . . ni . . ., neither . . . nor . . .
là nit, night
la notícia, (piece of) news
la paret, wall
el partit, game, match
passat -ada, last
la pols, dust
preparar, to prepare
pujar, to go up, come up; take up
pujar a, to climb; get on (vehicle)
sec -a, dry
treballar, to work
à vegades } sometimes
de vegades
la volta, walk, stroll; turn (a la) vora (de), near (to)

Meals
l’esmorzar (m.); esmorzar
el dinar; dinar, menjar breakfast; to have breakfast
el berenar; berenar midday meal (lunch, dinner); to have the midday meal, to lunch
el sopar; sopar afternoon snack; to have an afternoon snack
evening meal (dinner, supper); to have the evening meal

Menjar and el(s) menjar(s) are used also in the general sense of to eat and food respectively. The general word for meal is l’apat (m.). The times of meals are expressed with l’hora (f.): l’hora de dinar = lunch-time, l’hora de sopar = supper-time, etc.
EXERCISE 6

(a) Study and translate:

1. Darrera la catedral hi havia un gran jardí públic on els nens del barri jugaven sovint al futbol i pujaven als arbres.
2. Mentre vostè pujaven amb l’ascensor els veïns baixaven per l’escala.
3. Jo creia que en Felip era de Figueres, però els altres deien que no, que era de Girona.
4. Els viatgers acabaven de pujar a l’avió l’un darrera l’altre.
5. L’any passat, quan treballàvem lluny de casa, dinàvem de vegades a ca l’Enric, un petit restaurant a la vora de l’obra.
6. Les noies feien les maletes mentre els nois baixaven els menjars al cotxe.
7. Abans d’ahir era diumenge i el Barcelona jugava a casa contra el València. A l’hora de dinar tots parlaven del gran partit.
8. Cada nit, abans de sopar, els homes sortien a donar una petita volta pel barri on vivien.
9. Què féieu vosaltres ahir al matí mentre la mare encenia el foc i preparava l’esmorzar? — Doncs nosaltres netejàvem el menjador; tréiem la pols dels mobles i de les paret.
10. Abans els carrers de la ciutat eren nets i decentes, però ara ja no. No veus que són tots bruts, plens de pols, de fulles seqües i d’escombraries?
11. Després de l’àpat, quan un cambrer feia el cafè, els joves reien els acudits d’en Carles.
12. Acabàvem de rebre una mala notícia.

(b) Translate:

1. I did not believe the news that Peter was no longer working at the Vilars’ place.
2. When we were young we used to lead (portar) a very happy life.

3. Have you (pl. pol.) just come up in the lift or by the stairs?
4. Old Uncle Ramon was saying that he now drank neither coffee nor brandy after meals.
5. The dining room in the restaurant was decent and clean, but the kitchen where they prepared the food was very dirty.
6. The leaves were already dry and yellow and were falling from the trees.
7. Behind the university there was a little café where the students drank beer at lunch-time, and where they would often go to play at cards before classes.
8. Yesterday morning, while you (pl. fam.) were all sleeping, Mother was cleaning the house, getting rid of the dust from the walls and taking the rubbish down to the street.
9. The travellers had just arrived from Gerona and were looking for a good hotel near the cathedral.
10. When I worked at the bank I used to have breakfast at home each morning. I would have lunch at Martorell’s and then normally take a snack at work before returning home every night at supper-time.
11. We were following a path that led from the coast to the old castle.
12. Sometimes the boys of the district used to climb the trees and watch the football match from there.
Lesson 7

Possessives

The Catalan possessive adjectives agree in number and gender with the object of possession. There are thus four forms for each person:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th></th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Masculine</td>
<td>Feminine</td>
<td>Masculine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(my)</td>
<td>el meu</td>
<td>la meva</td>
<td>els meus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(your)</td>
<td>el teu</td>
<td>la teva</td>
<td>els teus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(his, her, its, your)</td>
<td>el seu</td>
<td>la seva</td>
<td>els seus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(our)</td>
<td>el nostre</td>
<td>la nostra</td>
<td>els nostres</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(your)</td>
<td>el vostre</td>
<td>la vostra</td>
<td>els vostres</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(their, your)</td>
<td>llur</td>
<td>llur</td>
<td>els seus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Observe that, apart from llur and llurs, all possessives of this type are preceded by the relevant definite article:

Defensàvem les nostres idees contra el teu argument = We were defending our ideas against your argument.

Llur-llurs can refer only to a plural subject (possessor). In the modern spoken language these forms tend to be replaced almost completely by el seu, etc., but their use is advisable when there is any danger of ambiguity in the third person. Compare these two sentences:

Eren en Joan, la Maria i la seva cosina.
Eren en Joan, la Maria i llur cosina.

The first could mean either her cousin (Mary’s) or their cousin (John’s and Mary’s). The use of llur in the second case makes it clear that the meaning is their.

El seu, etc., can translate his, her, its, their or your (the latter when the subject is vostè or vostè). When the sense is not made clear by the context, ambiguity can be avoided by the use of d’ell, d’ella, de vostè, etc., instead of the possessive adjective:

el seu sogre or el sogre d’ella = her father-in-law

Llur-llurs occasionally follows the noun, in which case the article is restored to that noun:

El jove i el seu cosí acabaven els treballs llurs = The young man and his cousin were finishing off their jobs.

Where there is no definite article, or where the article is replaced by an indefinite or a demonstrative, other possessives also follow the noun:

Tot això és teu, fill meu = All this is yours, my son.
Vol portar a casa teva aquell amic seu = He wants to take that friend of his to your house.

There is also a weak or unstressed form of the possessive adjective:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th></th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Masculine</td>
<td>Feminine</td>
<td>Masculine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mon</td>
<td>ma</td>
<td></td>
<td>mos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ton</td>
<td>ta</td>
<td></td>
<td>tos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>son</td>
<td>sa</td>
<td></td>
<td>sos</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note that this form exists only for a singular subject and that it does not take the definite article. Use of the weak possessives is confined mainly to the spoken language, usually with names of relatives or in certain idioms:

en Joanet i son avi = Johnny and his grandfather
en ta vida = in your life (used in negative expressions)
Use of the possessives

A possessive adjective is not used in Catalan every time that one appears in English. When context makes possession clear the possessive is considered redundant:

Vaig a casa = I am going home (i.e. to my house); but
Vaig a casa teva = I am going to your house.
L'alumne discutia amb el mestre = The pupil was arguing with his teacher.

With parts of the body and personal clothing the Catalan definite article frequently translates an English possessive adjective:

Tenia la mà a la butxaca = His hand was in his pocket.
Quan vaig obrir els ulls ... = When I opened my eyes ...
Té el pèl ros i la pell fina = She has fair hair and delicate skin.
Or, Her hair is fair and her skin is delicate.

Further examples with the indirect object indicating possession will be studied in Lesson 17, p. 141.

Possessive pronouns

Just as many adjectives are used as nouns, so the possessives (except llur-llurs and the weak forms) can function as pronouns:

Ara ve un tramvia: és el nostre? = Here comes a tram: is it ours?
Juguen bé, els vostres = Your side (lit. yours, your men) are playing well.
dir la seva = to have one's say

The verbs poder and voler

Poder translates to be able, can, and voler to want, wish, be willing. Learn the present and imperfect indicative tenses of

70 Catalan

these two verbs from the tables in Appendix I. Study their use in the following examples:

Vols un gelat? — No, gràcies, no puc menjar res més = Do you want an ice-cream? — No, thank you; I can't eat anything else.
Què vol dir això? = What does this mean? (lit. ... want to say)
Volià descansar però no podia = He wanted to rest but he couldn't.
Si vols, podem entrar a mirar l’exposició = If you want we can go in and look at the exhibition.

With verbs of perception can is often not translated:

No veus que això és molt important? = Can't you see that this is very important?
No vèiem qui era = We could not see who it was.
Sentiu la lletra de la cançó? = Can you hear the words of the song?

Partitive de

As well as in quantitative expressions with nouns, like una mica de pa (a little bread), a partitive de often governs a noun after certain quantitative adjectives:

molta (de) carn = a lot of meat
bastant d’aigua = enough water

De also governs an adjective in a few other idioms:

per (d’)altres motius = for other reasons
Què hi ha de nou? = What’s new?
Què dius de bo? = How are things with you?
Teniem cinc mantes, dues de vermelles i tres de verdes = We had five blankets, two red ones and three green ones.
algunes coses noves i d’altres de molt velles = some new things and some other very old ones
In Lesson 17, p. 138, we shall meet a related use of de with noun and adjective attributes of the adverbial pronoun en.

VOCABULARY

agrair, to be grateful (for)  la moto, motor-cycle
l'ajuda (f.), help  el número, number
ajudar, to help  el pany, lock
l'àvia (f.), grandmother  el passaport, passport
barat -a, cheap, inexpensive  la pregunta, question
bonic -a, pretty, attractive  segons, according to
la clau, key  servir, to serve
com, how, as, like  la sopa, soup
com (que), since, as  el taller, workshop
la contesta, answer, reply  el telèfon, telephone
testar, to answer, reply  telefonar
  trucar per  to telephone
  telèfon
  tombar, to turn
trucar, to knock (door)
  uns quants  a few
  unes quantes
la venda, sale
la voluntat, will, willpower

a veure, I wonder, let’s see
és a dir, in other words, that is to say

EXERCISE 7

(a) Study and translate:
1. Si tens les mans netes, fill meu, ja pots començar a servir la sopa.

(b) Translate:
1. My mother and your (sing. fam.) grandfather were cousins.
2. How do you say in your (pl. fam.) language ‘Saragossa is a very pretty city’?
3. Some customers of ours have just arrived from Palma, and this means that we cannot come to meet the others at Soldevila’s today.
4. If you (pl. pol.) wish, we can all go to see the exhibition on Friday afternoon.
Lesson Seven  

5. And now I want to talk about other things and put a few questions to the gentlemen. Let’s see . . . 
6. According to our guide-book there are three good restaurants here, two cheap and one very expensive. 
7. You (sing. fam.) always used to answer Grandmother’s questions, but she would not reply to yours. 
8. The tourists ask their guide where they can find a public telephone. 
9. I am carrying my passport in my pocket. Where is (use tenir) yours (sing. fam.)? Teresa always loses hers. 
10. We could hear his voice but we couldn’t understand what he was saying or (mi) what he wanted. 
11. The pupils were always very grateful for their teachers’ help. 
12. Since there were a lot of us at the table, Thomas was helping his sister to serve the food.

Lesson 8

The preterite tense: periphrastic form

Although Catalan does have a single-word or synthetic form of the preterite tense (see Lesson 29, pp. 238–40), we shall learn first an easier way of expressing a single action completed in the past (I bought, they sold, etc.). This is a tense called the periphrastic preterite, which is made up of the relevant part of a special auxiliary verb—vaig, vas (or vares), va, vam (or vàrem), vau (or vàreu), van (or varen)—together with the infinitive of the action to be expressed. It is a construction which is characteristic of Catalan and is very extensively used, especially in the spoken language. Students should not be discouraged by its rather pompous name. In fact it is a very easy tense to construct and use since it involves dealing with only a very limited set of variables, the parts of the verb vaig, vas, etc. Once these are learned and the student is familiar with the simple principles, the preterite tense of any verb (as long as the infinitive is known) can be expressed with ease:

Va tancar l’aixeta = He turned off the tap.  
Vaig veure un ocell = I saw a bird.  
Varen portar males notícies = They brought bad news.

It is obviously important to distinguish between this auxiliary verb and those parts of anar which coincide with it, and between the periphrastic preterite and the construction anar a + infinitive. There is, of course, a vast difference between Vaig trobar un amic (I met a friend) and Vaig a trobar un amic (I am going to meet a friend).
Imperfect and preterite

It can be difficult for the English student to distinguish between the uses of these two tenses in Catalan, particularly when they coincide in one form in English (we went, it was, he wanted). We have seen that the imperfect considers duration or repetition of verbal action in the past, without specific reference to beginning or end. The preterite, on the other hand, expresses change or completeness of action at a specific moment or in a definite period in the past. Study these examples:

Vaig passar un any a Londres = I spent a year in London.
Vam esperar fins molt tard = We waited until very late.
Vares entrar quan ell dormia = You came in when he was asleep.
Va dir que no volia sucre = He said he didn’t want any sugar.
Era fàcil de resoldre = It was easy to solve.
Va ésser fàcil de resoldre = It was easy to solve.

In the last example the imperfect tense makes a general descriptive statement irrespective of time limits within the past (i.e. it was an easy type of problem to solve). The preterite, on the other hand, refers attention to the ease with which someone solved the problem at a given moment in the past. Observe in the following examples how the use of the preterite or imperfect depends on a clear interpretation of meaning or nuance in the past tense:

No va trobar el portamonedes = She couldn’t find her purse.
No trobava el portamonedes = She couldn’t find her purse.
Era un bon ambaiador = He was a good ambassador.
Va ser un bon ambaiador = He was a good ambassador.
Hi havia una sola objecció = There was just one objection.
Va haver-hi una sola objecció = There was just one objection.

Definite article without a noun

A definite article used before the preposition de corresponds to the English the one(s), to a possessive or to a demonstrative pronoun:

el meu tabac i el de vostè = my tobacco and yours
Vau anar al bar de la plaça o al del carrer major? = Did you go to the bar in the square or to the one in the high street?
Van alçar la bandera catalana i les d'Anglaterra i d'Espanya = They raised the Catalan flag and those of England and Spain.

Prepositions with de

We have in (a) prop (de) an instance of a Catalan adverb (prop = nearby) which is used as a preposition either standing alone or followed by de:

Encara viuen a prop = They still live nearby (adverb).
Viven prop (de) l'església = They lived near the church (preposition).

There are several other adverbs of place which function as prepositions with or without de:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adverb</th>
<th>Preposition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>damunt, on top, above</td>
<td>damunt (de), on, above, on top of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>darrera, behind</td>
<td>darrera (de), behind, after</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>davall, below</td>
<td>davall (de), under, beneath</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>davant, in front</td>
<td>davant (de), in front of, before</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) dins</td>
<td>dins (de) inside, in,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) dintre</td>
<td>dintre (de) within</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) fora, out, outside, away</td>
<td>fora (de), outside, away from, except for</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Lesson Eight 77

al dessobre} on top
sobre (de), on, upon, on top
of, over
al dessota} below,
sota (de), under, beneath
a la vora, nearby
a la vora de, vora de, vora,
 near (to)

Jeien a l’ombra, davall uns arbres = They were lying in the
shade, beneath some trees.
Tots dormíem fora = We were all sleeping outside.
Són fora de casa = They are away from home.
Fora del meu cunyat, tots eren estrangers = Apart from my
brother-in-law they were all foreigners.
Vaig trobar el martell sota el carro = I found the hammer
under the cart.

When these prepositions govern a personal pronoun (see
Lesson 16, p. 129), de + pronoun is frequently replaced
by a possessive:

Anava darrera meu = He was walking behind me.
No vol parlar davant vostre = He does not wish to speak in
front of you.
No seien vora teu? = Weren’t they sitting near to you?

VOCABULARY

agafar, to take hold of,
hold, catch, take
així, thus, so, like this, like
that
amagar, to hide
el bastó, (walking) stick
la brusa, blouse
caminar, to walk
la cantonada, (street) corner

la copa, glass (for spirits, etc.)
el cotó, cotton
durant, during, for
l’endemà (m.), next day,
day after
estacionar} to park
aparcar
la festa, festival; holiday,
day off; party
parar, to stop
la pedra, stone
el pernil, ham
... però, ..., however,
though, but
per tant, therefore,
consequently, so
el poble, village, town;
people
la premsa, press
la setmana, week
la sorpresa, surprise
sortir a fora, to have a day
out
el tros, piece, bit; stretch
(distance)
últim -a, last
la visita, visit
visitar, to visit

EXERCISE 8

(a) Study and translate:

1. Ja era tard quan vau dir ‘adéu-siau’ i vau córrer a agafar
   el metro.
2. Vols portar la brusa de llana o la de cotó?
3. Els estrangers volien parar a visitar l’església del poble,
i varen estacionar el cotxe a l’ombra, sota els arbres al mig
de la plaça.
4. No vaig poder amagar la meva sorpresa quan vaig veure
qui entrava darrera en Pau.
5. Va agafar un ganivet i va partir el pa en cinc trossos.
6. Era l’últim dia de l’any i tota la mà d’obra, fora dels
paletes, van plegar d’hora.
7. L’endemà de la meva visita l’Enric feia festa i, per tant, vàrem poder tornar junts a ciutat.
8. Després de caminar dues hores vam arribar fins a la font. D’allí al poble, però, encara hi havia un bon tros.
9. Mentre esperava la seva cunyada, al bar de la cantonada, en Jaume va prendre un sandvich de pernil i després una copa de ginebra amb gel i llimona.
10. La nena va agafar pel mig el bastó del seu oncle i va trobar que així podia caminar una mica.
11. Dues o tres vegades durant les festes la meva germana i la d’en Miquel van sortir juntes a fora.
12. Va entrar llavors el nostre vei, el senyor Pujol, va seure davant nostre i va treure de la seva butxaca un petit paquet.

(b) **Translate:**
1. The parcel arrived last week while we were still away.
2. I closed the garage door and then hid the keys under a stone.
3. If you\(^1\) take hold of the glass like this you can’t drop it (trans. it can’t fall).
4. The foreigners stopped and parked their car in the middle of the square, in the shade of the trees near the fountain.
5. We finished work early and walked together as far as the corner, where I caught the underground.
6. While they were waiting for their cousins one of the boys made a little bird out of a piece of paper.
7. He said that with a good stick and strong shoes he could walk all day.
8. They departed from their [home] town on Wednesday.

\(^1\)Henceforth no indication will be given of which second person is intended. Where the context does not make clear which form is preferable, the student is advised to use the singular and to vary between the familiar and polite forms. For extra practice all four forms can be given in each instance. These remarks should be borne in mind when consulting the key to the exercises.

80 **Catalan**

spent the night in Madrid, and arrived in London the next day, a little before supper-time.
9. I normally read all the Barcelona press, but I didn’t see yesterday’s *La Vanguardia* or the day before’s.
10. The day after the party my brother-in-law received a visit from the police.
11. The bricklayer saw that coming up the stairs behind him was the carpenter with his hammer in his hand.
12. If Sunday was your day off, why didn’t you come to the match? It was a nice surprise when our side won.
13. The cotton blouse was very pretty, but I wanted to wear the woollen one.
14. During the last years of his life the king spent a lot of time out of the country.
15. The last time that I saw Michael was during the holidays.
Lesson 9

The future tense

The future tense (I shall do, you will do, etc.) is formed by adding to the infinitive the endings -é, -às, -à, -em, -eu, -an. All verbs ending in -re lose the final e before taking the future endings. Inceptive verbs are conjugated in the future tense like dormir. Study the models:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I</th>
<th>II</th>
<th>III</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>parlar-é</td>
<td>perdr-é</td>
<td>dormir-é</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parlar-às</td>
<td>perdr-às</td>
<td>dormir-às</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parlar-à</td>
<td>perdr-à</td>
<td>dormir-à</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parlar-em</td>
<td>perdr-em</td>
<td>dormir-em</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parlar-eu</td>
<td>perdr-eu</td>
<td>dormir-eu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parlar-an</td>
<td>perdr-an</td>
<td>dormir-an</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note that the stress in each part falls on the ending. Certain irregular verbs are modified in the infinitive stem:

- anar — aniré, etc.
- ésser — seré, etc.
- fer — faré, etc.
- poder — podré, etc.
- tenir — tindré, etc.
- treure — trauré, etc.
- venir — vindré, etc.
- voler — voldré, etc.

Use of the future tense

Descansarem aquí i discutirem el problema = We shall rest here and discuss the problem.
Per Pasqua menjarem xai = At Easter we shall eat lamb.
Potser vindrà demà = Perhaps he will come tomorrow.
Si surts sense americana tindràs molt fred = If you go out without a jacket you will be very cold.

The future can be used in a subordinate temporal clause qualifying a main verb in the future tense:

Quan vindrà el carter veurem si han contestat = When the postman comes we shall see whether they have replied.

However, a subjunctive is rather more common in this type of temporal clause, further examples of which will be studied in Lesson 25, pp. 209–10.

Sometimes Catalan has a present tense where English uses a future:

Què faig si no contesten? = What shall I do if they don’t reply?
On posem això? = Where shall we put this?

The conditional tense

This tense (I should do, you would do, etc.) is formed by adding to the infinitive the endings -ia, -ies, -ia, -iem, -ieu, -ien. Verbs which are slightly irregular in the future tense are similarly modified in the conditional, thus: perdre — perdria, etc.; anar — aniria, etc.; fer — faria, etc. The use of the conditional in Catalan is substantially the same as in English:

Va dir que escriuria l’avis = He said he would write the notice.
Amb més temps farien molt més = With more time they would do much more.
Voldria sugerir una altra cosa = I should like to suggest something else.

In Lesson 30, pp. 244–6, we shall consider some more complex conditional constructions.

Use of the verb valer

Valer is conjugated like voler (see Appendix I), except that the first person singular of the present indicative is vale.
Valer means to be valuable, to be worth, conveying the idea of goodness, efficiency or usefulness:

El nou director val molt = The new manager is very good.

The same verb is also commonly used to express value or price of purchase:

La pipa valia vint pessetes = The pipe was worth (or cost) 20 pesetas.

Quant valdría això? = How much would this be worth (or cost)?

Probability and obligation

We know that the verb deure means to owe:

Dec una explicació a l'editor = I owe the publisher an explanation.

Followed by an infinitive deure expresses probability or supposition:

Deu ser molt tard = It must be very late.
Devieu tenir gana = You must have been hungry.
Deuran arribar demà o demà passat = They will probably arrive tomorrow or the day after.

Must is translated by deure only when, as above, the meaning is that of probability. Obligation (I must go home) is expressed by the verb haver + de + the appropriate infinitive. Study the conjugation of haver in Appendix I; the alternative first person singular haig is preferred to he in expressions of obligation:

Haig de confessar el meu error = I must confess my mistake.
Van haver d'acceptar l'encàrrec = They had to take on the job.
Hauriéu de tornar els llibres a la biblioteca = You ought to return the books to the library.

84 Catalan

It is, of course, haver which provides the Catalan for there is, there are—hi ha. Accordingly, the other tenses of this expression are made with the corresponding tense of haver: hi haurà (there will be), hi hauria (there would be), etc. The infinitive is haver-hi:

Deu haver-hi un malentès o una equivocació = There must be a misunderstanding or a mistake.
No podia haver-hi excepcions = There could be no exceptions.

Vocabulary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Catalan</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>l'ànima (f.), soul</td>
<td>aviat, soon, early</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capaç, capable</td>
<td>el carbó (de pedra), coal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>el cèntim, cent</td>
<td>la confiança, confidence, trust</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>costar, to cost</td>
<td>fer cua, to queue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>la cua, tail; queue</td>
<td>el dòlar, dollar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>endarrera, backwards</td>
<td>endavant, forwards, on(wards)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>la família, family</td>
<td>la fum, smoke</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>el govern, government</td>
<td>graciós -osa, witty, amusing, funny</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>gros grossa, big, large</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>l'impost (m.), tax</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>la llet, milk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>només, only</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>l'olla (f.), cooking pot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>la pesseta, peseta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>la platja, beach, sea-side</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>la regla, rule</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ric -a, rich, wealthy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ros rossa, fair (hair, skin); Virginia-type (tobacco)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>sec -a, dry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>seguits -ides, consecutive, one after the other</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>la societat, society</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>la son, sleepiness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>treballador -a, hard-working</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
EXERCISE 9

(a) Study and translate:

1. Si veniu com sempre a última hora, haureu de fer cu.  
2. Encara no són aquí els altres? — No; deuran arribar amb l’últim tren.  
3. Deien els diaris que el govern posaria aviat un nou impost sobre les famílies riques del país.  
4. Si el carbó no és sec farà molt de fum i llavors no podreu posar l’olla al foc.  
5. No pot haver-hi regla sense excepcions. D’ara endavant no vull tornar a discutir això.  
6. Quan sortireu d’ací ja serà molt tard i no hi haurà una ànima pels carrers.  
7. Sense impostos un paquet de tabac ros valdría només nou o deu pessetes, i el negre potser no arribaria a costar vint cèntims el paquet gros.  
8. Ja veureu com camina la nena. És molt graciós; fa un pas endavant i dos endarrera.  
9. Demà passat el doctor Roig i Fontanals parlarà a la nostra societat sobre la història catalana moderna.  
10. Pots tenir confiança en en Miquel. Ell valdrà per dós; és fort, intel·ligent i molt treballador. Crec que seria capaç de treballar vuit hores seguides sense descansar.  
11. Hauries de prendre un bon cafè amb llet. Això sí que farà passar la són.  
12. No hi ha problema. Jo faré la teva feina si demà vols anar a la platja amb la teva família.

(b) Translate:

1. The girl with the fair hair must be Peter’s cousin.  
2. From now on you will all have to smoke black tobacco, my friends.  
3. There can be no exceptions to the rule, sir: without [a] passport you will not be able to leave the country.  
4. It must have been late, because we were all very sleepy and we only wanted to go and rest.  
6. I should say that a pipe like his would cost eight or nine dollars, with a few cents in (de) taxes.  
7. Since the new manager does not understand Catalan we shall all have to speak in Castilian. In this way, perhaps, there will be no misunderstandings.  
8. If you are cold you ought to wear an overcoat on top of your jacket.  
9. Tomorrow afternoon Dr. Cardona will read to the class a piece from his latest work on the problems of government in modern societies.  
10. When it is lunch-time Aunt Clara will take the pot from the fire and begin to serve the soup.  
11. I must confess that I found the president’s reply very witty.  
12. The day after tomorrow, if all goes well, we shall pack our bags and go to the sea-side with the Vidal family.
Lesson 10

Compound tenses

For the compound tenses (I have come, you had come, he will have come, etc.) it is first necessary to learn the forms of the past participle. The regular models are:

I
parlar
parl-at = spoken

II
perdre
perd-at = lost

III
dormir
dorm-it = slept

Some other irregular past participles will be encountered in subsequent lessons.

A few verbs, otherwise conjugated regularly, have irregular past participles, of which the following are the main examples:

estrènyer (to tighten, make narrow, squeeze) — estret;
prometre (to promise) — promès (also permetre — permès);
morir (to die) — mort; omplir (to fill) — omplet;
oferir (to offer) — ofert; obrir (to open) — obert;
cobrir (to cover) — cobert; sofritr (to suffer) — sofert

Perfect tense

Heu tallat prou llenya? = Have you cut enough firewood?
Les fotos han sortit molt bé = The photos have turned out very well.
Si demà encara no ha vingut és que està malalt = If he still hasn’t come by tomorrow it’s because he is ill.

Pluperfect tense

No havien dormit en tota la nit = They had not slept all night.
No recordaves que ja haviem parlat d’això? = Didn’t you remember that we had already spoken about this?
Quan vaig trobar el lloc, ell ja havia marcat = When I found the place he had already left.

Future and conditional perfect tenses

Quan tornarà el meu marit ja hauré planxat tota la roba = When my husband comes back I shall have ironed all the clothes.
A la fi el partit haurà durat tres hores = In the end the game will have lasted three hours.
Hauriem volgut passar la nit allí dalt = We should have liked to spend the night up there.

Perfect infinitive
Haig d'haver esmorzat bé abans de poder fer la feina = I have to have had a good breakfast before being able to get on with my work.

Notes on the compound tenses
The auxiliary cannot be separated from the past participle, not even by a subject pronoun:

Vostè ha viscut sempre aquí? = Have you always lived Sempre ha viscut aquí vostè? = here?

Except for a special case which will be studied in Lesson 20, pp. 167–8, the past participle is invariable in compound tenses with haver. Do not confuse this verbal construction with the past participle used as an adjective, when it naturally agrees with its noun subject:

La neu havia cobert la plana = Snow had covered the plain.
Vam pujar a la muntanya coberta de neu = We climbed the snow-covered mountain.

Tenir is used in a construction equivalent to a compound tense when emphasis is on final state rather than action, often when the idea of possession is uppermost. Here the past participle is an adjective qualifying a direct object:

Tenia preparada la seva contesta = He had his answer ready. Tenim fetes les paus = We have made peace (i.e. settled our differences).
Tinc entès que ... = I gather that ...

Perfect and preterite tenses
The perfect tense in Catalan expresses an action that has been completed in a time which is still felt to continue into the present:

El progrés científic ha destruït moltes tradicions = Scientific progress has destroyed many traditions.
El nostre segle ha sofert dues guerres mundials = Our century has suffered two world wars.
No he vist encara en Miquel. Ja ha tornat de França? = I still haven't seen Michael. Is he back from France yet?

Because of this Catalan often has a perfect tense where English has a preterite:
Aquest matí he vist la Carme = I saw Carme this morning.

In fact, any action which has taken place today will always be expressed by the perfect tense and never by the preterite:

Com han anat les classes d'ahir? = What were the classes like today?
Aquesta nit no ha dormit bé = He didn't sleep well last night.
He sortit a trenc d'alba i així he pogut arribar aquest matí = I left at the crack of dawn and so was able to arrive this morning.

VOCABULARY

antí -iga, old
apagar, to extinguish, put out
baix, below, downstairs
baix -a, low, short
el cap, head
la carretera, road
el centre, centre
el cigarret, cigarette
la companyia, company
la construcció, building
construir, to build
la creu, cross
la direcció, direction; management
enterrar, to bury
estudiar, to study
l'exercici (m.), exercise
EXERCISE 10

(a) Study and translate:

1. Heus aquí la llista dels membres de la nostra associació; els senyalats amb una creu ja han pagat la quota de l’any.
2. Quan va tenir el cigarret encès va començar a parlar en veu molt baixa.
3. La construcció dels grans magatzems ha tret moltes cases antigues del centre de la ciutat.
4. Quan hauràs arribat a dalt de tot la portera ja haurà apagat els llums de l’escala.
5. Per fi han obert les portes del museu al gran públic, de manera que podrem visitar l’exposició.

(b) Translate:

1. I gather that a Spanish company has built the new coast road, under the direction of some German architects.
2. The notices, written by one of the members of our association, have fallen into [the] hands of the police.
3. The caretaker’s wife came up to ask the tourists why they had put on the lights in their room.
4. A large stone has fallen from the tower of Saint Paul’s church and has broken a window of a car parked underneath.
5. When we finally arrive in Cadaqués the others will already have spent two or three hours on the beach.
6. We have to have studied the lesson well before being able to answer the teacher’s questions or doing the exercises.
7. Mr. Vilar said that he had not seen his nephew the whole of the last week.
8. Aren’t they out of the meeting yet? I thought that the manager and the company secretary would have settled their differences before going to the board [meeting].
9. How did today’s game go, boys? — It went very well; we won three-nil.
10. In the light of the dawn they could see the old stone cross, right at the top of the mountain.
11. You have come from very far away, gentlemen, and you must have seen many interesting things during your journey.
12. He suddenly remembered that he had promised to (de) go and meet his niece on Friday evening.

Lesson 11

Ésser and estar

It can be difficult for speakers of other languages to get used to the idea that Catalan has two verbs which both translate different aspects of the concept to be. Those with a knowledge of Spanish will be familiar with using two verbs to be, but beyond this an analogy with Spanish ser and estar will not be of much service.

We come now to study the Catalan verb estar and to consider how its function differs from that of ésser in translating different shades of the meaning to be. Our task is not made any easier by the fact that, in this area, there is a certain degree of hesitation amongst native Catalan speakers, and that there are some discrepancies between grammatical theory and colloquial practice. Our aim here can only be to provide an outline of basic principles and acceptable usage.

Study the indicative tenses of estar as given in Appendix I. It will be seen that the past participle estat is the same for both estar and ésser. This means that in the compound tenses there is no problem of deciding which of the two verbs it is correct to use: the estat is the perfect of both ésser and estar. In general, however, the underlying principle of differentiation between the two verbs depends upon a notion of the perfective or imperfective quality in a verb and its perception.

Ésser expresses a condition or quality considered as inherent, continuous, unchanging or permanent. The verb itself presents no prominent idea of temporal limitation, change, beginning or end. Because of this ésser is said to be imperfective.

Estar denotes qualities in which we are interested within
a temporal context, realized at a particular moment in time. In the background are such ideas as *stage*, *state* or *stay*, and these cognate terms can provide a convenient guide to the perfective meaning and use of *estar*.

There are two main aspects of *to be* which require the use of *estar*:

1. In perfective expressions of place, *estar* signifies *to be or stay in a place for a determinate period of time*. Here the idea of *stay* is a useful guide:

   *Vaig estar un any fora del meu país* = I was out of my country for a year.

   *Aviat serem a Blanes: hi estarem dues hores* = We shall soon be in Blanes. We shall stay there for two hours. (For this use of *hi*, see Lesson 17, p. 138.)

   Note that in expressions of place *estar* cannot have an inanimate subject.

2. With an adjective or adjective phrase, *estar* means *to be or stay for a time in an attitude, state or condition, doing something, or having at a particular moment a particular quality*. Remember the idea of *state* or *stage*:

   *Avui la ciutat està molt animada* = The city is very lively today.

   *Els músics estan refredats* = The musicians have a chill.

   *Estaven contents del nou horari* = They were pleased with the new timetable.

   *Estarem asseguts durant el discurs* = We shall be seated during the speech.

   *Com estàs? — Estic molt bé* = How are you? — I am very well.

   *Estar* is similarly used with a number of perfective adverbial phrases:

   *estar de viatge, de vacances, de guàrdia* = to be on a journey, on holiday, on guard (duty)

   *Estar d’acord* means *to agree, be in agreement*:

   *A la fi tots estaven d’acord* = In the end they were all in agreement.

   *Etic d’acord amb els altres que això és molt difícil* = I agree with the others that this is very difficult.

   *D’acord* standing alone means *agreed, very well*.

   Compare and contrast the above examples of *estar* with *ésser* as we have used it so far in this book. The following summary of uses of *ésser* will be helpful:

1. Expressing identity or category:

   *Què és això? — És el cementiri del poble* = What is that? — It is the town cemetery.

   *En Jordi era enginyer* = George was an engineer.

2. Where the complement is a numeral, a possessive or an infinitive:

   *Tres i dos són cinc* = Three and two are five.

   *Tot això serà teu* = All this will be yours.

   *L’únic solució era contestar* = The only solution was to reply.

3. With adjectives considered imperfectively:

   *La sorra era molt bruta* = The sand was very dirty.

   *El cas és greu i perillós* = The case is serious and dangerous.

   *Era pobra però (era) honrada* = She was poor but she was honest.

   *La sopa era freda i ara el café és massa calent* = The soup was cold and now the coffee is too hot.

   *L’aigua era gelada* = The water was freezing.
4. In imperfective expressions of place, denoting accidental or permanent position without reference to duration:

Les vaques eren a l’establa = The cows were in the cowshed.
Reus és prop de Tarragona = Reus is near Tarragona.
Quan nosaltres érem tot just a la porta ells ja eren dalt = When we were just at the door they were already upstairs.

**Interjections**

These are sounds, differentiated as parts of speech, which as exclamations express given feelings or spontaneous responses in the speaker. As well as the common ah!, oh?, oh!, whose use is more or less the same in Catalan as in English, the following occur regularly in everyday conversation:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>(Approximate)</th>
<th>English equivalent</th>
<th>Context</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ai!</td>
<td>ouch!, oh!, oh dear!</td>
<td>pain; surprise; joy; regret</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>apa!</td>
<td>come on!, hurry up!</td>
<td>encouragement, incitement to action</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>au!</td>
<td>gosh!</td>
<td>surprise; wonderment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>carai!, caram!</td>
<td>hey!, watch out!</td>
<td>calling attention</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ep!</td>
<td>ouch!, phew!</td>
<td>pain; surprise; relief</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Home! is often used in exclamations of encouragement or surprise, or simply as a means of reinforcing what is being said:

Apa, home!, que farem tard = Come on, man! we are going to be late.

Notice the use of the conjunction que in this last example. Its function in this and in similar contexts is to express a

98 Catalan

progression or connection between ideas that is generally suppressed in English:

Que vindràs demà? = (So) you will come tomorrow?
Què fa? que dorm? = What is he doing? Is he sleeping?

**VOCABULARY**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><em>alegre</em></th>
<th>cheerful, merry</th>
<th><em>just-a</em></th>
<th>just, fair</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>cansat -ada</em></td>
<td>tired</td>
<td><em>malalt</em></td>
<td>-a, ill, sick</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>clavar</em></td>
<td>to nail, fix</td>
<td><em>el marit</em></td>
<td>husband</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>el constipat</em></td>
<td>cold, chill</td>
<td><em>marró (invariable)</em></td>
<td>brown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>el cor</em></td>
<td>heart</td>
<td><em>màxim -a</em></td>
<td>greatest, maximum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>el desig</em></td>
<td>desire, wish</td>
<td><em>la mitja</em></td>
<td>stocking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>escombrar</em></td>
<td>to sweep</td>
<td><em>la propina</em></td>
<td>tip</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>(l’estona (f.)), (short) time, while</em></td>
<td><em>la faldilla</em></td>
<td>skirt</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>les faldilles</em></td>
<td>skirt</td>
<td><em>resoldre</em></td>
<td>to resolve, solve</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>fins i tot, even</em></td>
<td><em>sol -a</em></td>
<td>alone</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>fosc -a, dark</em></td>
<td><em>tenir ganes de + inf., to</em></td>
<td>want to</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>gairebé, almost</em></td>
<td><em>la tos</em></td>
<td>cough</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>la gent, people</em></td>
<td><em>tothom, everybody, everyone</em></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>gosar + inf., to dare</em></td>
<td><em>trist -a, sad</em></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Months and seasons**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>gener (January), febrer (February), març (March), abril (April), maig (May), juny (June), juliol (July), agost (August), setembre (September), octubre (October), novembre (November), desembre (December)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>la primavera (Spring), l’estiu (Summer), la tardor (Autumn), l’hivern (Winter)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

All the names of the months are masculine. In with a month is generally expressed by per + definite article:

Vindran per l’abril o pel maig? = Will they come in April or in May?
Note also, a l’estiu (in Summer); en ple hivern (in the depths of Winter).

EXERCISE 11

(a) Study and translate:

1. Era la festa major i tota la gent del poble estava molt animada. Fins i tot els policies havien begut i estaven una mica alegres.
2. Les mitges de l’Anna eren blau fosc i les de la Núria eren marrò.
3. La pobla dona estava malalta del cor i a l’hivern havia d’estar tot el dia asseguda a la vora del foc.
4. Quants dies estaran vostè a Puigcerdà? — Voldriem passar tota la tardor aquí, fins al novembre, però el meu marit potser haurà de marxar abans.
5. Només quan estàvem sols podíem descansar i discutir les nostres coses.
6. A baix les habitacions eren molt fosques. Fins a l’estiu i tot havien de tenir els llums encesos gairebé tot el dia.
7. Ja estem cansats d’haver de resoldre els vostres problemes.
8. Ep! On és en Carles? No ha pogut venir? — No; és que ha agafat un constipat i una tos molt forta, i diu que no té ganes de sortir.
9. Va estar una bona estona amb la boca oberta, els ulls clavats en el sostre. Jo gairebé no gosava respirar, de por de trencar el silenci.
10. Quin ha escombrat l’escala? Quan he sortit després d’esmorzar era molt bruta i plena de sorra.
11. El màxim desig de l’home sempre ha estat viure en pau i ésser felic.
12. Estem d’acord, doncs? Tothom està content de la decisió? Jo diria que fer això és l’única solució justa i honrada.

(b) Translate:

1. How are you today, young man? — I am very well, thank you. And how are you, sir?
2. The manager is not here yet. If you want to speak to his secretary you will have to wait a while.
3. I shall give our waiter a little tip. He will be happy with ten pesetas, won’t he?
4. She wore blue stockings and a dark brown skirt.
5. Everyone agrees that it is almost impossible to do the exercises. It is even difficult to understand the lessons.
6. One day, when Mother was away and the girls were alone at home, they swept the stairs from top to bottom.
7. We shall be in Gerona [for] two months, almost until the end of the summer holidays.
8. You must appreciate (comprendre) that Teresa is like that. One day she is very lively and cheerful, and the next (trans. the other) she is all sad. Her problem is that she suffers a lot from her nerves.
9. If you are tired, ladies, you can stay seated during the speeches.
10. My husband is a very strong man. When he was young he used to sleep outside even in the depths of winter.
11. Come on, boys; if you don’t get a move on (córre) you are going to be late. Hurry up! [Get] out of here.
12. Sarah has fallen ill; she has caught a cold and a very bad cough. The doctor says that it is a serious case of ‘flu.
Lesson 12

Ésser and estar continued

The best illustrations of the imperfective and perfective meanings which determine the use of these two verbs are cases where the same adjective acquires a different shade of meaning according to whether it is used with ésser or estar. Consider the following pairs of sentences:

És viu? — No; és mort = Is he alive? — No; he is dead.
Estàvem morts de gana = We were starving (hungry).

In the first sentence, although viu is not a permanent state like mort, both are viewed in the same imperfective way. In the second case morts is used figuratively, and estar refers the idea to a specific time which is subject to change.

En Jaume és llest i pràctic = James is clever and practical.
Si estem llestos, engegaré el motor = If you are ready I’ll start the engine.

In the first sentence llest means sharp, quick to understand. With estar the same adjective means prepared, ready as we see it in the other sentence. In this meaning it can refer to things or to persons. Ja tinc la feina llesta means The job is finished and Ja estic llest de la feina means I have finished work.

El poeta era dèbil i nerviós = The poet was weak and nervous.
Després de la malaltia la mestressa estava dèbil i nerviosa = After her illness the schoolmistress was weak and nervous.

In the first sentence weakness and nervousness are seen as permanent characteristics. In the second sentence the same qualities are viewed as being temporary, the product of change within temporal limits.

The same basic distinction can be seen in a similar example:

Éts molt elegant = You are very smart (by nature).
Amb el seu vestit nou en Guillem estava molt elegant = With his new suit William was (i.e. looked) very smart.

The distinction is less easily made when the adjective concerned is a past participle. In modern usage estar tends to be used with such adjectives, even when the context is imperfective:

La tassa està trencada = The cup is broken.
La casa estava abandonada = The house was abandoned (deserted).

However, it would still be correct—and, in some contexts, preferable—to say for these two statements: La tassa és trencada and La casa era abandonada. The reason for this is that the use of adjectival constructions with a past participle overlaps with that of the verb used passively.

The passive voice

The passive voice (e.g. The song was sung) is formed in Catalan by the past participle of the verb with the appropriate tense of ésser. The past participle functions adjectively and agrees accordingly with its grammatical subject:

Les obres de construcció són dirigides per l’arquitecte = The building work is supervised by the architect.
Això ha d’ésser tingut en compte = This must be taken into account.
Les cançons han estat cantades pel cor = The songs have been sung by the choir.

The agent of a passive voice is introduced, as above, by per, or sometimes alternatively by de:
El capellà era estimat de tothom = The priest was loved by all.
La Teresa serà acompanyada del seu promès = Teresa will be accompanied by her fiancé.

As in English, this passive voice covers both perfective and imperfective cases, and a perfective sense does not strictly need to be distinguished by the use of estar with the past participle. However, it is usual for èsser to introduce action being done (as in the examples above) and for estar to indicate state resulting from such action (in clearly perfective contexts, similar to the use of adjectives with estar):

Els altres estan avisats = The others have been notified.
Ja està tot preparat = Everything is now prepared.

Saber and conèixer
Study the conjugations of these two verbs as given in Appendix I.

Saber means to know (knowledge, understanding) and, with an infinitive, to know how to:

No sabiem quants diners havien perdut = We did not know how much money they had lost.
No sap l’adreça, però sí que sap el carrer on viuen = He doesn’t know the address but he does know the street they live in.

Estic no sé com = There is something the matter with me.
Vosaltres sabeu què és la pobresa = You know what poverty is.
Ni tan sols sap escriure el seu nom = He can’t even write his own name.

Note from this last example that saber denotes mental aptitude, as opposed to poder, which denotes physical ability. Both may translate can, but with these distinctive meanings:

104 Catalan
No pot ballar, perquè té la cama trencada = He can’t dance because he has a broken leg.
No sap nadar, perquè de jove no anava a la platja = He can’t (i.e. didn’t learn to) swim because he didn’t go to the beach as a young man.

In the sense of knowing how to do something, of having a certain skill or proficiency, saber can be followed by de:

No sap de matemàtiques = He doesn’t know any maths.
Vostès saben de multiplicar? = Are you any good at multiplication?

Conèixer means to know, be acquainted with, recognize:

No coneixes l’Enric? Doncs deu ser un conegut del teu pare = You don’t know Henry? Then he must be an acquaintance of your father.
La seva família ha conegut la felicitat = His family has known (i.e. experienced) happiness.

Un d’ells anava disfressat, però vaig conèixer de seguida que era en Carles = One of them was disguised, but I knew (recognized) immediately that it was Charles.

Després de vint anys de conduir ja coneix totes les carreteres del país = After twenty years of driving he now knows all the roads in the country.

No sé per què no coneixeix els vostres defectes = I don’t know why you don’t recognize your faults.

VOCABULARY
alt -a, high, tall
anunciar, to announce
apuntar, to take note, note down
el ball, dance
brillar, to shine
el cant, singing
el/la cantant, singer
el carnisser, butcher
el compte, bill, account
en comptes de, instead of
el detall, detail
Lesson Twelve 105

La sardana, Catalan national dance
segur -a, sure, certain
seriós -osa, serious
el sol, sun
el soroll, noise, sound
la tonada, tune
el testimoni, witness
les ulleres, spectacles, glasses

EXERCISE 12

(a) Study and translate:

1. Sap llegir, això és segur, però diu que sense ulleres no pot distingir la lletra petita.
2. Quan la fruita serà madura per l’agost, caurà dels arbres i serà recollida per una de les filles del jardiner.
3. Vols dir que has anat quatre vegades a la Costa Brava i encara no has après a ballar sardanes?
4. Si vostè no coneix tots els detalls del cas, no té dret a parlar.
5. La néta de l’arquitecte va anar al ball acompanyada d’en Tomàs. Van anunciar allí que ja eren promesos.
6. Encara hem de pagar el compte del carnisser. No sé a quant deu pujar ja.
7. Caram, noi, estàs molt moreno! — Sí, és que ahir i abans d’ahir, en comptes de treballar, vaig anar a la platja a prendre el sol.
8. Tot ja està dit. Les paraules dels testimonis han estat apuntades per un policia i seran llegides demà davant el jutge.

1 The sardana is danced by groups of people holding hands and forming a circle. Music is provided by la cobla, a small orchestra playing traditional wind instruments.

106 Catalan

9. Estic segur que coneixeries de seguida la Mercè. És alta i morena, i molt seriosa com la seva germana.
10. El nostre nét és molt llest, ja veurà vostè. Només ha sentit la cançó una sola vegada i ara sap de cor la lletra i la tonada.
11. La Carme no va anar al teatre perquè tenia por d’ésser vista pel capellà.
12. La porta era oberta i vam poder passar sense fer soroll ni haver d’encendre els llums.

(b) Translate:

1. It is time to leave now, you know. Aren’t you ready yet?
2. The secretary knew by heart all the customers’ addresses.
3. The songs were known by many and the singer was loved by all.
4. The sun has not shone all today. Everything is cold, dark and sad.
5. Are you any good at maths? Then you can help James to prepare the accounts.
6. We didn’t know where the butcher lived but we did know the street where he had his shop.
7. He could see that she had been ill, because she was [as] white as snow and could not even walk without the help of a stick.
8. The whole family was woken by the sound of the rain and by the singing of the birds.
9. It was when he was at university that he got to know a grandson of the famous poet.
10. Do you know the man in the sun-glasses? I can’t make out from here who it is.
11. Are you sure that the fair girl was Anna? Who was the dark one, then, who (que) left the dance early?
12. You must be serious now, my friends. Instead of wasting time, you ought to prepare tomorrow’s lesson.
Lesson 13

Negatives

As well as simple negation with no there are other negative expressions which are constructed with no + the following particles:

mai, never, not ever
ingenú, no one, nobody, not anyone
res, nothing, not anything
cap, none, not any, no
gens + adj., not at all
gens de + noun, not any, none (at all)
enlloc, nowhere, not anywhere
gaire, not very (much), hardly
tampoc, neither
més, not any more
ni (tan sols), not even
ni un -a, not (a single) one

Study these examples:

No hem anat mai a la capital = We have never been to the capital.
No hi havia ningú al moll = There was nobody at the wharf.
Si tu no caps al taxi, tampoc no hi haurà lloc per a mi = If you can’t get in the taxi, there won’t be room for me either.
El meu rellotge no té cap valor = My watch is not worth anything.
No és gaire lluny = It isn’t very far.
No és gens eixir = He is not clever at all.
No tenia gens de son = I was not at all sleepy.

More than one element of negation may be present in the same sentence; in Catalan a double negative does not make an affirmative:

No van mai enlloc = They never go anywhere.
Mai no faries res per a ningú, ni per a un bon amic = You would never do anything for anyone, not even for a good friend.

The negative particle must be accompanied in a sentence by no, except when introduced by another negative word like ni or sense:

Ni diré ni faré res més = I shall neither say nor do anything else.
Va entrar sense saludar ningú = He came in without greeting anyone.

This last point is important because some negative particles can stand alone in an affirmative sense:

Heu vist cap de les fotos? = Have you seen any of the photos?
Abans de gaire serà el campió = Before long he will be the champion.
Hi ha res de nou? = Is there anything new?

Another negative particle has a special, emphatic function. No...pas is used to negate an actual or inferred prior statement. Compare:

No vindran demà
No vindran pas demà = They will not come tomorrow.

The first is a straightforward negative sentence. The second conveys more, because it negates a previous supposition that whoever it is would be arriving. The full sense of the second sentence is something like, Contrary to what has been or might be said or believed, I say that they will not come tomorrow. Similarly, Vindran, però no pas demà = They will be coming, but not tomorrow (as was at first expected). Consider how the use of pas affects the meaning of two more negative sentences:
No, no sóc pas l'home que vostè busca = No, I am not the man you are looking for.
He esperat dues hores i no ha vingut pas ningú = I waited for two hours and nobody came.

Questions constructed with no ... pas anticipate an answer from which particular conclusions or consequences emerge:

El càntrir vessa: no serà pas esquerdat? = The pitcher leaks: it isn’t cracked, is it? (If so something must be done about it.)
Vols venir a passeig? — Molt bé; però no plorarà pas? = Do you want to come for a walk? — Very well; but it isn’t going to rain, is it? (Because if it is I am not coming.)

Indefinite adjectives

Some indefinite adjectives are invariable: cada (each), massa (too much, too many), més (more), menys (less, fewer), prou (enough) and cap (any):

Fuma menys cigarrets i més cigars = He smokes fewer cigarettes and more cigars.
Amb prou feines he pogut comptar quants érem = I could hardly count how many of us there were.

Qualsevol (any, whichever) has the plural form qualssevol:

Podiem triar dos plats qualssevol del menú = We could choose any two dishes from the menu.

The use of an indefinite article with tal (such, such-and-such) does not always coincide with the English:

Jo no emprarìa mai un tal llenguatge = I would never use such language.
Pots creure tal cosa? = Can you believe such a thing?

Catalan

With the plural tals no article is needed. With the name of a person un tal means a certain:

Coneixeu un tal Robert? = Do you know a certain Robert?

Before a noun mateix -a means same:

Ambdues novel·les són del mateix escriptor = Both novels are by the same writer.

Following a noun or pronoun mateix -a means -self:

Ella mateixa és la responsable = She herself is the one responsible.
Vostès mateixos = It’s up to you, Decide for yourselves.

There is a further emphatic use of mateix -a, before or after a noun:

L’obra ja no seria coneguda ni pel seu mateix autor = The work would no longer be recognized even by its own author.
Els soldats mateixos ploraven = Even the soldiers were weeping.

Mateix is similarly emphatic when used with certain adverbs: ara mateix (just now, right now), avui mateix (this very day).

The other principal indefinite adjectives are: cert -a (certain), gaire (not much; pl. not many), poc -a (little; pl. few), algun -a (any; pl. some), bastant (enough):

Tenia poques ganes d’anar al mercat = He had little desire to go to market.
Veig una certa semblança entre X i Y = I can see a certain resemblance between X and Y.
No té gaires amics = He hasn’t many friends.
Alguns dels assistents van protestar = Some of those present protested.
Si veus algun soci de la companyia... = If you see any shareholder in the company...

**Indefinite pronouns**

We have already met and used tot and tothom. The other common indefinite pronouns are: algú (someone), altres (someone else), ningú (no one, nobody), cadascú (each one, every one), quelcom or alguna cosa (something):

Algú ha entrat sense trucar = Someone has come in without knocking.

Cadascú va anar a la seva = Each one went about his own affairs.

Ha passat quelcom (or alguna cosa) de molt greu = Something very serious has happened.

Abans de parlar a ningú vull comprovar els detalls = Before speaking to anyone I wish to check the details.

**Vocabulary**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Catalan</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aclarir, to clarify, clear up</td>
<td>de fet, in fact</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al contrari, on the contrary</td>
<td>el formatge, cheese</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>la benzina</td>
<td>petrol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>la gasolina</td>
<td>el món, world</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>el bolígraf, ball-point pen</td>
<td>la nata, cream</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>callar, to be (come) silent</td>
<td>el paisatge, scenery,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>el color, colour</td>
<td>landscape</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>comú - una, common</td>
<td>les postres, sweet, dessert</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>culpable, guilty, to blame</td>
<td>el regal, gift, present</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>la diferència, difference</td>
<td>el sentiment, sense, meaning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>el dipòsit, tank</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>explicar, to explain</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>el fet, fact</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

no tenir res a veure (una cosa amb una altra) = (one thing) to have nothing to do with (another)

---

1. Jo tampoc no sé què vol dir això. La frase no té cap sentit.
2. És una eina molt útil i no gens difícil de manejjar.
3. Per postres donaven a triar entre fruita, formatge o nata.
4. Vostès poden venir a qualsevol hora del dia; sempre trobaran algú a casa.
5. Quan no té res a fer l'avi surt a passeig: no pas quan plou.
6. Enlloc del món no tornareu a veure tal paisatge.
7. Si teniu gens de sentit comú, callareu i d'aquí endavant comprovareu els fets abans de discutir amb ningú.
8. Alguns d'entre els responsables d'aclarir la qüestió creien que hi havia una certa relació entre els dos fets. D'altres, però, deien que no tenia res a veure l'un amb l'altre.
9. No és pas un llibre qualsevol, no senyor. Al contrari, és una edició molt rara de les obres completees del nostre poeta nacional.
10. Hi havia molts turistes per la carretera diumenge a la tarda? — No gaires. De fet, vam veure poca gent i pocs cotxes per tota la costa entre Barcelona i Arenys de Mar.
11. Vostè ha dit que vol veure un altre metge; ja veurà com demà faran venir el mateix.
12. Llavors va explicar en poques paraules com havia construït ell mateix el garatge, de tal manera, amb tals i tals materials.

**Translate:**

1. Nothing interesting ever happens in the town where we live.
2. Then she explained, not without a certain irony, how she herself and one Santiago Martínez were the ones to blame.
3. If you think there is enough petrol in the tank we can set off right now.
4. The young man was disguised in such a way that he would never have been recognized, not even by his own mother.
5. You still haven’t read Vidal’s new novel? Neither have I. They say that it isn’t very good.
6. Did they make a lot of noise when they were working (fer obres) in the street near your house? — None [at all].
7. He can return the books to the library tomorrow. — But it will not be open tomorrow.
8. This has nothing to do with any of the other facts. I do not want to argue with anyone, but I have to tell the truth.
9. We ought to take something for little Edward: a book, a ball-point pen, any present [at all].
10. Some were big and others were small; but they were all (of) the same colour.
11. And what did he say afterwards? — Nothing. He kept quiet. It was clear that he had no desire to give [any] more details of the case.
12. As you will understand, there is a great difference between having little money and not having a single peseta.
13. I thought they would protest, but nobody said anything.
14. If you ever go to the capital you ought to pay (fer) a visit to the new market.

Lesson 14

Demonstrative adjectives

The demonstrative adjectives (this, that, etc.) are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aquest -a</td>
<td>aquests -es</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aquell -a</td>
<td>aquells -es</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>this (that)</td>
<td>these (those)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>that</td>
<td>those</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The s of aquest is silent except when the adjective precedes a noun which begins with a vowel or h + vowel. Thus aquest noi is pronounced [əkɛt no]i, but aquest home is pronounced [əkɛst ðəm].

There is also another demonstrative, aqueix -a, intermediate between aquest and aquell. In theory aquest = this (near me), aqueix = that (near you), aquell = that (yonder). In practice, however, aqueix is scarcely used, its function having been taken over by aquest. This means that aquest sometimes translates English that when it refers to something relatively close to the speaker. Aquell means that when the object or idea referred to is definitely remote:

Què fas amb aquesta galleda? = What are you doing with that bucket? (Strictly aqueixa should be used in this instance.)

Porto aigua del pou en aquesta galleda = I am carrying water from the well in this bucket.

Aquest regle és meu; aquell altre deu ser el teu = This ruler is mine; that other one must be yours.

The demonstrative adjective can follow a noun which is preceded by its definite article:
El país aquest és molt ric en matèries primeres = This country is very rich in raw materials.
Les dues estàtues aquelles ara són als Estats Units = Those two statues are now in the United States.

Demonstrative pronouns

These have the same forms as the corresponding demonstrative adjectives:

Aquest té tota la culpa = This man is entirely to blame.
Quina vols? Aquesta o aquella? = Which do you want? This one or that one?

Aquest -a and aquell -a may be used to translate respectively the latter and the former:

Tinc un tocadiscos i una ràdio. Aquesta funciona, aquell no = I have a record-player and a radio. The latter works, the former doesn’t.

We have already used the indefinite demonstrative pronoun això. It is like aquest in that it translates this and also that when the latter refers to something relatively near to the speaker. The indefinite pronoun which corresponds to aquell, referring to something remote, is allò:

Ja hem arreglat allò = We have now sorted out that matter.

Uses of quin

Quin -a? (what?, which?) is an interrogative adjective used in direct and indirect questions:

Quins exàmens has fet? = Which examinations have you taken?
No sé quina mena de fusta és aquesta = I don’t know what sort of wood this is.

Quin -a is also used in exclamations:

Quina sorpresa! = What a surprise!
Quines postals més boniques! = What pretty postcards!
Quina boca més grossa que tens! = What a big mouth you’ve got!

Note in the last two examples the use of més, which must always reinforce the adjective when the noun of the exclamation is qualified.

The imperative

This mood of the verb expresses direct command or order (Give me that). The imperative can function in only one tense—the present—and has no first person singular form. The first person plural is Let us . . . and the third person form is that which corresponds to vostè—vostès:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I</th>
<th>II</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>parl-a (tu)</td>
<td>perd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parl-i (vostè)</td>
<td>perd-i</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parl-em (nosaltres)</td>
<td>perd-em</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parl-eu (vosaltres)</td>
<td>perd-eu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parl-in (vostès)</td>
<td>perd-in</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>III</th>
<th>III (inceptive)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dorm</td>
<td>lleg-eix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dorm-i</td>
<td>lleg-eix-i</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dorm-im</td>
<td>lleg-im</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dorm-ju</td>
<td>lleg-ju</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dorm-in</td>
<td>lleg-eix-in</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
First conjugation verbs ending in -iar require a diaeresis over the final i of both third person forms: e.g. triar (to choose)—triï, triïn; enviar (to send)—enviï, enviïn; canviar (to change, exchange)—canviï, canviïn. The irregular verbs are variously irregular in different parts of the imperative, and a careful study should be made of these forms as they are given in the verb lists in Appendix I. Examples of the imperative:

Surt d’aquí = Get out of here.
Vés a mirar la televisió = Go and watch television.
Digui això al seu amic = Tell this to your friend.
Obrin la porta i passin, senyors = Open the door and go in, gentlemen.
Estigueu quiets, nens, i arregleu això sense cridar = Calm down, children, and settle this matter without shouting.
Busquem unes cadires i seguïm de seguida = Let’s find some chairs and sit down straight away.

Contrast the different uses of the alternative second person singular imperative forms of tenir in the following examples:

Tingues la bondat de tirar la cortina = Be so kind as to draw the curtain.
Això és teu; té = This is yours; here you are (take it).

### Position of adjectives

We have seen that adjectives which limit or indicate (demonstratives, indefinites, possessives, numerals and adjectives of quantity) rather than describe almost always go before the noun. Certain very common descriptive adjectives frequently precede the noun: bo bona; gran; petit -a; nou nova; vell -a, and occasionally others. Some adjectives can have different meanings according to their position with the noun:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Before noun</th>
<th>After noun</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>gran</td>
<td>big (in general), great (outstanding)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mateix -a</td>
<td>same</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pobre -a</td>
<td>poor (to be pitied)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nou nova</td>
<td>new, another</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>diversos -es</td>
<td>several</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cert -a</td>
<td>(a) certain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>very large, grown up, elder -self</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>poor (needy)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(brand) new, fresh different, diverse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>certain, sure, definite</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The student will already be aware that in practice many considerations of style and of emphasis affect the position of adjectives and Catalan word order in general.

### Two irregular verbs, néixer and dur

Study the conjugations of néixer (to be born) and dur (to carry, take, lead) given in Appendix I. Dur is totally synonymous with portar, which means that difficulties can be avoided by always using the regular verb when translating into Catalan. However, dur and its derivative endur-se are in very common use, and the conjugation must be learned in order to be able to recognize and translate parts of the verb when they appear.

### VOCABULARY

- amunt, up(wards), high, abovc
- l’armari (m.), cupboard
- avall, down(wards), low, below
- el canvi, change, exchange
- la cara, face
- la colla, group, gang
- el compliment, compliment;
  pl. formality, ceremony
- de debò, real, really
- la discussió, discussion, argument
- dolç -a, sweet
Lesson Fourteen 119

dur -a, hard
l'embolic (m.), muddle,
scape
endins, in(wards)
escortar, to listen (to)
la facció, feature
fer el favor de, to be so kind
as to
l'herba (f.), grass
la impressió, impression
el llac, lake
llançar, to throw
el mapa, map
la mentida, lie
molestar, to annoy, upset
l'olor (f.), smell, aroma,
scent
el parc, park
el parent
la parenta }
relative
la província, province
simpàtic -a, nice, pleasant
sobretot, above all, especially
temà, theme, subject
la terra, earth, land
torn, turn (in order)
el vespre, evening

Comenci, home; no faci compliments = Make a start, man;
don't wait to be asked.

EXERCISE 14

(a) Study and translate:

1. Calleu tots, i escolteu. Haig de dir quelcom de molt important sobre aquest tema.
2. Saps en quina província neix el riu Ebre? Contesta de seguida sense mirar el mapa.
3. Què faràs si no funciona la televisió? — En aquest cas escoltaré la ràdio o bé posaré alguns dels meus discs nous.
4. Tinguin paciència, senyors. Això no està gens bé. Facin el favor de no molestar la gent, i esperin el seu torn.
5. Si vols conèixer una colla de joves simpàtics de debò, vine a casa aquest vespre.
7. El tren aquest va costa avall fins a Tarragona; aleshores

(b) Translate:

1. We have been able to reach a decision without arguments of any kind.
2. Have you sent those photos to your relatives in Birmingham yet? — Eh? What are you talking about? I don't know which photos you mean.
3. Don't any of you remember poor Hamlet and that business about 'To be or not to be? That is the question'? 4. What a kind face that man had! He was a really nice person.
5. Be quiet. I don't wish to listen to such lies. Kindly change the subject.
6. I know a way of sorting all this out. Let us look for the papers, check the accounts and then listen to the explanations of those responsible.
7. In those times, long before the war, life was really hard and many people left the country.
8. Carry on up the street, madam, and you will find the hospital on the left-hand side.
9. This [man] was born of poor parents and he himself lived for some years in poverty.
10. Calm down, children, Go and watch television if you have nothing else (més) to do.
11. They exchanged a few (quatre) words and then each one went his own way.
12. Don’t stand on ceremony, sir; choose one of these chairs and sit down.
13. Listen. This is not right at all. Tell your friends that I would never have done such a thing.

Lesson 15

Relative pronouns

The relative pronoun in Catalan has several forms, but these are not differentiated in the same way as the English who, whom, which, etc.

The unstressed relative

Que is invariable and can refer to persons, things or concepts. It can stand as subject or as direct object:

La dona que viu aquí és la muller d’en Prat = The woman who lives here is (Mr.) Prat’s wife.
Això que dius no és pas cert = What you say is not true.
Has rebut la postal que vaig tirar a la bústia ahir? = Have you received the postcard which I posted yesterday?

Que is also used in relative expressions of time:

Allò va passar un dia que tu eres fora = That happened one day when you were away.

Note that Catalan, unlike English, never omits the relative pronoun in a relative clause:

les coses que feien = the things they used to do
les persones que estimàvem = the people we loved
el vespre que va tronar = the evening it thundered

Stressed relatives

These are the forms which are used after a preposition. Qui refers only to persons and què only to things:

El jove amb qui viatjava era portugués = The young man with whom I was travelling was Portuguese.
Aquí tens el martell amb què he clavat els claus = Here is the hammer with which I knocked in the nails.
És aquest el llibre de què parlaies? = Is this the book you were talking about?

Compound relatives

Que, qui and què are all invariable. The compound relative—el qual, la qual, els quals, les quals—which is an adjective as well as a pronoun, must always agree in number and in gender with its antecedent. This compound form can replace the unstressed relative que in clauses which are descriptive or non-restrictive, but not in those which are restrictive. Compare these two sentences:

Els mariners que van sentir els crits van fugir de seguida
= The sailors who heard the cries fled immediately.

Els mariners, {que [els quals]} van sentir els crits, van fugir de seguida = The sailors, who heard the cries, fled immediately.

In the first sentence the relative clause limits the antecedent sailors, telling us which sailors fled. In the second sentence the relative clause is descriptive, giving additional information about an antecedent which is already limited in the speaker’s mind. If it is remembered that el qual, etc., is an adjective as well as a pronoun there will be no difficulty in deciding the contexts in which it can replace que.

The compound relative can be used instead of qui or què in virtually every case, but its use after a preposition is most appropriate when ambiguity might otherwise arise:

El fill de la princesa, sobre el qual existeix un estudi extens...
= The son of the princess, about whom there exists a lengthy study...

The use here of el qual instead of qui makes it immediately clear that reference is to fill and not to princesa. Conversely, la qual in the same position would refer clearly to princesa.

The compound relative introduced by de translates English whose:

Era una forastera de la qual no sabíem el nom = She was a stranger whose name we did not know.
Al prat hi ha unes fonts, l’aigua de les quals és freda i clara
= In the meadow there are some springs whose water is cold and clear.

When the antecedent of a relative is a whole clause a construction is made with la qual cosa or cosa que:

Tot allí funcionava amb electricitat, cosa que no hauríem esperat mai = Everything there worked by electricity, which we would never have expected.
Perdries moltes nits, la qual cosa no va bé per a la salut = You would lose many nights’ sleep, which is not good for one’s health.

Qui used as a noun

Qui appears in certain cases without an antecedent:

Qui més treballa, més guanya = He who works more earns more.
És ell qui ha dit això = It is he who has said this.
Jo escric a qui bé em sembla = I write to whom I think fit.

Other antecedents of a relative

A relative may be preceded by a demonstrative or indefinite pronoun. Strictly qui should be used for a personal subject (cf. the first two examples in the previous paragraph) and que for a non-personal subject or for a direct object, although there is a strong tendency for que to be used in all cases:
Lesson Fifteen

Saluva ven tothom que veien = They greeted everyone they saw.

Aquells qui han fet això són uns lladres estafadors = Those who have done this are swindling thieves.

Tothom qui vindrà serà admès = All who come will be admitted.

Va fer els càlculs com aquell qui no fa res = He did the calculations with the greatest of ease.

A definite article also may be the antecedent of a relative pronoun, translating such expressions as he who, the one which, those that, etc. Here again que as subject frequently replaces qui:

Els volien han pogut votar = Those who wanted to have been able to vote.

Aquelles olives són les que acabo de treure de la llauna = Those olives are the ones that I have just taken from the tin.

Sou vosaltres els qui perdeu el temps = It is you who are wasting time.

The neuter article

When the English what stands for that which, i.e. in a relative clause whose antecedent is not specific, the neuter article el with the relative que is used in Catalan:

Per què no escoltes el que dic? = Why don’t you listen to what I say?

El que necessita el país és menys turisme i més indústria = What the country needs is less tourism and more industry.

Catalan

When there is danger of confusion between this neuter el and the masculine definite article as antecedent of a relative, ambiguity can be avoided by using això, allò or la cosa instead of neuter el:

el que veus = the man whom you can see
allò que veus = what you can see

The neuter article el (l’ before a vowel or h ò vowel) is used also with the masculine singular form of an adjective to express the general quality conveyed by that adjective, without referring to a specific noun:

Hem d’apropitar l’util (i.e. allò que és útil) i llençar l’inútil = We must make use of what is useful and throw out what is useless.

El que és curiós d’aquest mapa és que dóna l’antiga divisió de les comarques = The curious thing about this map is that it gives the old division of the regions.

Era una fusió perfecta del cómic i del tràfic = It was a perfect fusion of the comic and the tragic.

VOCABULARY

afegir, to add
l’amo (m.), boss, master
l’anell (m.), ring
la banda, side, part, place
castigar, to punish
el cistell, basket
consultar, to consult
contribuir, to contribute
la correspondència, letters, correspondence
el correu, post; pl. postal service, post office
distribuir, to distribute, deliver
embolicar, to wrap (up)
estran -a, strange
la lliura (esterlina), pound (sterling)
l’a màquina d’escriure, typewriter
el mitjó, sock
de moment, for the moment
l’obrer (m.), worker
oblidar, to forget
l'or (m.), gold
la pera, pear
el permís, permission, leave
el peu, foot
la poma, apple
principal, principal, main
la raó, reason; argument
salvatge, wild

semblar, to seem, appear
solter -a, single (unmarried),
   bachelor, spinster
la suma, sum, amount
tractar, to deal with, treat
la vaga, strike
fer vaga, to go on strike

128 Catalan

12. És un animal estrany i salvatge que viu al bosc, el nom
del qual he oblidat.

(b) Translate:

1. What he is looking for is a hammer with which to knock
in the nails.
2. No, these socks are not the same ones as I was wearing
yesterday.
3. The typewriter is a tool without which we should be
unable to work.
4. What thieves! Those who have done this will be caught
and punished.
5. He did not want to explain the reasons why he had to
leave early.
6. Let us wrap up for the moment only the articles we have
to deliver by hand. Put on one side all those which will be
sent by post.
7. Some will perhaps say that this machine is useless, which
is not true.
8. It was not I who said that the strike would not last long.
9. Mr. Prat and his son, who had had to come on foot,
did not arrive until the evening.
10. We went up to see the boss, without whose permission
no stranger could enter the workshop.
11. Who was that strange person you were talking with the
day that I came to your office? — I know who you mean,
but I have forgotten his name.
12. Have you found what you were looking for yet? — Yes,
these books are the ones that I wanted to consult.
Lesson 16

**Strong pronouns**

These are pronouns which stand apart from the verb and are invariably governed by a preposition. Their forms in Catalan differ from those of the subject pronouns only in the first person singular, and in the existence of a separate third person reflexive form:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>mi</td>
<td>nosaltres</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tu</td>
<td>vosaltres</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ell</td>
<td>elles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ella</td>
<td>vostès</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>si (reflexive)</td>
<td>si (reflexive)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Examples of the strong pronoun with preposition:

No hi ha ningú com ella = There is nobody like her.
Els han fet això per nosaltres, i ara nosaltres farem el mateix per vostè = They have done that on our behalf, and now we shall do the same for you.

_Podeu comptar amb mi = You can count on me._

As in this last example, _mi_ is the first person singular form normally used after a preposition. However, _jo_ appears in expressions like _entre tu i jo (between you and me)_ and _sense jo dir res (without my saying anything)._ A reflexive construction is one in which the subject and object of a verbal action are one and the same. This can apply to any person of the verb (_I speak for myself, you do it for yourselves_) but only in the third person does the reflexive pronoun differ from the ordinary strong pronoun:

*Jo parlo de mi* = I speak about myself.
*Ella parla de si* = She speaks about herself.

The strong reflexive pronoun is often reinforced by _mateix -a:_

No fareu res si no és per a vosaltres mateixos = You won’t do anything unless it is for yourselves.
És una noia que té molta confiança en si (mateixa) = She is a girl who has a lot of confidence in herself.

Having studied the use of _si_, we must remark that _ell, ells, etc._, are often used reflexively. A sentence like _Parlaven entre ells (They were speaking amongst themselves)_ is perfectly acceptable.

**Weak object pronouns**

These are pronouns which can stand only in conjunction with a verb, as direct or indirect objects (for the weak reflexive pronouns, see Lesson 19, p. 154). The several forms of the weak pronouns vary according to their position with the verb and according to the spelling of the verb:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BEFORE VERB</th>
<th>AFTER VERB 1</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Direct</td>
<td>Direct</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indirect</td>
<td>Indirect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>object</td>
<td>object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Verb beginning with a consonant (Reinforced forms)</td>
<td>Verb ending in consonant or u (Full form)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<p>| | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>em</td>
<td>em</td>
<td>-me</td>
<td>-me</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>et</td>
<td>et</td>
<td>-te</td>
<td>-te</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>el (m.) la (f.)</td>
<td>li (m. &amp; f.)</td>
<td>-lo (m.) -la (f.)</td>
<td>-li (m. &amp; f.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ens</td>
<td>ens</td>
<td>-nos</td>
<td>-nos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>us</td>
<td>us</td>
<td>-vos</td>
<td>-vos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>els (m.) les (f.)</td>
<td>els (m. &amp; f.)</td>
<td>-los (m.) -les (f.)</td>
<td>-los (m. &amp; f.)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Lesson Sixteen  131

BEFORE VERB

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Direct</th>
<th>Indirect object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Verb beginning with vowel or h + vowel

(Elided forms)

m'  
m  
't  
'l (m. & f.)  
la (f.)^2  
ens  
us  
els (m.) les (f.)  

AFTER VERB

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Direct</th>
<th>Indirect object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Verb ending in a, e, or i

(Reduced forms)

m'  
m  
't  
'l (m.) -la (f.)  
-li  
'ns  
-us  
'ls (m.) -les (f.)  

1 All pronouns which follow the verb are joined to it either by a hyphen or by an apostrophe. A hyphen is used for all the full forms.

2 The third person singular direct object pronoun la does not elide with a verb beginning in unstressed i (hi) or u (hu).

Position and use of weak object pronouns

The weak pronouns stand before the verb (including auxiliary have), except with an infinitive, an imperative or a gerund (see Lesson 22, pp. 182–5), in which case the full or reduced form is attached after the verb. When a pronoun is the object of an infinitive dependent upon another verb (e.g., the periphrastic preterite) it can either precede this verb or be attached after the infinitive. Study the following examples:

1. Direct object pronouns:

Si hi ha errors, els corregiré = If there are any mistakes I shall correct them.

El mapa? L'he perdut = The map? I have lost it.

Aquell volia saludar-te  
Aquell et volia saludar  

= That man wanted to greet you.

2. Indirect object pronouns:

Deixa'm aquell llibre = Lend me that book.

Doni'ls (vostè) dos duros  
Doneu-los (vosaltres) dos duros  

= Give them two duros (un duro = a five-peseta coin).

Haig de comunicar-vos un secret  
Us haig de comunicar un secret  

= I have to let you know a secret.

T'ensenyaré el telegrama que ens van enviar  
ens van enviar  

= I shall show you the telegram they sent us.

Digue'ls que aviat els portarem els segells = Tell them that we shall bring them the stamps soon.

A la mare li he regalat un encendedor = To Mother I have given a lighter.

The last example above, where the object is expressed twice, illustrates a construction which is widely encountered in Catalan. A noun direct or indirect object may, for emphasis, be placed before the verb. When this happens the object must be repeated in weak-pronoun form immediately
before the verb. A strong pronoun thus introduced for emphasis or clarification can come before or after the verb. Whether a strong pronoun used in this way represents a direct or an indirect object, it is always preceded by a:

A vostè no l’havia vist = I had not seen you.
No ens coneixerà pas, ni a tu ni a mi = He won’t recognize either you or me.
La meva germana no la veig gaire = I don’t see very much of my sister.
A l’aprenent li van oferir un augment de sou = They offered the apprentice a salary increase.

In English a similar emphasis is usually achieved by stress rather than by any change in sentence construction.

**General note on the weak pronouns**

For the first and second persons there is no difference in form between direct and indirect object pronouns: Ajuda’m = Help me (direct object), Ensenya’m això = Show me that (indirect object). Third person pronouns are generally more complicated. It is essential to decide, before translating from the English, whether a third person pronoun is a direct or indirect object since this is something which will determine the form of the Catalan pronoun:

Dóna-li el premi = Give him the prize (indirect object).
Felicita’l = Congratulate him (direct object).
Imitem-les = Let us imitate them (f.) (direct object).
Ensenyem-los la roba = Let us show them (f.) the clothes (indirect object).

Note that there is no distinctive feminine form for the third person indirect object pronoun: li means both to him and to her, and, similarly in the plural, for -los, els and ’ls.

**VOCABULARY**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Catalan</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>l’aparador (m.), shop window</td>
<td>fer servir, to use</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>el cargol, screw (also snail)</td>
<td>la joguina, toy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>el coixí, cushion</td>
<td>el lloguer, rent, hire</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cridar, to shout, call</td>
<td>el pastís, pie</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>el davantal, apron</td>
<td>pensar, to think</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>deixar, to leave, lend</td>
<td>pensar en, to think about,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>deixar + inf., to allow, let</td>
<td>think of; to remember</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>descobrir, to discover,</td>
<td>pensar + inf., to intend to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>disclose</td>
<td>pensar a + inf., to remember</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>el descompte, discount</td>
<td>to, think to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exposar, to display, put on</td>
<td>rovellat -ada, rusty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>show</td>
<td>la sala d’espera, waiting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fer gràcia, to be amusing,</td>
<td>room</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>charming, attractive</td>
<td>el tornavís, screwdriver</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(things)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

si us plau (pronounced [sis pláw]) = please (lit. if it pleases you). In this expression the us is generally invariable and stays unchanged whether it is directed to one person addressed as tu or vostè, or to several people addressed as vosaltres or vostès. Us corresponds, of course, to the old polite form vós, but this association is almost lost.

Déu vos guard is a formal greeting (lit. May God keep you) exchanged when someone enters a room, shop, etc. It is common to find the vos in this expression substituted by the pronoun corresponding to the form of address used by the people concerned: Déu lo/la guard, Déu los/les guard.

**EXERCISE 16**

(a) **Study and translate:**
1. On és el diari? — No sé; busca’l tu mateix. — Ja l’he
buscat, però no puc trobar-lo enlloc. . . . Ah, sí; mira! Ja el tinc! Estava amagat sota aquest coixí.
2. Si veus la Núria, pregunta-li què pensa fer amb els diners que li ha deixat el seu avi. A veure si a tu et descobreix el seu secret.
3. Què penso d’aquestes cançons? Doncs, a mi no em fan cap gràcia. I a tu?
4. Passin a la sala d’espera, si us plau. Si em necessiten per a alguna cosa, cridin-me.
5. Si pensa tornar a parlar d’ell mateix, jo no vull escoltar-lo.
7. Deixeus-los parlar. Us diran el mateix que nosaltres acabem d’explicar-vos.
8. Vés a buscar-me el tornavis. — Per què el vols? — Fes el que et dic. Aquests cargols són rovellats i vull canviar-los.
9. Has pensat en les nenes? — Sí; els he regalat una joguina a cadascuna.
10. Entre tu i jo embolicarem aquests paquets i els portarem a correus. Les cartes, ja les tirarà a la bûstia en Tomàs quan haurà comprat els segells.
11. La mort el va sorprendre quan menys l’esperava.
12. Quan va marxar de casa nostra ens va dir que vindria a veure-us un dia d’aquests.

(b) Translate (giving familiar and polite, singular and plural forms for all sentences which involve a second person subject or object):

1. These [people] have always been able to count on me; now I must count on them.
2. What is he doing with those books? He doesn’t need them all. Why doesn’t he put back in their place the ones that he isn’t using?
3. If you pay them immediately for the hire of the room they will perhaps give (fer) you a small discount.
4. Please give me back the two pounds that I lent you last week.
5. They talk a lot amongst themselves but they never tell us their secrets.
6. We saw James this morning but we didn’t think to congratulate him on having won the prize.
7. Where are the girls? Please call them and give them their supper.
8. I have left the screwdriver in the garage. Wait for me a moment; I’ll go and fetch it.
9. Tell him what you are thinking about. He only wants to help you.
10. Where do you intend to spend the night if they won’t let you go into the waiting room?
11. Then he showed us some photographs which we found very amusing.
12. Who sold you these pies? — We bought them yesterday at the baker’s. What’s wrong (use passar)? Aren’t they very good?
Lesson 17

Adverbial pronouns

Catalan has two adverbial pronouns—en and hi—which perform economically a number of important functions. Students with a knowledge of French or Italian will already be familiar with similar pronouns whose use is quite close to that of their Catalan counterparts.

En basically represents a combination of de plus a pronoun. It can thus have a variety of meanings: of it, of them, some of it, some of them, any of it, etc., from there, from it, from them, about it, etc.; in fact, the full list would be very long because en can signify any meaning of de together with any pronoun representing a person, a concept or a thing.

Like several other weak pronouns, en has a variety of forms according to its position and to the spelling of the verb: before a verb its reinforced form is en and its elided form n'; after a verb it has the full form -ne and the reduced 'n. Consider carefully the form and use of en in these examples:

Vols més raïm? — No, gràcies, no en vull més = Do you want any more grapes? — No, thank you, I don’t want any more.
Sents aire? — No, no en sento gens = Can you feel a draught? — No, I can’t feel any at all.
Si tens diners, dóna’n als pobres = If you have money, give some to the poor.
Això és curiós; demà haurem de parlar-ne = This is curious; tomorrow we must talk about it.
Bolets? Al camp n’hi ha molts = Mushrooms? In the country there are plenty (of them).
Entro a la fàbrica de bon matí i no en surto fins al vespre

= I go into the factory in the early morning and don’t come out (of it) until the evening.
Tu vas tornar ahir de Valls, i ells en tornaran demà = You came back yesterday from Valls and they will come back (from there) tomorrow.
Aquest matí parlàvem de tu, i ara en tornem a parlar = This morning we were talking about you, and now we are talking about you again.

When a noun is represented by en, any adjectives referring to that noun are preceded by de:

Si voleu comprar flors, en tenim de molt boniques = If you want to buy flowers, we have some very pretty ones.

Similarly, a noun already represented by en is preceded by de if it is repeated:

En tenia quatre, de gossos i de gosses = He had four, dogs and bitches.

Hi has only the one form in all positions. It is the same pronoun that we have already used with haver, meaning there is, etc. To understand its full range of meanings we must consider that hi represents the combination of any preposition, other than de, with a pronoun:

1. In expressions of place and movement, meaning there:

Vaig buscar-te al bar, però no hi eres = I looked for you in the bar but you weren’t there.
Obre la cartera i posa-hi aquests papers = Open the wallet and put these papers in it.
Coneixes Perpinyà? Sempre he tingut ganes d’anar-hi = Do you know Perpignan? I have always fancied going there.
Heu vingut a través del bosc? — No; avui no hi hem passat = Did you come through the woods? — No; we didn’t come that way today.
Lesson Seventeen 139

2. Standing for a preposition, except de, together with a pronoun:

Sortia amb la Teresa, però ja no hi surt = He used to go out with Teresa but now doesn’t (go out with her) any more.
Penso sovint en la Joana, i no deixaré mai de pensar-hi = I often think about Jean, and I shall never cease to think about her.

3. Hi accompanies verbs of perception used intransitively:

No hi sent el pobre; és sord = The poor man can’t hear; he’s deaf.
No sóc pas cec, però només hi veig clar de l’ull dret = I am not blind, but I can only see clearly with my right eye.

4. Hi also appears in a number of idiomatic expressions:

Som-hi? — Sí; som-hi — Anem doncs = Are we ready? — Yes, we are ready. — Let’s go then.
Què hi farem? = What’s to be done? (expressing resignation), I ask you.
No hi fa res = It doesn’t matter.

The neuter pronoun ho

Ho is invariable like hi. It is a weak pronoun which stands for one of the neuter demonstrative pronouns—això, allò—or for a whole clause or sentence:

Has vist això? — No, no ho he vist = Have you seen this? — No, I haven’t seen it.
Si em preguntes quant val aquest gerro, et diré que no ho sé = If you ask me how much this jug is worth, I shall tell you that I don’t know.

140 Catalan

Ho can stand for an adjective or non-individualized noun complement of ésser, estar, semblar (to seem):

No sé si és boig; però ho sembla = I don’t know if he is mad; but he looks it.
Estava malalta; ara ja ho està = She was ill; now she isn’t any longer.
Semblen germans, però no ho són = They look like brothers but they aren’t.
(Cf. Em creia que eren els germans d’en Toni, però no els eren = I thought they were Tony’s brothers, but they weren’t.)

Ho often translates English so in cases like:

Això és veritat; ho diu el capità = This is true; the captain says so.
No ho crec = I don’t believe it, I don’t think so.

When everything is the object of a verb it is translated by a construction in which ho introduces tot (cf. it all):

Ho he explicat tot al tribunal = I have explained everything to the tribunal.
És un home que sap perdonar-ho tot = He is a man who can forgive everything.

Uses of the indirect object

The indirect object in Catalan has some functions which require special attention:

1. Indicating a person interested in or related with the action of the verb (cf. English Make them a bed or Make a bed for them):

Mireu-me la data del manuscrit = Look at the date of the manuscript for me.
Vostè no podrà sortir d’Espanya si encara no li han arreglat
el passaport = You won’t be able to leave Spain if they still haven’t fixed up your passport.
Els buscarem un bon hotel = We shall look for a good hotel for them.

2. Indicating the person from (or of) whom something is concealed, acquired, requested or required:
Al vell masover li vaig comprar un cavall = I bought a horse from the old farmer.
Aquell núvol ens amaga la lluna = That cloud hides the moon from us.
Va demanar la nota al cambre = He asked the waiter for the bill.
Demanem-li aquest favor = Let us ask this favour of him/her.
El nostre exèrcit ha pres la ciutat a l’enemic = Our army has taken the city from the enemy.

3. Indicating the owner of parts of the body, clothing and certain personal belongings to which an action is done. Note that the corresponding English construction involves a possessive:
Corda-li l’americana = Button up his jacket for him.
M’han pres el mocador de la butxaca = They have taken my handkerchief from my pocket.
Un gos li va mossegar la cuixa = A dog bit his thigh.
Aquest cinturó de seguretat t'ha salvat la vida = This safety belt has saved your life.

The part of the body, etc., is expressed in the singular if the action is concerned with only one per person:
Els cinturons de seguretat us han salvat la vida = The safety belts have saved your lives.
Els vaig lligar la mà dreta = I tied their right hands; but
Els vaig lligar les dues mans = I tied their two hands.

EXERCISE 17

(a) Study and translate:
1. Una bona obra en demana una altra.
2. Algú havia deixat obert l’armari i els nens en van treure tot el que hi havia a dintre.
3. Ho veig massa complicat, tot això. Deixem-ho córrer per ara; no vull més maldecaps. Ja en pararem un altre dia.
5. No n’he begut gaire, del vi aquest, però m’ha pujat al cap. Quan he començat a beure’l no em semblava gens fort, però ara veig que ho és molt.
6. Va dir el jove que ho confessaria tot als seus pares, que no volia amagar-los més la veritat del que li havia passat.
7. Tu no has pensat en els encàrrecs que us van fer; en Martí sí que hi ha pensat.
8. Els feien mal els peus i no volien seguir per aquell camí. Van tombar a la dreta i van agafar per un altre que baixava cap al poble.
10. No hi sent gaire, pobre home; li hauràs de cridar a l’orella.
11. No vèiem mai en Batista a la fàbrica, perquè a l’hora que nosaltres hi arribàvem ja n’havien sortit ell i tots els altres que treballaven de nits.
12. Aguanti’m el barret i el bastó, i li buscaré una de les meves targetes ... Tingui. Si el puc servir en alguna cosa, ja sap on trobar-me. Passi-ho bé, senyor Pujols.

(b) Translate:
1. Have this parcel weighed for me, please, and put the stamps on it.
2. Can the old man still hear? — Well, he’s a little hard of hearing, but he understands everything nevertheless.
3. If he doesn’t want to do this good turn, let’s leave it for now. It doesn’t matter; it’s [all] the same to me.
4. The soldiers’ backs hurt and they could no longer bear the weight of the bags which the captain had made them carry.
5. Have you any red ribbons? — No; we only have blue ones and yellow ones.
Lesson 18

Combinations of weak pronouns

So far we have considered cases of a verb with only one weak object pronoun. But there are, of course, many occasions when more than one element have to be expressed as pronouns: e.g. *I give it to him*, *We lend them some*. The rules already observed for the position of one pronoun with a verb still apply when there are two or more pronouns: an infinitive, imperative or gerund has the pronouns attached after it; otherwise the pronouns will stand before the verb. In addition there are rules which govern the combination of several pronouns in a group either after or before the verb.

The first principle is that, before or after the verb, an indirect object precedes a direct object. When *en* or *hi* is involved it comes last in the group, and when both are used together *en* precedes *hi* in the combination *n’hi* or *-n’hi*:

He recollit els ous d’avui; no n’hi haurà més fins demà = I have collected today’s eggs; there will be no more until tomorrow.

The form taken by other individual pronouns within a group depends upon the spelling of the accompanying pronoun(s) and upon the spelling of the verb itself.

Combinations after the verb

If the first pronoun of the group is *ens* or *els* and the verb ends in a vowel other than *u*, then the first pronoun is reduced to *’ns* or *’ls* and joined to any following pronoun by a hyphen:

Deixa’n-la = Lend it to us.
Vaig prometre’ls-en a vostès = I promised you some.

In all other cases the first pronoun takes the full form, joined to the verb with a hyphen. A further hyphen will join succeeding pronouns whenever the first ends in a consonant or the second begins with one. When they come as the second pronoun in such cases, *el*, *els*, *us* and *en* take this reinforced form, i.e. the form they usually have when they stand before the verb:

Hem de portar-vos-els = We must bring them to you.
Deixeu-nos-el = Lend it to us (cf. Deixa’n-la above).
Si ja heu comprat l’anell, no poden prendre-us-el = If you have already bought the ring they can’t take it away from you.
Si volen anar a aquell magatzem, tu podràs ensenyar-los-hi el camí = If they want to go to that store, you will be able to show them the way (there).
Tenia molts diners, però no volia deixar-nos-en = He had lots of money but he wouldn’t lend us any.

Otherwise, when the first pronoun ends in a vowel and the second begins in one, a reduction occurs and the two are joined by means of an apostrophe. As a rule in such circumstances it is the second pronoun which is reduced after the full form of the first:

Si teniu tinta, \{veneu-me’n\} \{veneu-li’n\} = If you have any ink, sell me/him/her some.
Saps el nom de la planta? Doncs apunta-me’l = Do you know the name of the plant? Then jot it down for me.
Si has portat els documents podrem arreglar-te’ls ara mateix = If you have brought the documents we shall be able to put them in order for you right now.

However, when *lo* is in combination with *en* the two are joined as *l’en*. Since *ho* and *hi* cannot be reduced the preceding pronoun must be elided if it ends with a vowel:
El gat fa nosa a la cuina; treu-l’én = The cat is a nuisance in the kitchen; take it out.
Això és molt difícil; no sabria explicar-t’ho = This is very difficult; I couldn’t explain it to you.
Posaràs el test al balcó? — No, no vull posar-l’è = Will you put the plant-pot on the balcony? — No, I don’t want to put it there.

Compare this last sentence with an instance using the feminine pronoun la which does not elide before hi:
Deixarás la maleta a l’estació? — No, no vull deixar-la-hi.

Combinations before the verb

No hyphen appears in any group of pronouns before a verb. The full forms me, te (and reflexive se) are used when they come first in any combination. If the verb begins with a vowel or h and if the last pronoun of a group has an elided form, then they are combined thus:

Me l’omple = He fills it for me.
Si no tens farina jo te n’obtindré = If you haven’t any flour I shall obtain some for you.

In all other cases the pronoun group stands separate from the verb. As is the rule for groups which follow the verb, it is generally the second pronoun of any pair that, where necessary, is reduced, except in the case of lo + en giving l’en and except when the second pronoun is hi or ho. Study carefully the following examples:

\[
\begin{align*}
\{\text{Me’l}\} & \quad \text{dóna} = \text{He gives it to me.} \\
\{\text{Me la}\} & \\
\{\text{M’ho}\} & \\
\{\text{Me’n dòna}\} & = \text{He gives me some.} \\
\{\text{Us els}\} & \\
\{\text{Us les}\} & \quad \text{robaran} = \text{They will steal them from you.}
\end{align*}
\]

Groups of third person pronouns

Any two third person pronouns, an indirect and a direct object, will combine according to the rules already studied. The sentence La mare posa els guants als nens (Mother puts the children’s gloves on for them), with the nouns replaced by pronouns, becomes Ella els els posa. Here the first els is the indirect object (nens) and the second els stands for the direct object (guants). Consider two similar combinations:

Si no poden treballar sense els dibuixos, envia’t el els = If they can’t work without the drawings, send them to them.

Buscaré aquelles fotos i els les ensenyaré a vostè demà = I shall look for those photos and show them to you tomorrow.

However, in the case of the singular indirect object li in combination with a direct object el, la, els, les (and, colloquially, with adverbial en) an alternative arrangement is commonly found. It involves an exception to the rule that the indirect object precedes the direct object in pronoun groups. With the pronouns mentioned, li can be replaced by
hi and preceded by el, la els, les (and en), according to the normal rules of combination and spelling. Study closely these examples:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Li'l donarem} & \quad \text{We shall give it (m.) to him/her/you (vostè).} \\
\text{L'hi donarem} & \quad \text{I shall lend it (f.) to him, etc.} \\
\text{Li la deixaré} & \quad \text{Take them (m.) to him, etc.} \\
\text{Porta-li's} & \quad \text{Buy them (f.) from him, etc.} \\
\text{Porta'ls-hi} & \quad \text{I shall lend it (f.) to him, etc.}
\end{align*}
\]

In each of these examples both combinations are equally acceptable. The combination n’hi, where hi = li, is considered less strictly correct than li’n, but the former does occur frequently:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{A vostè ja li he demanat massa favors i no vull} & \quad \text{I have already asked too many favours of you and} \\
\text{demanar-li’n} & \quad \text{I don’t want to ask for any more.} \\
\text{demanar-n’hi} & \quad \text{Has he} \\
\text{més = I have already asked too many favours of you and} & \quad \text{made much on this deal?} \\
\text{I don’t want to ask for any more.} & \quad \text{Quite a bit!}
\end{align*}
\]

**General remarks on the pronouns**

It will be appreciated by now that the combination of weak pronouns is one of the most intricate and exacting aspects of Catalan grammar. Space here does not permit illustration with an example of every possible combination of two or more pronouns. However, careful study of the rules and examples given above should provide a sound basis for fluent and accurate expression. The full table of two-pronoun groups, Appendix II, will be useful for checking particular cases and for general revision of the subject.

A gentle warning must also be given at this point. What we have studied here are the basic principles and the correct forms of the pronouns, according to grammatical theory and as they appear in the written language. A certain number of these, however, would not be used naturally in ordinary conversation. It is beyond the scope of this book to cover the colloquial substitutions and crosses between pronoun forms which occur in the everyday language. In general these are quite simple and easily understandable if one has a command of the standard forms. In speaking oneself all that is needed are the latter, although it will be found that certain colloquial habits are soon acquired. In writing the language, of course, it is essential to observe always the grammatically acceptable forms.

**Combinations of three pronouns**

It is possible for three (or even four) pronouns to be grouped together with a verb. When this occurs the rules for order are the same as for two pronouns. The presence of a third weak pronoun influences the form of the second in the same way that a second pronoun affects the form of the first, the third pronoun being treated like the second in a combination of two:

\[
\text{Els d'allà volen aquesta cadira; porta'ls-la-hi} = \text{Those people} \\
\text{over there want this chair; take it over to them.}
\]
VOCABULARY

l’autocar (m.), (motor) coach
la capsà, (small) box
el cobrador, conductor
el conductor, driver
la cullera, spoon
el dit, finger; small amount (of liquid)
l’exemplelar (m.), copy (of book)
la farmàcia, chemist’s shop
fi fina, sharp, fine, delicate, of quality
la forquilla, fork
fer goig } to look nice
fer bonic } guardar, to keep
el gust, taste, flavour;
pleasure
el metall, metal
la minyona, maid
mudar, to change
el passatge, passage, corridor
la pastilla, tablet
el petó, kiss
la pilota, ball
precios -osa, delightful
el preu, price
el sabó, soap
el sogre, father-in-law
la sogra, mother-in-law
el vaixell, ship

Exercise 18

(a) Study and translate:

1. Això que li ha fet la seva sogra, mai no li ho perdonarà.
2. Si vols comprar sabó, a la farmàcia te’n vendran de molt fi.
3. En Tomaset va demanar la pilota al seu germà gran, però aquest no va voler tornar-la-hi.
4. Ell, això, ens ho pinta molt fàcil, però ja veureu com no ho és gens.
5. Els veïns van haver de vendre aquest moble, quan van mudar de casa, i els el vam comprar a molt bon preu. Oi que fa goig aquí?
6. Si us ve de gust un cafè, la minyona us en farà de seguida.
7. No és gaire fi menjar fruita amb els dits. A la cuina hi ha més ganivets i forquilles. Esperin, que els n’hi aniré a buscar.
9. He deixat unes pastilles dins aquella capsà de metall que hi ha damunt la televisió. Me les hi guardaràs fins demà? T’ho agrairia molt.
10. L’autocar va molt ple. Què fem amb les maletes si no hi caben a dintre? — Doncs el conductor o el cobrador us les haurà de posar al damunt.
11. Encara no has fet un petó a l’àvia. Apa: tes-n’hi un i digues bona nit a tothom.
12. Va dir als seus amics que, si a Barcelona no hi trobaven aquell llibre, amb molt de gust els n’enviaria un exemplar de Londres.

(b) Translate:

1. The doctor offered the lady his chair but she would not take it (from him).
2. If you need another tablet of soap the maid will fetch you one. — No, thank you; there is enough here already.
3. John had never listened to the records which they had brought from Andorra, and they said they would lend them to him with (much) pleasure.
4. Do you want some more brandy in this glass? — Yes, pour me a little, please. It has a very delicate taste, this brandy.
5. This clock looks nice here, doesn’t it? Who gave it to you?
6. His father-in-law had painted some delightful pictures, but nobody would buy any from him at the price he was asking for them.
7. Yes, this bus stops right in front of the market. The conductor told me when I got on.
8. Show him in which drawer you keep the spoons and he will put them on the table for you.
9. They did not hear anything of what the judge was saying. But their nephew, whose hearing is very sharp, did not miss a single word and he explained it all to them afterwards.
10. The company says that they still don’t know when the ship will leave for New York, but that they will let us know soon.
11. Father hid the box of matches on top of the kitchen cupboard and said that the children would never find it there.
12. Your trunk is in the way here in the passage. I’ll take it out and leave it by the door for you.
13. Explain it to them, and let’s see if they can do it [for] themselves.

Lesson 19

Reflexive verbs

A reflexive verb is one whose direct or indirect object, expressed as a pronoun, is one and the same as its subject. The Catalan weak reflexive pronouns have the same forms whether they stand as direct or as indirect reflexive objects. In the first and second persons these reflexive pronouns are identical with the corresponding object pronouns (em, et, ens, us, etc.). The third person has a distinctive reflexive pronoun es, for both singular and plural. This is the weak counterpart of the strong pronoun si that we have already encountered. The reinforced form es is elided before an initial vowel to s’; after a verb it has the full form -se and the reduced ‘s. Before a verb which begins with s the full form se often replaces es: es serveix or se serveix (he serves himself). Like other weak pronouns, the reflexive pronouns are placed immediately before a finite verb and attached after an infinitive, imperative affirmative or gerund. Whether it is used as direct or indirect object, the reflexive comes first in any pronoun group.

A reflexive verb is recognized in dictionaries and vocabularies by the third person pronoun attached to the infinitive: rentar-se = to wash (oneself), where rentar is the transitive verb to wash. Such verbs are conjugated, of course, with the appropriate reflexive pronoun to each part:

(jo)   em rento   (nosaltres)  ens rentem
(tu)   et rentes   (vosaltres)  us renteu
(ell, ella, vostè) es renta   (ells, elles, vostès) es renten

Where necessary the infinitive will take the appropriate pronoun:

Hem de rentar-nos = We must have a wash.
A few verbs exist only in the reflexive:

\begin{itemize}
\item \textbf{donar-se (de), to notice, realize}
\item \textbf{asemblar-se (a), to resemble}
\item \textbf{atrevir-se (a), to dare}
\item \textbf{descuidar-se (de), to forget, neglect (to do something)}
\end{itemize}

\textit{Empasar-se, to swallow}
\textit{Emportar-se} to carry away
\textit{Endur-se} \quad \textit{Take away}
\textit{Queixar-se (de), to complain (about)}

\textit{Vaig adonar-me que tots eren coixos} = I realized that they were all lame.

\textit{Les dues germanes s’assemblaven molt} = The two sisters looked very much alike.
\textit{No me’n queixo pas} = I’m not complaining (about it).
\textit{Volíem preguntar-li-ho, però ens n’hem descuidat} = We wanted to ask him but we forgot.

Sometimes English has one verb which is both transitive and intransitive where Catalan differentiates with a transitive and reflexive use of the same verb:

\textit{L’aigua del riu mou aquest moli} = The water from the river moves (i.e. makes work) this mill.

\textit{No ens mourem pas d’aquí} = We will not move from here.
\textit{Van asseure el malalt al costat del foc} = They sat the invalid by the fireside.
\textit{Assegui’s a terra} = Sit on the ground.

Certain transitive verbs in Catalan have a corresponding reflexive form where two different verbs are used in English:

\begin{itemize}
\item \textbf{aixecar, to raise, lift up}
\item \textbf{aixecar-se, to get up, rise, stand up}
\item \textbf{llevar, to lift off, lift up}
\item \textbf{llevar-se, to get up}
\item \textbf{acostar, to bring (take) near}
\item \textbf{acostar-se, to approach, come near}
\item \textbf{acomiar, to dismiss; to see off, say goodbye to}
\item \textbf{acomiar-se (de), to take one’s leave of, say goodbye to}
\end{itemize}

\textbf{Reflexive pronoun as direct object}

Any transitive verb can be used reflexively:

\textit{El general es va matar amb una fulla d’afaitar} = The general killed himself with a razor blade.
\textit{Ens defensesem a cops de puny} = We shall defend ourselves with our fists.
\textit{Despulleu-vos i tireu-vos a l’aigua} = Get undressed and dive into the water.

The reflexive pronoun, as well as referring directly back to the subject of the verb, may also be used in a reciprocal sense, to indicate interaction between different parts of a plural subject:

\textit{Ens veurem demà} = We shall see one another tomorrow.
\textit{Són individus que no s’entenen i que sempre es barallen} = They are individuals who don’t get on together and who are always arguing with each other.

When there is danger of ambiguity between a reciprocal meaning and a purely reflexive use, the addition of \textit{l’} a \textit{l’alte} (in agreement with the subject) makes it clear that a reciprocal meaning is intended:

\textit{Les noies es van mirar al mirall} = The girls looked at themselves in the mirror.
\textit{Les noies es van mirar l’una a l’altra} = The girls looked at each other.

\textbf{Reflexive pronoun as indirect object}

As well as the straightforward indirect object, the reflexive also covers the idiomatic uses of the indirect object studied in Lesson 17, pp. 140–1:

\textit{Ens vam repartir els diners} = We shared out the money among ourselves.
Lesson Nineteen 157

Repetiu-vos aquestes paraules = Repeat these words to yourself.

Translating the English for:

Em prepararé un plat de mongetes = I'll make myself a plate of beans.
Miri-s’ho bé = Have a good look at it (for yourself).

Indicating possession of parts of the body and personal clothing, etc., to which the action of the verb is done; note again that the English equivalent involves a possessive:

Afaita’t la barba = Shave off your beard.
Es van tapar els ulls amb les mans = They covered their eyes with their hands.
Avui em posaré el jersei nou = Today I shall put on my new jersey.
Va haver de treure’s les sabates = He had to take his shoes off.

Giving force and finality to the action of the verb:

Va fumar-se un paquet sencer de tabac = He smoked (through) a whole packet of tobacco.
Menja-te’l tot = Eat it all up.

(As in these examples, the equivalent emphasis is often conveyed in English by the use of a preposition.)

Related to the function of the passive in the last examples is the way in which certain common intransitive verbs and verbs of thinking, imagining, etc., are almost invariably made reflexive:

Vols quedar-te aquí? No m’ho puc creure = You want to stay here? I can’t believe it.
Em penso que és boja = I think she is mad.
Ja ens imaginem el que t’aurà dit = We can well imagine what he will have said to you.

Catalan

The verb anar-se’n

This is a separate verb which means to go away, go off, leave; to slip (off, away):

Me’n vaig a Madrid = I’m off to Madrid.
Vés-te’n al llit de seguida = Go to bed immediately.
Aquest gos sempre se me’n va de casa = This dog (of mine) is always running away from home.
Se li’n va anar la mà i em va posar massa rom = His hand slipped and he poured me too much rum.

The reflexive in a passive sense

The Catalan reflexive can be used to give a passive or impersonal sense to an active verb, thus translating the English passive or the impersonal pronoun one (we, they, people, etc.) with the corresponding active verb:

Els fills es deien Maurici i Montserrat = The children were called Maurice and Montserrat.
Es veu que no hi ha remei = It appears that nothing can be done.
Se sentia un soroll estrany = A strange noise could be heard.
Com es fa això? = How is this done? How does one do this?
Els programes es venien a dos duros cadascun = They were selling the programmes at two duros each.

This construction with the reflexive exists side by side with the passive voice (Lesson 12, pp. 102–3) and with the impersonal constructions which will be studied in Lesson 23 (pp. 189–90).

Translating to be and to become

The idea of to be can be translated otherwise than with èsser or estar. The verbs anar, veure’s, trobar-se and quedar(se), according to their basic meaning, often reinforce the sense of to be:
Lesson Nineteen 159

Vaig de bòlit = I'm at sixes and sevens.
Es veia perdut = He (could see that he) was lost.
Com te trobes? — Estic molt cansat = How are you? — I'm very tired.
Va quedar molt sorprès; i jo encara m'hi vaig quedar més = He was very surprised; and I was even more so. (Note the use of hi in this type of construction.)

To become can be translated by esdevenir (conjugated like venir), but it is perhaps more commonly rendered by the reflexive verbs fer-se, tornar-se, posar-se:

En certes condicions el vi esdevé vinagre = In certain conditions wine becomes vinegar.
No era avar, però s'hi ha tornat amb els anys = He used not to be miserly, but he has become so over the years.
Quan es va adonar del que havia fet es va posar vermell = When he realized what he had done he turned red.
Conoc un catòlic que s'ha fet protestant = I know a Catholic who has become a Protestant.

VOCABULARY

anir (passada), last night
aprovechar, to approve; to pass (exam)
la bala, bullet
la causa, cause
a causa de, because of, owing to
el cel, sky, heaven
el cognom, surname
convencer, to convince
la dent, tooth
desfilar, to undo, take apart
desfilar-se de, to get rid of
divertirse, to be amused, have a good time, enjoy oneself
ducharse, to take a shower
duchar, to annoy
l'espatlla (f.), shoulder
ficar (a), to put in(to)
loca (f.), occasion
ofegar, to drown, choke, asphyxiate
l'os (m.), bone
la página, page

Catalan

la mala passada, nasty trick
la perda, loss
el pijama, pyjamas
la pila, pile, heap; large amount
preguntar-se, to wonder
quedar, to agree, arrange
raspar, to brush
el resultat, result
retratar, to portray, make (take) a picture of
la sang, blood
el tap, stopper, cork
la tapa, cover, lid
travessar, to cross, go through
la vergonya, shame, embarrassment

EXERCISE 19

(a) Study and translate:

1. Varen quedar tots els companys que es trobarien l'endemà en un bar prop del port.
2. Em penso que alguns encara no s'adonen de la importància dels resultats que hem obtingut. Ara se'ns ofereix una bona ocasió per a convèncer-los.
3. S'ha dit i s'ha repetit molt sovint 'Ajuda't i el cel t'ajudarà'.
4. Com es deien aquells joves amb qui anaven anir? — Un d'ells es deia Pere Bosch, i l'altre era un tal Maurici; ara no em recordo del seu cognom.
5. Al soldat una bala se li va emportar la mà esquerra i una altra li va travessar l'espatlla. Va morir poc temps després, a causa de la gran pèrdua de sang que havia sofert.
6. Quedeu-vos aquí amb nosaltres uns quants dies més, que ja s'acosta la festa major i ens hi divertirem de debò. Us ho prometo.
7. Els petits donaven taps d'ampolla al gos i l'hi deixaven jugar, fins que un dia el poble animal se'n va empassar un i gairebé va morir ofegat. Ells, quan van adonar-se que en tenien tota la culpa, es van posar tots vermells de vergonya.
8. Imagina’t! Li ho he recordat una pila de vegades i encara se’ns n’ha descuidat. Ai, què hi farem?
9. Va llevar la tapa de la caixa i va descobrir a dins un llibre, les pàgines del qual s’havien tornat grogues amb els anys. No es va atrevir a agafar-lo perquè sabia que allí mateix se li desfaria a les mans.
10. Acosti la cadira a la llum i assegui-s’hi. Si vostè es mou no el podré retratar.
11. Van quedar molt emhipats de la mala passada que els havien jugat, i se’n van anar d’aquell lloc sense ni acomiadar-se de ningú.
12. Normalment em dutxo abans de posar-me el pijama, però si vaig cansat i tinc ganes de ficar-me al llit només em rento les mans i la cara.

(b) Translate:

1. We could see a certain resemblance between the two sisters, but neither of them looked at all like their mother.
2. Who has shaved off your beard? — I shaved it off myself because it was a nuisance and I wanted to get rid of it.
3. Just imagine! They used to give him everything he asked them for, and still he complained.
4. They went down to the port to say goodbye to their brother-in-law, who was going off that day to the United States.
5. One day when he was getting out of a taxi his foot slipped and he fell and broke a bone in his leg.
6. Why has she taken off her blouse? — It’s because she wants to put on her new sweater and look at herself in the mirror.
7. Someone has evidently taken away one of the books from this pile and has forgotten to put it back.
8. He became very nervous when he realized that we had discovered the nasty trick that he intended to play on us.
9. The students congratulated one another when the examination results were announced and when they saw on the list that they had all passed.
10. He gets up at the same time every morning, has a wash, brushes his teeth and eats up a good breakfast of eggs before going off to work.
11. Do you know that girl who has just gone up to James? Can you remember her name? — I think she is called Alice or something like that, but I don’t know her surname.
12. He often used to wonder what had become of his old fiancée, but they never saw each other ever again after they had quarrelled that day.
Lesson 20

The comparative

The comparative of a Catalan adjective (bigger, more intelligent) is formed by placing més before the adjective:

Sara, et veig més prima = Sara, you look thinner to me.
Avui la gent és més rica i més feliç = People are richer and happier these days.
La necessitat ha esdevingut d’allò més urgent = The need has become all the more pressing.

The comparatives of molt and poc are més (more) and menys (less). A few common adjectives have alternative regular and irregular comparative forms: bo — més bo, millor; mal, dolent — pitjor, més dolent; gran — més gran, major; petit — més petit, menor. Més and menys are invariable throughout, and the other irregular comparatives do not have distinctive feminine forms (e.g. la cosa pitjor). Més gran and més petit generally indicate size (bigger, smaller) as opposed to seniority or superiority/inferiority, which are conveyed by major (greater) and menor (lesser). Major d’edat and menor d’edat are applied to people over and under the age of legal majority.

Menys is used for the comparative of inferiority:

La idea se m’ha fet menys interessant = The idea has become less interesting to me.
Les nits són menys llargues a l’estiu = The nights are less long in summer.

In practice, though, this type of expression would more often be constructed with no tan... com (not as... as): see below, p. 165.

164 Catalan

Translating than in comparisons

Than in a comparative sentence is translated in most cases by que:

En Pau era força més esportiu que el seu germà = Paul was a lot more sporty than his brother.
El carrer major de Reus és més ample que el de Tarragona = Reus High Street is wider than Tarragona’s.
Tu tens més pràctica que jo en qüestions de comerç = You have more experience than me in business matters.

When than introduces a comparative noun clause (He was taller than he looked) it is translated by que no or by del que (de + neuter article el + que):

Va resultar més fàcil {que no} semblava = It proved to be easier than it looked.
Dóna més {del que} promet = He gives more than he promises.
Vàreu tardar menys a fer-ho {que no} ens haviem imaginat = You took less time to do it than we had imagined.

Del que is not used when a verb is suppressed in the second part of the comparison. In such cases the no of que no can be reinforced with pas or omitted altogether:

Estarem més bé a fora {que no} a dintre = We shall be better off outside than inside.
Pitjor serà la cura {que no} la malaltia = The cure will be worse than the illness.
More than, less than, before an indication of quantity or number, are expressed by més de, menys de:

*Vaig estar dret durant més d'una hora* = I stood for more than an hour.
*Van venir menys de vint* = Fewer than twenty came.
*En aquesta paella hi ha entrat més d'un quilo d'arròs* = More than a kilo of rice has gone into this *paella*.

**Other terms of comparison**

Study the following:

**tal com** = just as, just like
**tan ... com** = so, as ... as
**tant -a ... com** = as much ... as; *pl.* as many ... as

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{com} & \{ \text{més} \} \ldots \{ \text{menys} \} = \text{the more} \ldots \text{the less} \\
\text{com} & \{ \text{menys} \} \ldots \{ \text{menys} \} = \text{less} \ldots \text{less}
\end{align*}
\]

**Era tal com me l'havien descrit** = He was just as they had described him to me.

**No sóc pas tan ximple com tu** = I am not as silly as you.
**Sabadell té tanta indústria com Terrassa** = Sabadell has as much industry as Terrassa.
**Tu has enraonat tant com ella** = You have talked as much as she has.
**El vostre projecte no ofereix tants avantatges com el nostre** = Your plan does not offer as many advantages as ours.

**Com menys treballarem, menys guanyarem** = The less you work the less you will learn.
**Com més serem, més riurem** = The more the merrier.

**Superlatives**

In Catalan the superlative (*biggest, most intelligent*) is the same as the comparative, except that the definite article

accompanied it when the adjective stands apart from its noun:

*Aquest hotel és el més còmode de la ciutat* = This hotel is the most comfortable one in the city.
*Era el panorama més impressionant que havia vist en ma vida* = It was the most impressive panorama that I had seen in my life.
*Això serà potser el millor que podeu fer* = This will perhaps be the best thing that you can do.
*En Carles és el més savi de tots nosaltres* = Charles is the wisest of us all.

Observe that reference of the superlative, unless there is a subordinate verb, is indicated by *de*.

The absolute *superlative*—which intensifies rather than compares—is formed by adding the suffix -*issim* -a to the last consonant of the simple adjective. Sometimes a change of spelling or accentuation is required in accordance with pronunciation:

*Aquests camions moderns són rapidíssims* = These modern lorries are extremely fast (*ràpid* -a = fast).
*La botifarra de Vic és riquísima* = Vic sausage is most tasty.
*Té una lletra boníssima per un noi de la seva edat* = He has really good handwriting for a boy of his age.

*Most, indicating quantity, is translated by la majoria (de) or la major part (de) (usually as the subject of a verb), or by quasi tots -es, gairebé tots -es (almost all) (usually as object). As a subject la majoria and la major part generally take a plural verb:*

*La major part d'ells eren mallorquins* = Most of them were Majorcans.
*La majoria de les dones volen trobar-se un marit* = Most women want to find themselves a husband.
*Ja he fregat gairebé tots els plats* = I have already washed up most of the dishes.
Agreement of the past participle

There is agreement of the past participle when this is used as an adjective (Està cansada), in the passive voice (Sera castigada) and when tenir is used as auxiliary verb in compound tenses (Tinc pensada una contesta). On the other hand, we have learned so far that the participle in ordinary compound tenses, with auxiliary haver, remains invariable. This last rule holds good for every case but the one important exception which we shall now consider. When a compound tense has a third person direct object pronoun (excluding reflexives, but including en) the past participle should preferably agree in number and gender with that pronoun:

He escrit la invitació però encara no l’he tramesa = I have written the invitation but I haven’t sent it yet.

Heu entès les pregunes? — No, no les hem enteses = Did you understand the questions? — No, we did not understand them.

Són bonissimes aquestes prunes; jo n’he menjada una i aquest se n’ha menjades dues o tres = These plums are very good; I have eaten one and he has eaten two or three of them.

Remember that this agreement occurs only with third person direct object pronouns (not reflexive) and with en. The tendency in modern usage is to observe the agreement with feminine pronouns, as in the examples given, more than with masculine ones. A sentence like Els he deixat a casa is perhaps more common than Els he deixats . . ., which is strictly preferable.

In compound tenses of verbs like poder, voler, saber and haver de the participles of these verbs agree with the third person object pronouns when, as objects of a dependent infinitive, these precede the conjugated verb:

Li he ensenyat la petició però no l’ha volguda firmar = I have shown him the petition but he didn’t want to sign it ( . . . no ha volgut firmar-la).

Les peres eren podrides i les hem hagudes de cremar = The pears were rotten and we have had to burn them ( . . . hem hagut de cremar-les).

VOCABULARY

afanyar-se (per), to hurry, strive, make an effort (to)
l’alcalde (m.), mayor
antipàtic -a, unlikeable, disagreeable
atrevit -ida, daring
el bistec, steak
casar-se (amb), to marry, take in marriage
le ceba, onion
correr món, to roam the world
el costat, side
créixer, to grow
eixugar, to dry
encara que, although
escollir, to choose, select
estimar-se més, to prefer
l’estufa (f.), stove, heater
l’exèrcit (m.), army
fixar-se (en), to notice, look at, observe
fregir, to fry
l’hort (m.), vegetable garden
el llegum, vegetable
la llibreta, (loose-leaf) notebook
mullat -ada, wet, soaking
negar-se a, to refuse to
a penes, hardly, scarcely
el profit, profit, benefit
el racó, corner
sospitar, to suspect
tastar, to taste, try (food)
el terrat, roof garden, flat roof
tou tova, soft
la tovallola, towel

EXERCISE 20

(a) Study and translate:

1. No es podran casar fins a la tardor, perquè ella encara és menor d’edat i el seu pare s’ha negat a donar-los el permís.
2. Beu més vi ell en un àpat que no en bec jo en tot un dia. De vegades se’n pren tant que quan s’aixeca de taula a penes es pot tenir dret.
3. Els llegums que creixen en aquest racó són els més grossos, els més abundants i, pel meu gust, els millors de tot l’hort. Fixa’t en aquestes cebes.
4. Avui les coses del país van de mal en pitjor, i es veu que el govern no sap quin remei posar-hi.
5. Ha tingut tants avantatges a la vida com els seus germans. El que passa és que no ha sabut aprofitar-se’n i per això no s’ha fet tan ric com ells.
6. Jo no sóc pas tan ximple! Més m’estimo passar l’hivern a casa, al costat de l’estufa, que no pas córrer món amb gent com aquella.
7. Algunes pàgines de la llibreta es veien més petites que les altres, cosa que ens va cridar l’atenció i que ens va fer sospitar que algú les havia canviades.
8. Com més t’afanyaràs per estudiar aquest tema, més profit en trauràs i menys problemes hi tindràs a l’hora dels exàmens.
9. La dona de l’alcalde era tal com ens l’havien descrita, una persona poc amable, força més antipàtica i menys intel·ligent que el seu marit.
10. Us han enviat tantes caixes com n’havieu esperades? — No; només n’hem rebuda una de molt petita.
11. La majoria dels turistes van escollir paella, el plat típic de la regió, però n’hi va haver alguns, no tan atrevits, que sense ni tastar-la van dir que més s’estimaven un bistec amb patates fregides.

(b) Translate:

1. You are quite right, my friend. I shall do it just as you say.
2. The youngest brother doesn’t get any bigger (creixir); he always looks the same to me.
3. Although it was said that General Mas was one of the best soldiers in the whole army, he was the most disagreeable person I have [ever] known in my life.
4. The more advantages you offer him the more he will ask you for.
5. She proved to be as silly as her sister, whom we already knew, but she was a good deal more likeable than we had imagined.
6. The sausage was really good; they had never tasted any so rich.
7. In summer they preferred to sit outside, on the balcony or up on the roof garden, rather than to stay shut up inside.
8. They have as much experience as me in these matters. They must make an effort themselves to sort it out.
9. Most of the onions which we gathered in the autumn have turned soft and we have not been able to eat them.
10. The best thing you can do for the moment is to take off your wet clothes and dry yourselves with this towel. Come on, get a move on!
11. It is more difficult than it seems to make this machine work. Observe carefully (bé) the details that I have jotted down for you in this notebook.
12. Most of the women were married, but fewer than ten of them came accompanied by their husbands.
Lesson 21

The verb and its objects

The use of certain verbs entails a change in sentence construction when translating from English into Catalan. With a number of common verbs the English subject becomes the Catalan indirect object, and the English direct object becomes the Catalan subject. Thus the verb agradar (to be pleasing, to please), by this change of construction, translates to like:

Això m’agrada = I like this (lit. This pleases me).
Els agradava més el mar que les muntanyes = They liked the sea more than the mountains.
No sé si us agradaran aquests caramels = I don’t know whether you will like these toffees.
Li agradà a vostè pescar amb canya? = Do you like fishing with a rod?

Other verbs like agradar are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Basic meaning</th>
<th>Translates</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bastar</td>
<td>to be enough, suffice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>semblar</td>
<td>to seem, appear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quedar</td>
<td>to remain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sobrar</td>
<td>to be more than enough</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mancar, faltar</td>
<td>to be missing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fer falta</td>
<td>to be necessary, to be missed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Em sembla que no n’hi haurà prou = I think there won’t be enough.
Què us semblen aquestes joies? = What do you think of these jewels?

172 Catalan

Ens feia molta falta un home com vostè = We really needed a man like you.
Et falten diners? — No, fins i tot me’n sobren = Are you short of money? — No, I have even got some to spare.

The order verb-subject is usual with these verbs.
A number of verbs, like arribar a (to reach), assistir a (to attend), servir-se de (to use), casar-se amb (to marry, i.e. take in marriage), take a prepositional object in Catalan which corresponds to an English direct object. Care should be exercised in translation:

En Joan ha faltat a la seva paraula, i jo no me’n fiaré mai més = John has broken his word and I shall never trust him again.
No hem dubtat mai de la vostra sinceritat = We have never doubted your sincerity (cf. Ho dúbto = I doubt it).

Conversely, we know that verbs like buscar, demanar, mirar, escoltar, agrair, etc., have a direct object in Catalan but a prepositional object in English. An English direct object of this sort of verb becomes the indirect object in Catalan:

Aprofiti aquesta ocasió de picar-li els dits = Take advantage of this chance to teach him a lesson (lit. to rap his fingers).
Aquell barri li va recordar Londres = That district reminded him of London.
Si no ens regala les roses, a quant les hi hauriem de pagar? = If he doesn’t make us a present of the roses, how much should we pay him for them?

Notes on some prepositions

Prepositions can be deceptively simple little words. One of the most delicate jobs is to distinguish between prepositions which, because of their apparent similarities, seem to fall into pairs, often with only one English equivalent.
A and en
With proper names of places, both position and direction are expressed by a:

Viuen a Perpinyà = They live in Perpignan.
Haig de fer un viatge a Alemanya = I have to make a journey to Germany.

However, in general expressions of position and of motion a is replaced by en before a demonstrative adjective and before un -a or alguna -a:

Es van trobar al balcó = They met on the balcony.
Es van trobar en aquell balcó = They met on that balcony.
Van entrar a la barberia = They went into the barber’s shop.
Entrarem en un bar de la plaça major = We shall go into a bar in the main square.
Al meu país el govern és molt conservador = In my country the government is very conservative.
En alguns països la gent no pot votar = In some countries people cannot vote.

With anar it is preferable to use en before un, algun or a demonstrative, although a is also commonly found:

Anirem {en} alguna platja abandonada = We shall go to some deserted beach.

En is also used in a few other expressions of place, particularly in those referring to position on land or sea:

La barca ara és en mar = The boat is now at sea.
Aviat arribarem en terra = We shall soon be on land.
Hem viscut en tres cases del mateix poble = We have lived in three houses in the same town.

Otherwise en should be handled with care in translating expressions where English in refers to specific, physical location. A clear distinction can be observed by comparing these two sentences:

Discutien els defectes que trobaven en la universitat = They were discussing the faults which they found in the university.
Es van conèixer a la universitat = They met at university.

A sentence like La roba és en el bagul (The clothes are in the trunk) is not uncommon, but ... al bagul is considered to be more correct and genuine. In cases of doubt the student is advised to follow the guidance set out above. It is also convenient to remember that to(wards) is best translated by cap a or dret a, and that the use of other prepositions like dins, damunt, etc., can sometimes help to avoid uncertainty between a and en in expressions of place.

Com and com a
Com is the normal translation of as (= like):

Era blanca com la neu = She was as white as snow.
S’ha portat com un heroi = He has behaved like a hero.
La sala era gairebé tan ampla com llarga = The room was almost as wide as it was long.

However, when as means in the capacity of it is translated by com a:

Com a poeta és dolentíssim, com a novelista és admirable = As a poet he is really bad; as a novelist he is admirable.
Vam rebutjar com a falsa aquella teoria = We rejected that theory as being false.

Com (que) is a causal conjunction:

Com que no sé res d’això, més m’estimo callar que no pas fer una planxa = As I know nothing about this, I would rather keep quiet than put my foot in it.
Lessons Twenty-One 175

In certain adverbial expressions as is translated by de:

L’han disfressada de monja = They have disguised her as a nun.
És sastre d’ofici, però ara fa d’empleat a l’ajuntament = He is a tailor by trade, but now he works as a clerk in the town hall.

Per and per a
Both these prepositions can translate for, but they must not be confused. The difference between the two can best be appreciated by seeing per a as a distinct preposition with its own range of meaning. Basically per a indicates destination or object:

No hi haurà prou verdura per a tothom = There won’t be enough greens for everyone.
Saps alguna cura per a la febre? = Do you know any cure for fever?
És massa honor per a nosaltres = It is too great an honour for us.

An understanding of this basic meaning helps to differentiate per a from per in cases where uncertainty might arise:

1. In expressions of time:
Per indicates for how long something is intended or the time during which something happens:

Deixa-me’l per quinze dies = Lend it to me for a fortnight.
Per l’octubre les nits no hi són tan llargues com pel desembre = In October the nights are not as long as in December.
Ens veurem per Pasqua = We shall see one another at Easter.

(Cf. other temporal expressions with a — al matí, a l’endemà; with en — Ho farà en un mes; and with durant — Ho faré durant les vacances.)

176 Catalan

Per a is used for specific arrangements or fixed appointments in the future:

M’han citat per a demà = They have arranged for me to see them tomorrow.
Encarregueu el xampany per a dijous = Order the champagne for Thursday.
Feia estalvis per a la seva vellesa = He was saving up for his old age.

2. Introducing an infinitive:
Per expresses purpose after a main verb which clearly indicates a conscious action or desire: the meaning is in order to, and the expression can be reinforced in the form per tal de:

Se’n van a Sant Hilari per prendre-hi les aigües = They are off to Sant Hilari to take the waters.
Vindré per (tal de) fer-te companyia = I shall come (in order) to keep you company.

Occasionally per introduces an infinitive to convey cause:

L’han castigada per haver-se ficat on no la demanaven = They have punished her for interfering where she was not wanted.

Per + infinitive can express an action which is awaited or is yet unrealized:

Al carrer major hi ha un pis per llogar = In the main street, there is a flat to let.
Els llibres d’aquesta pila estan per posar en ordre = The books in this pile have not yet been put in order.
Encara ens queda molta cosa per fer = We still have a good deal to do.

Per a introduces an infinitive after verbs like emprar, usar, and servir-se de (to use), bastar (to be sufficient), necessitar
and servir, and in expressions of object or destination dependent upon a word or clause in which conscious design or desire is not the primary motive:

Emprem un drap per a fregar les rajoles = We use a cloth to wipe the tiles.
Ès prou boig per a intentar-ho = He is mad enough to try it.
No tinc paciència per a escoltar-los = I have not the patience to listen to them.
Aquesta aigua és bona per a beure = This water is good for drinking.

Study these idioms which involve other uses of per:

La processó passarà per davant de casa vostra = The procession will pass in front of your house.
Hi he bagut d’anar per força = I was obliged to go there.
Els van trobar per casualitat pel camí de la font = They met by chance on the way to the spring.
Em prenen sovint pel meu cosí = I am often (mis)taken for my cousin.
Tu fes-li pregunta per a ell = You ask him questions and I will answer you for him (on his behalf).
Ho fem per tu = We are doing it because of you, on behalf of you. (Cf. Ho fem per a tu, where the second person is the recipient or beneficiary of the action.)
Va morir per Déu i per la pàtria = He died for God and his country.
Li vaig donar una col per dos enciams = I gave him a cabbage (in exchange) for two lettuces.
Ho ha comprat per dues lliures = He has bought it for two pounds.
El van deixar per mort = They left him for dead.
El príncep volia per dona la filla del comte = The prince wanted the count’s daughter for a wife.
Per mi, ja us en podeu anar = As far as I am concerned you can go away now.

Note that the similarity in the pronunciation of per and per a (cf. per ells and per a ells) makes it that much more difficult in practice to draw a clear line between their uses. What we have studied above is a digest of the norms laid down by the accepted linguistic authorities of Catalan and followed by a majority of those who endeavour to speak and write the language ‘correctly’. It is fair to say, however, that there are still points of uncertainty and hesitation, and that there is still discussion amongst linguists over details of usage and even over the wider grammatical issues involved. The student who wishes to pursue the subject further is recommended to consult the recent study by Joan Coromines, ‘Nou converses sobre per i per a’ (in Lleures i converses d’un filòleg, Barcelona, 1971, pp. 105–79).

VOCABULARY

actual, present, existing
adobar, to mend, repair
l’afar (m.), l’assumpte (m.) matter, question, affair
l’argent (m.), silver
l’assegurança (f.), insurance
assegurar, to assure, insure
banyar-se, to bathe, take a bath
la barraca, hut, shed, shack
la caixa d’estalvis, savings bank
el col·lega, colleague
el comerçant, businessman
el comitè, committee
la compra, purchase
el conte, (short) story
dipositar, to deposit
estalviar, to save
l’excursionista (m. & f.), hiker
el gerent, manager
intentar de to try to
provar de
invite
convidar
el nas, nose
el pagès, countryman, farmer
el pescador, fisherman
a poc a poc, slowly, little by little
polític -a, political
180  

11. En Ferrer, com a director gerent de la nostra agència, se n’ha anat avui cap a Brusel·les per a una reunió de polítics i comerçiants europeus. Diu que si li queda temps passarà després a Londres, només per saludar els col·legues d’allà. 
12. Què li ha semblat aquest poema meu? — Em sembla admirable, i m’agradaria moltíssim comprar un exemplar del llibre, per poder estudiar la col·lecció sencera. — Doncs, quedi’s aquest. Tingui; l’hi regalo.

EXERCISE 21

(a) Study and translate:

1. Quan treballava amb ell a la companyia d’assegurances ens vèiem gairebé cada dia, però ara només ens trobem de tant en tant, pel carrer o en algun bar del centre.
2. Quantes peces et falten per a completar la teva col·lecció?
3. Ens ha assegurat que ho pagarà tot per endavant, però ho dubtem. No ens hem fiat mai d’aquest senyor ni de les seves promeses.
4. Aquests són fets importantíssims que el comitè hauria de tenir present en les circumstàncies actuals.
5. El vell pagès feia de guia als excursionistes que venien a l’estiu per pujar en aquella muntanya.
6. Mentre els pescadors eren en mar les dones adobaven xarxes en una barraca que hi havia a la platja.
8. Una noia va ficar els peus a l’aigua i va exclamar que era massa freda per a poder-s’hi banyar.
9. Va anar de pressa a buscar la capsà d’argent on guardava unes pastilles especials que, segons ella, servien de cura per a qualsevol malaltia.
10. Pregunta’ls en el seu idioma per quant temps volen llogar la barca. Jo els he enraonat a poc a poc en català, però ha costat molt entendre’ns.

(b) Translate:

1. Very many thanks for your help. What you have done has saved us a lot of work.
2. The water from this spring is not very good for drinking. The farmer has told us that it should be used only for washing dishes.
3. Mr. Vendrell comes to our house from time to time—as a colleague of my husband, of course. I assure you that I should never invite him as a friend.
4. As we were in no hurry we went with them as far as the bus-stop, just to keep them company.
5. The politicians have broken so many promises that now we cannot trust them any more.
6. The captain of the boat acted like a hero: he died to save the fishermen’s lives.
7. With the money you have saved you have enough to buy a car and will still have some left to pay for the insurance.
8. What did you think of the story he has just read us? — I liked it so much that I intend to order a copy of the book for my nephew.
9. They have no wish to stick their nose into a political affair which could prove to be more dangerous than anyone imagines.
10. The committee will meet in a room at the town hall to
discuss this matter. The mayor has called the meeting (*trans.* them) for Wednesday.
11. Of all the new houses which were built in that street fewer than five are left for sale now.
12. They were trying to convince him of the advantages of depositing in the savings bank the amount he had left over from the purchase.

Lesson 22

The present participle

The Catalan present participle is formed by adding to the stem of the verb the following endings:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I</th>
<th>II</th>
<th>III</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-ant</td>
<td>-ent</td>
<td>-ent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The function of the present participle is either as adjective or as noun. Words like *bastant, convenient, important, urgent* are present participles which have become established as adjectives. *L’ajudant, l’aprenent* and *l’estudiant* are participles confirmed as nouns. Common phrases like *aigua bullent* (*boiling water*) and *l’any vinent* (*the coming year, next year*) show the true participles of two verbs (*bullir* and irregular *venir*) and their adjectival function.

The gerund

The form of the gerund for the first two conjugations coincides throughout with the present participle, ending in *-ant* and *-ent* respectively. The gerund of the third conjugation ends in *-int*. If one remembers that the stem for the gerund is the same as that of the second person plural part of the present indicative, there is no difficulty with irregularities: *escriure-escrivim—gerund escrivint; caure-caiem—gerund caient; anar-anem—gerund anant; dir-diem—gerund dient*. Of the irregular verbs, only *ésser* forms its gerund *essent* from the infinitive stem.

The past gerund (*having done*) is formed with *havent* (gerund of *haver*) and the appropriate past participle:

(En) *havent sopat, van sortir a passeig* = (On) having dined: they went out for a stroll.
The Catalan gerund is essentially verbal or adverbial and cannot be used as a noun, the verbal noun in Catalan being the infinitive (M'agrada dibuixar = I like drawing; després de dinar = after lunch; el preguntar-ho no costa res = asking doesn't cost anything). The gerund is not an adjective; only the present participle can be thus used, and although the two forms coincide in the first two conjugations their functions must be carefully separated: boiling water is aigua bullent (present participle) not bullent (gerund); the ruling classes is les classes dirigents (present participle) not dirigent (a gerund, which can have no plural).

A gerund may have causal, concessive or conditional as well as purely temporal connotations. In every case, though, it expresses logical simultaneity (or immediate priority) with the verbal action that it accompanies:

Van passar pel poble rient i cantant = They went laughing and singing through the town.

Tot sent l'innocent és molt capaç d'estafar-vos = Although he might look harmless he is quite capable of swindling you.

Buscant pertot arreu, per fi el van trobar al cafè = Searching everywhere, they eventually found him in the café.

Essent a Madrid va visitar un vell amic = Being in Madrid he visited an old friend.

Fent això no aconseguireu res = By doing that you will achieve nothing.

As well as referring to the subject of the main verb, as in the above examples, the gerund can be used to refer to the object of verbs of perception. In cases where ambiguity might arise, however, an alternative construction with a relative clause is preferable to a gerund:

Sempre et trobo treballant = I always find you working.

El van reconèixer baixant de l'avió = They recognized him as he stepped from the 'plane.

La vaig veure passant per la duana
La vaig veure que passava per la duana = I saw her going through the customs.

There are also constructions in which the gerund has its own subject, independent of the subject or object of the main verb:

Ens van fer amics essent a la presó el seu pare = We became friends when his father was in prison.

Havent-ho negat ell, no podem insistir-hi més = With his having denied it, we can't insist any more.

Being part of a verb, the gerund can have its objects, and when these are weak pronouns they are attached after it as in the last example above.

Note that when an English gerund or present participle expresses state a Catalan past participle is frequently the translation:

Estava assegut a la taula, el cos doblegat sobre un llibre = He was sitting at the table, with his body hunched over a book.

Hi havia tot de quadres penjats a les pares = There were all these pictures hanging on the walls.

The same occurs with certain common adjectives:

ensopit -ida = boring
pesat -ida = (heavy), boring, dull, irritating
divertit -ida = amusing
atrevit -ida = daring

cansat -ida = tiring

Aquí la feina és cansada i la gent pesada = Here the work is tiring and the people dull.

Observe that in Catalan a relative clause is often needed to translate English -ing:

Hi havia una dona que cantava a plena veu = There was a woman singing at the top of her voice.
Progressive tenses

One of the principal uses of the Catalan gerund is in the formation of progressive tenses. These are similar to the English I am buying, he has been thinking, etc., but there is more emphasis of duration, progression or repetition, often nearer to the sense of he goes on thinking, etc. These progressive tenses are formed by the appropriate tense of estar, anar, seguir, together with the gerund of the verb whose action is being expressed. Weak pronouns, where applicable, can either precede estar, etc., or be attached after the gerund.

Se n’estava queixant
Estava queixant-se’n = He was complaining about it.

Què fas? — M’estic pentitant = What are you doing? —
I’m combing my hair.

Anaven passejant-se amunt i avall = They were strolling back and forth.

Va dint’ho arreu a tothom = He goes around everywhere telling everyone.

Segueixes treballant a can Rovira? = Are you still working at Rovira’s?

No podem seguir conversant en mig d’aquesta gentada = We can’t carry on a conversation amidst all these people.

Anar fent is a commonly used expression, meaning to get along, to be doing reasonably well, to be coping:

Com va el treball? — Mira, vaig fent = How is work? —
Well, I’m getting along all right.

Si aneu fent així, enlleistereu això abans de Nadal = If you keep going like this you will have this finished before Christmas.

English idioms and the Catalan gerund

A Catalan gerund expressing manner can sometimes be the equivalent of an English finite verb. This occurs when a preposition or adverb following the English verb expresses the real action, while the verb itself conveys the manner in which the action is done. Thus, in Time flies by, by expresses the action and flies the manner. Where no single Catalan verb translates the English verb + preposition/adverb (as does pujar for to go up, for example), then the English preposition/adverb can usually be rendered by a Catalan verb, in the indicated tense, and the English verb by a Catalan gerund expressing manner:

El temps passa volant = Time flies by.
Va entrar corrent = He ran in.
Vaig baixar saltant de dos en dos els esglaons = I jumped down the stairs two by two.

VOCABULARY

aconsseguir, to catch up with; to achieve, obtain
l’aprenent (m.), l’aprenenta (f.), apprentice
l’avaria (f.), breakdown
bessó -ona, twin
el capítol, chapter
la cita, appointment
la corda, string, rope
deixar caure, to drop
desitjar, to desire, to want
les despeses, expenses
la drecera, short cut, path
encarregar-se de, to take charge of, to attend to, be responsible for
goingnxar, to stick
enllà, over there,
més enllà, beyond
escalfar, to warm, to heat (up)
espès -essa, thick
l’exemple (m.), example
ferm -a, firm, steady, secure
el full, sheet of paper
gastar, to consume, use up
girar full, to turn over (page)
la limonada, lemonade
ofereix-se a, to offer to
l’oli (m.), oil
la rambla, boulevard
el refrescant, refreshing drink
següent, following, next
la setmana, next week
entrant
el sobre, envelope
el suc, juice; gravy
la terrassa, area for seats and tables outside a bar, hotel, etc.
tirar, to pull, draw; to push; to throw, shoot (and numerous idioms related to these notions)

veure de to see to, make
mirar de sure of
el viatjant, travelling salesman
la xocolata, chocolate

EXERCISE 22

(a) *Study and translate:*

1. Doblegant el full pel mig i enganxant així els dos caps se’n forma una mena de sobre.
2. Vosaltres, aneu fent; vegeu de posar les cordes fermes. Jo m’encarrego de recollir les eines.
3. El cotxe no tirava, i es preguntaven si hi havia una avaria al motor o si era qüestió només de canviar l’oli.
4. Seguint aquesta drecera travessareu la part més espessa del bosc i sortireu a la carretera més enllà del molí abandonat.
5. La Montse va cantar una cançó portuguesa, acompanyant-la al piano la seva germana brossa.
6. Va arribar a la cita tot suat, havent corregut per no fer tard, i va demanar un refrescat al cambreer que de seguida li va portar una llimonada.
7. Si deixeu el bagul aquí no hi podrà passar ningú. L’hauríeu de tirar una mica més enllà.
8. Havent-se ofert en Ferrater a pagar totes les despeses, seria millor fer ho tal com suggereix.
9. Si la xocolata surt massa espessa, tira-hi una petita tassa d’aigua bullent.
10. Tinc entès que estaran fent obres al carrer major fins al final de la setmana entrant.
11. Passejant-se per la Rambla va reconèixer un vell amic seu assegut a la terrassa d’un cafè.

(b) *Translate:*

1. Turn over the page and continue reading. You will find that the following chapter has even funnier things [in it].
2. On the days when the boss was away, visiting customers, for example, or buying materials, one of the apprentice girls would take charge of the shop.
3. When abroad he always liked to speak and listen to the languages he had studied as a young man.
4. The tea will not turn out well unless you put in boiling water. This isn’t hot enough; here, put it on to heat up a bit more.
5. He was sitting outside a café on the Rambla, reading the newspaper and occasionally raising his head to watch the people strolling up and down.
6. By walking at (amb) a firm pace along the path which cut through the wood he finally caught up with the others just beyond the abandoned church.
7. When she heard her friend crying outside she dropped the book she was reading and ran out to ask her what was wrong.
8. My old car keeps going, but it uses up too much oil and I’m sure that it will break down one of these days. I intend to buy myself a new one next year.
9. Having paid all the expenses, I had less than a pound left.
10. By following such an example they will never achieve the results which they desire.
11. The meat was served with a gravy so thick that it almost had to be cut with a knife.
12. If we have enough stamps and envelopes we shall be able to post these letters today.
Lesson 23

Impersonal expressions

There are various types of expression in Catalan with verbs whose subject is impersonal or indeterminate. A passive expression is often the English equivalent.

A third person plural verb can refer to an unknown or undisclosed subject:

Truquen a la porta = They (i.e. someone) are knocking at the door.
M’ho van dir ahir = I was told yesterday, They told me yesterday.
Està comunicant, però no contesten = It’s ringing, but there’s no reply.

Use of the impersonal subject (un) hom, corresponding to the English one, is confined mainly to the literary language:

Quan un hom està malalt hauria de fer llit = When one is ill one ought to stay in bed.
En aquell temps hom creia que el sol girava al voltant de la terra = At that time one believed (it was believed) that the sun revolved around the earth.

The indefinite article un -a is also used to mean one, generally agreeing with the gender of the speaker. Thus a man would say Un no s’atreveix a parlar tan clar (One dare not be so outspoken), whilst a woman would say Una no s’atreveix . . .

In Lesson 19, p. 158, we saw the reflexive form used in a passive or impersonal sense. The observations made there, and on the use of the Catalan passive (Lesson 12, pp. 102–3), should be borne in mind when passive or impersonal statements are translated from English into

190 Catalan

Catalan. An expression like It has been acknowledged that . . . could, according to context and nuance, have any of the following translations:

S’ha reconegut que . . . (Reflexive as passive)
Han reconegut que . . . (3rd person indeterminate subject)
Hom ha reconegut que . . . (Impersonal subject)
Ha estat reconegut que . . . (Passive voice)

Impersonal verbs

We have already made wide use of the impersonal verb haver-hi. The subject of hi ha, etc., is there, and the verb is consequently always singular:

No pot haver-hi excepcions = There can be no exceptions.

When ésser is used impersonally the subject is it:

És tard; és aviat = It is late; it is early.
És clar que no ho ha fet = It is obvious that he has not done it.
Ja era de nit = It was already night-time.

Fer is used impersonally in expressions to do with the weather:

Quin temps fa? — Fa molt bon dia = What is the weather like? — It’s a very nice day.
Fa molta calor = It is very hot.
Fa fresca = It is cool.
Fa sol = It is sunny.

The subject here is it (i.e. the weather) and the verb is consequently always singular:

Fa dies bons = We are having some nice days.
Verbs which express conditions of weather are also impersonal:

Ha nevat = It has snowed.
Aahir va ploure molt fort = Yesterday it rained very hard.
Em sembla que comença a tronar = I think it’s starting to thunder.

Note also:

Hi ha lluna = The moon is shining.
Hi ha boira = It is misty (foggy).
Està núvol = It is cloudy.

In one of the examples above semblar is also used impersonally (em sembla = it seems to me). Several other verbs can function in this way, while one verb caldre (to be necessary, to be right) is used only in impersonal expressions:

No cal córrer tant = There is no need to go so quickly.
Ens cal temps i diners per a fer això = We need time and money to do this.
Sempre em porto com cal = I always behave properly.
Calen hores d’estudi intens = Hours of intensive study are necessary.

Examples of other verbs used impersonally:

No li convé sortir de nits = It doesn’t suit him to go out at night (convenir = to be suitable, to be fitting).
M’importa molt de saber-ho = It matters a lot to me to know it (importar = to be important).
Us interessa comprar aquest toro? = Are you interested in buying this bull? (interessar = to interest, be of interest).
No val la pena d’insistir-hi més = It is not worth insisting on it any more (valer la pena = to be worth while).
Em fa l’efecte que ho han dit per broma = It strikes me that they said it for a joke.

192 Catalan

Government of infinitives

Remember that Catalan frequently has a dependent infinitive in expressions where English uses a gerund:

Aquesta mosca no para d’empipar-me = This fly never stops annoying me.
Van tardar molt a contestar-nos = They were a long time in replying to us.
Es van posar a cantar = They started singing.
No ens estarem d’anar al casament = We shan’t miss going to the wedding (estar-se de = to refrain from, to miss).
Parlaven de la idea d’anar-hi = They were talking about the idea of going there.

We have already seen several verbs which govern an infinitive directly, with no intermediate preposition:

Què penses fer? = What do you intend to do?
Espero veure’l per poder tornar-li aquest disc = I hope to see him to be able to give him back this record.
Els ho van fer saber per telegrama = We let them know by telegram.

Verbs of perception can introduce either a simple infinitive or an infinitive preceded by a:

He sentit a dir que . . . = I have heard it said that . . .
Els veig (a) passar cada dia = I see them go by every day.
Aquella noia, mai no l’haviem sentita cantar = We had never heard that girl sing. (Note here the agreement of the past participle; cf. Aquesta cançó, no l’he sentit cantar, where there is no agreement because cançó is the object of cantar, not of sentir.)

The preposition a generally introduces an infinitive in expressions of beginning, induction and disposition:

Encara no has après a conduir? = Haven’t you learned to drive yet?
La llei ens obliga a firmar aquest document = The law obliges us to sign this document.
Res no em decidirà a callar = Nothing will decide me to be quiet.
Em convides a acompanyar-te? = Are you inviting me to accompany you?
Estic disposat a sortejar la cabra = I am prepared to raffle the goat.

Remember also, pensar a (to think about, remember to) and tardar a/trigar a (to delay, be long in):
Pensaràs a demanar-li la clau? = Will you think to ask him for the key?

The preposition de is found before an infinitive in a wide range of cases:
Guarda’t de creure tals mentides = Mind you don’t believe such lies.
Estic cansat d’escoltar bestieses = I am tired of listening to foolish nonsense.
Ha acabat de dir l’oració = He has finished saying the prayer.

In these examples de conveys the idea of separation from an action, but this is not always the case. For example, both prohibir (to prohibit, forbid) and permetre (to permit, allow) introduce an infinitive by de:

Vejam si el temps ens permetrà de sortir a passeig = Let’s see if the weather will allow us to go out for a walk.
(Note this use of the archaic imperative form vejam.)
En aquest autobús és prohibit de fumar = Smoking is prohibited on this bus.

In many cases de translates to after a noun or adjective:
el desig de pecar = the desire to sin
Estic content d’esperar = I am happy to wait.

Catalan

A large number of common verbs have de before an infinitive, in constructions which diverge from their English equivalents:

M’alegro d’haver-les vistes = I am pleased to have seen them.
Qui s’encarrega d’aviser-nos? = Who will be responsible for letting us know?
No et recordes d’haver dit això? = Don’t you remember having said this?
\{Intentaré \} d’explicar-t’ho = I shall try to explain it to you.
\{Provaré \}

The wide use of de to introduce an infinitive is a characteristic of Catalan, such a construction being preferred in some instances where a simple infinitive or a + infinitive would also be correct:

Us agrada nedar? \{Us agrada de nedar? \} = Do you like swimming?
No acostumo a beure llet
No acostumo a beure llet = I don’t usually drink milk.
Ara comencarà a parlar
Ara comencarà de parlar = He will now begin to speak.
La seva feina és regar les plantes 
La seva feina és de regar les plantes = His job is to water the plants.
Qui el va ensenyar a pintar?
Qui li va ensenyar de pintar? = Who taught him to paint?

Compare also:

La teoria és dificil d’entendre = The theory is difficult to understand.
\{entendre \} \{d’entendre \} la teoria = It is difficult to understand the theory.

verbs which introduce a noun with en take a before an infinitive:
Lesson Twenty-Three

Ha esmercat molts diners en aquesta empresa = He has invested a lot of money in this undertaking.

Esmerçaran el capital a muntar una fàbrica nova = They will invest the capital in the setting up of a new factory.

Infinitives in adverbial expressions of time

The infinitive is introduced by en only in adverbial phrases which correspond to the English on . . . ing, or to a temporal clause:

En veure aquella dona, el cor em va fer un salt = On seeing that woman my heart leapt.

En haver acabat la sessió, tots es van aixecar = When the session was over they all stood up.

En abraçar-la va rompre a plorar = Embracing her he burst into tears.

In the spoken language an alternative construction with a + definite article is commonly found:

A l’arrivar vaig pujar de dret al lavabo = On arriving I went straight up to the toilet.

These constructions overlap with the use of the gerund in similar adverbial contexts:

\{En haver trobat la goma\} va esborrar el dibuix = Having found the rubber he erased the drawing.

VOCABULARY

acampar, to camp  
l’acció (f.), action; share  
l’ala (f.), wing  
el blat, wheat, corn  
la boira, mist, fog  
bufar, to blow  
copsar, to catch  

l’esforç (m.), effort  

EXERCISE 23

(a) Study and translate:

1. L’èxit d’aquesta empresa m’interessa a mi tant com a vostès. No ens importa a tots de veure créixer el valor de les nostres accions? Doncs aniré de dret al meu assumpte, i els explicaré el que vull proposar.

2. A qui li toca de pelar les patates? — Em feia l’efecte que avui li tocava a en Pere, però ell encara no ha tornat. — Bé, no importa. Ho faré jo mateixa.

3. Té molta manda, però suposo que a la fi el persuadirem d’acabar la feina d’una vegada.
4. Yo también he sentido a dir una cosa semblant, però més val no fiar-se de tals rumors.
5. Quin dia feia ahi a muntanya? — Feia un temps horrorós, de debò, un fred que pelava. Bufava tan fort el vent del nord i plovia tant que a penes ens atrevíem a sortir de la tenda.
6. El nostre fill petit està aprenent a tocar la guitarra. S’hi ha interessat de debò, i ja sap tocar de cap a cap algunes peces senzilles.
7. Va dir la Rosa que era tan còmoda la pensió on s’estava que una no voldria anar-se’n mai, que ja li feia mandra buscar-se un pis.
8. Caminant passeig avall, el vell va trobar per terra un ocell. En tocar-lo amb la punta del bastó es va adonar que no podia volar perquè tenia una ala trencada.
10. Aquesta explicació científica no és gens senzilla ni fàcil d’entendre. Cal fer un gran esforç mental per seguir-ne l’argument central.
11. Si insistiu en el vostre propòsit de denunciar-me a les autoritats, jo també hauré d’insistir a fer-los conèixer la vostra part en aquest afacer. Em defensaré com cal a un home de la meva posició.

(b) Translate:

1. As an actor this man has had no success, and now he has set out to look for a simpler way of earning his living.
2. The mist still hasn’t lifted and it strikes me that it will soon be raining again. — It doesn’t matter. If I go out for a walk I shall take my umbrella.
Lesson 24

The present subjunctive

Whilst the subjunctive mood has virtually disappeared from English, it is a central feature of Catalan grammar. The present subjunctive of the regular conjugations is formed as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I</th>
<th>II</th>
<th>III</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>parl-</td>
<td>perd-</td>
<td>dorm-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parl-</td>
<td>perd-</td>
<td>dorm-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parl-</td>
<td>perd-</td>
<td>dorm-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parl-</td>
<td>perd-</td>
<td>dorm-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parl-</td>
<td>perd-</td>
<td>dorm-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parl-</td>
<td>perd-</td>
<td>dorm-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Inceptive verbs of the third conjugation retain the increment -eix- in the parts where this appears in the present indicative: lleg-eix-i, lleg-eix-is, lleg-eix-em, lleg-im, lleg-iu, lleg-eix-in.

As in the indicative, orthographical changes are observed in the present subjunctive of certain regular verbs, in conformity with pronunciation: pagar-pagui, trençar-trenqui, menjar-mengi, començar-comenci, canviar-canviï, etc. Note that the present subjunctive of regular verbs is identical with the present indicative in the first and second persons plural.

Irregular verbs whose first person singular part of the present indicative ends in -c all have a present subjunctive stem in -gu-: aprendre (aprengui) — aprengueu; dir (dic) — digui; tenir (tinc) — tingui; estar (estic) — estiguï; except viure (visci) — visqui. Correr acquires -gu- only in the first and second persons plural; corri, etc., but correnguem, correngueu. Verbs with distinctly irregular present subjunctives are: anar-vagi (but anem, aneu), ésser-sigui, fer-faci (but fem, feu), haver-hagi, saber-sàpiga, cabre-càpiga, veure-vegui, voler-vulgui. Use the tables in Appendix I to learn and check all the parts of irregular subjunctives.

The perfect subjunctive is formed by the present subjunctive of haver (hagi, etc.) with the appropriate past participle.

Use of the subjunctive

As its name implies, the principal use of the subjunctive mood is in subordinate clauses. When the subject of a subordinate clause is different from that of the main clause, a subjunctive in the former indicates that the action of the subordinate verb is not presented as a fact or reality, but rather as an uncertainty, as a hypothesis or as a future possibility. This theoretical principle underlies every major area of use of the subjunctive:

1. Following expressions of doubt, ignorance or negation:
   Dubto que torni mai més = I doubt whether he will ever return again.
   No creus que se’n recordi? = Don’t you think he will remember it?
   No és que jo me’n queixí = It is not that I’m complaining.
   És increíble que segueixi vivint aquí = It is incredible that he should still be living here.

2. After expressions of possibility or probability:
   Pot ésser que s’ho creguin = It may be that they will believe it.
   Ét sembla probable que rebaixin la factura? = Do you think it likely that they will reduce the bill?
3. In clauses dependent upon verbs of necessity and impersonal verbs:

Tot està en això, que m’ho diguis avui = Everything depends on your telling me today.

No importa que sàpiguen això = It doesn’t matter if they know this.

No cal que t’ho prenguis tan seriosament = There is no need to take it so seriously.

Note that the subjunctive is needed here only when the subject is made explicit in the subordinate clause. Otherwise an infinitive construction is used:

Cal còrrer = It is necessary to go quickly.

Et cal còrrer or Cal que corrís = You must go quickly.

4. In clauses which denote an influence on other people or things (i.e. after verbs of causing, wanting, requesting, permitting, forbidding, insisting, etc.). With some verbs a construction with the subjunctive is alternative to a dependent infinitive:

Digues-li de venir
Digues-li que vingui = Tell him to come.

Els aconsellarem de no ficar-s’hi
Els aconsellarem que no s’hi fiquen = We shall advise them not to get involved in that.

No li consentiré d’anar-se’n
No consentiré que se’n vagi = I shall not consent to his leaving.

In other instances, however, only a subjunctive clause is acceptable:

Volem que et decideixis tot seguit = We want you to make up your mind right away.

Heu aconseguït que us ensenyin el revés del document?
 = Have you got them to show you the other side of the document?

5. In clauses dependent upon expressions of evaluation or emotion:

És una pena que sigui tan sorda = It is a pity she is so deaf.

Ens sap greu que hagis estat malalt = We are sorry that you have been ill (saber greu = to cause regret, make sorry).

No t’estranyà que no dugu res? = Does it not surprise you that he says nothing?

Em fa molta alegria que hagin guanyat el concurs = I am delighted that they have won the competition.

Serà millor que t’ho expliqui tot jo mateix = It will be better if I explain everything to you myself.

Els molesta moltissim que la gent es rigui dels seus disbarats = It really upsets them that people should laugh at their howlers.

The subjunctive is used after verbs of fearing, but the student is advised to do so only when the main verb is in the negative (becoming then a negative expression like those in 1 above):

Ja no tinc por
Ja no temo que sigui així = I no longer fear that it is so.

After an affirmative verb of fearing it is best to use a straightforward indicative tense:

Tenim por
Temim = We feared that we should lose.

Use of the indicative or the subjunctive after esperar should be distinguished. When this verb means to hope it will normally be followed by a verb in the indicative:

Esperem que ens avisaran aviat = We hope they will let us know soon.

Espero que tot et va bé = I hope all is well with you.

However, when esperar means to wait for a following clause will have its verb in the subjunctive:
Estan esperant que el seu gendre els ajudi = They are waiting for their son-in-law to help them.

Espereu que pari de ploure = Wait for it to stop raining.

It is worth repeating that, in categories 3, 4 and 5 above, a subordinate clause with a subjunctive verb is normally required only when its subject differs from that of the main clause. Compare the following pairs of sentences:

És essencial no oblidar-ho = It is essential not to forget it.
L’essencial és que no ho oblidis = The essential thing is that you don’t forget it.

Desitja marxar = He wants to leave.
Desitja que marxin = He wants them to leave.

Li sap greu de no haver-hi anat = He is sorry not to have gone there.

Li sap greu que no hi hagis anat = He is sorry you did not go there.

Some verbs may introduce a subordinate clause with the verb in either the indicative or the subjunctive mood. In the latter case a subjective meaning or element of uncertainty is uppermost:

Comprenc que et {resulta \{resulti \} difícil = I can see that it is/may be difficult for you.

Sembla que no hi {cauen \{caiguin \} = It appears that they don’t get it.

VOCA L U R A R Y

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Spanish</th>
<th>Catalan</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>alegrar-se, to be pleased, happy</td>
<td>la beguda, drink</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amoinar, to trouble, upset, worry</td>
<td>la bòta, barrel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>el consell, advice; council</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

EXERCISE 24

(a) Study and translate:

1. Ja no pots negar que t’has equivocat. Quina llàstima que no t’hagis adonat abans de les conSEQüències del teu error.
2. Més val que els ho digui ell mateix que no pas que ho sàpiguen d’una altra manera.
3. El metge ja no té por que a la malalta li pugi més la febre. Fins i tot ha consentit que s’aixequis de tant en tant i que es passegi pel pati de la clínica.
4. És probable que vingui demà. Cal que la vegeu aleshores i que li doneu aquest consell.
5. Qui ha manat que no portem armes? Qui vol prohibir-nos de defensar la nostra llibertat?
6. Digue-li que no s’amoini, que ja està tot arreglat.
7. Els pregarem que contribueixin a les despeses. No crec que s’enfadin ni que es neguin a fer-ho.
8. Sembla mentida que un membre del consell de ministres es pugui portar d’una manera tan poc digna.
9. Guardin aquests documents al fons de la maleta. És important que no els descobreixin els oficials de la duana.
10. Què vols que et digui? Em sap greu que t’ho prenguis així, i espero que aviat et convenceràs que no hi hauriems pogut fer res més.
11. Ens alegrem moltíssim que tots estiguin bé, i estem esperant que ens digueu quin dia vindreu a visitar-nos.
12. M’han encarregat que us comuniqui la mala notícia. Sento molt haver de dir-vos que us han suspès de les vostres funcions.

(b) Translate:
1. Do you want me to introduce you to the lady of the house? — Yes; I should be delighted to meet her.
2. Who has ordered the servants to serve the drinks in the patio? Don’t you think it is too cold to sit outside?
3. Let us wait for the others to come. I want you all to be in the secret.
4. Paul is sorry to leave, and we are sorry too that he has to go away so soon.
5. I beg you to listen to what I have to say. I don’t think I am wrong this time.
6. It may be that some have gone the wrong way, but I am still surprised that so few have arrived.
7. It is right that everyone should know the truth about what happened that day.
8. It is a pity that he takes all this so seriously. There is no need for him to be upset or angry.
9. The only advice we have been able to offer him is to present his complaint to one of the ministers responsible.
10. There is still a drop of wine left in the bottom of the barrel, but I doubt whether it will be very good. I fear we shall have to drink orange juice.
11. It is not that we are refusing to help them; we just wish to know some details of what they want us to do.
12. He denies that he lives in the same house as these men, and he says that it is impossible for him to have known them.

Lesson 25

The imperfect subjunctive

The imperfect subjunctive of regular verbs is formed as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I</th>
<th>II</th>
<th>III</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>parl-és</td>
<td>perd-és</td>
<td>dorm-ís</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parl-essis</td>
<td>perd-essis</td>
<td>dorm-issis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parl-és</td>
<td>perd-és</td>
<td>dorm-is</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parl-éssim</td>
<td>perd-éssim</td>
<td>dorm-issim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parl-éssiu</td>
<td>perd-éssiu</td>
<td>dorm-issiu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parl-essin</td>
<td>perd-essin</td>
<td>dorm-issin</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The imperfect subjunctive of inceptive verbs is formed like that of dormir; thus, llegir has llegis, etc.

Most irregular verbs that have a stem in -gu- in the present subjunctive have the same stem for the imperfect subjunctive: prendre-prenguéus; beure-beguéus; conéixer-conenguéus; creure-creguéus; venir-vinguéus, etc. Note, however, that escriure has escrigui in the present subjunctive but escrivis in the imperfect; poder and voler change the stem from pugu(-i) and vulgu(-i) throughout the present to pogu(-és), etc., and volgu(-és), etc., throughout the imperfect. Study these and other irregular forms in the tables in Appendix I. For practice write out the present and imperfect subjunctive conjugations of anar, ésser, fer, haver, saber, veure, treure, tenir and néixer.

The pluperfect subjunctive is formed by the imperfect subjunctive of haver (haguéus, etc.) together with the past participle of the appropriate verb. There is also, in colloquial use, a periphrastic preterite subjunctive formed with vagi, vagis, vagi, vágim, vágiu, vagin:
Lesson Twenty-Five  207

Ell no creu pas que el vagin enganyar = He does not believe that they deceived him.

In more formal style this would be expressed as ... que l’hagin enganyat.

**Sequence with the subjunctive**

The imperfect and pluperfect subjunctives are used in the same conditions as the present and perfect subjunctives, but generally after different tenses of the main verb. Usually the present and perfect subjunctives will follow a main verb in the present, future, perfect and future perfect; the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctives will follow a main verb in the imperfect, preterite, conditional, pluperfect or conditional perfect:

M’estranya que beguis tant = It surprises me that you drink so much.

No creus que hagi nascut aquí? = Don’t you believe he was born here?

No aconseguirà que s’hi quedin = He won’t get them to stay there.

Han consentit que ens vegem = They have consented to our meeting.

Desitjaven que ho féssem nosaltres mateixos = They wanted us to do it ourselves.

Dubitava que hagués estat així = He doubted that it had been so.

Em va dir que m’hi acostés més = He told me to go closer.

Caldría que vostè li escrivis = You ought to write to him.

No hauriem cregut que això fos tan difícil = We should not have believed that this was so difficult.

Occasionally these rules of sequence are broken by the meaning of what is to be conveyed:

Ès possible que no fos tan antipàtic com deien = It is possible that he was not as unpleasant as they said.

208  **Catalan**

Què va fer ahir perquè avui estigui tan cansat? = What did he do yesterday to make him so tired today?

**Use of the subjunctive (continued)**

The subjunctive is used after subordinating conjunctions, whenever the action expressed is yet unrealized or hypothetical:

**Condition**

Treballaré mentre tingui salut = I shall work for as long as I am healthy.

Només que l’ajudessís una mica, ho faria = If only you were to help him a little, he would do it.

**Concession**

Encara que plogui, sortirem = Even if it rains we shall go out.

Per més que els rentis, no traurem les taques d’aquests pantalons = However much you wash them you will not get the stains out of these trousers (cf. also, Per tacats que siguin, encara els pots portar = However—no matter how—stained they are, you can still wear them).

**Comparison**

El cotxe era tot flamant, com si acabés de sortir de la fàbrica = The car was all shiny new, as though it had just left the factory.

**Negation**

Vaig endevinar el secret sense que me’l digués ningú = I guessed the secret without anyone telling me it.

Ni que tronés, no deixarien de venir = Not even if it thunde-dered would they fail to come.
Means

Hem d’anar tirant com puguem = We must get along as best we can.
Fes-ho com vulguis = Do it how you like.
Ara sembla blau, ara gris, segons com te’l miris = Sometimes it seems blue, sometimes grey, according to how you look at it.

Purpose

Vaig cridar i picar de mans perquè em sentissin = I shouted and clapped so that they should hear me.
Hem tancat el conill en una gàbia perquè no se’ns escapi = We have shut the rabbit up in a cage so that it doesn’t escape.

Perquè is the most frequently used conjunction of purpose. Two others, a fi que and per tal que, have the same meaning and similarly take the subjunctive. Their use, however, is largely confined to the literary language.

Many of the conjunctions illustrated above are, of course, used with the indicative when the action of the verb expresses a reality:

Per més que el renyo no en fa cas = However much I scold him he takes no notice.
T’ho confesso perquè no vull que t’enfadis = I confess it to you because I don’t want you to be annoyed.
Les bèsties pasturaven mentre els homes carregaven el carro = The animals were grazing while the men were loading the cart.

In temporal expressions

After temporal conjunctions the subjunctive is used when the action of the verb is hypothetical or in the future:

Quan llegeríem un resum del llibre endevinaràs qui n’era

210 Catalan

l’autor = When you read a summary of the book you will guess who the author was.
Així que surti el sol, comencarem la pujada = As soon as the sun comes out we shall begin the climb.
Telefonem abans que arribin = Telephone me before they arrive.
Cada vegada que visites el poble te n’ enamoraràs més = Each time you visit the village you will fall more in love with it.
No podíem entrar-hi mentre no s’obrissem les portes = We could not go in until the doors were opened.

It has already been remarked (Lesson 9, p. 82) that the future indicative tense can be used in a subordinate temporal clause qualifying a main action in the future. This construction is less common but more highly regarded than the use of the subjunctive in such clauses. Students should be prepared to meet and to use both alternatives:

Quan {veuràs vegis} la casa la trobaràs molt canviada = When you see the house you will find that it has changed a lot.

After a relative

The subjunctive is used after a relative pronoun when the antecedent is indefinite or a future prospect, or when the idea of purpose is implied:

Faci (vostè) el que vulguis = Do what you like.
No trobàvem ningú que ens aconsellés = We could find no one to advise us.
Dóna’m un llibre amb què pugui distreure’m = Give me a book with which I can be entertained.
De qualsevol manera que l’agafis, sempre s’espatlla = However you take hold of it, it always breaks.
Busco una minyona que em netegi la casa = I am looking for a maid to clean my house.
Van dir que presentarien una copa d'or als qui guanyessin
= They said they would present a gold cup to those who
won.
Els que es mougxin seran afusellats = Those who move will
be shot.

In the last example a future indicative might also be used
in the subordinate clause (Els que es mouran . . . ), and the
observation already made above about this alternative
would again apply.

VOCABULARY
l'arrel (f.), root
l'assaig (m.), essay;
rehearsal
el bitllet d'anar i tornar,
return ticket
el coll, neck; collar
un cop que, once
del tot, completely
disposar, to arrange,
prepare, make ready
el drama, drama, play

entendre's (en), to be good
(at), to be knowledgeable
(about)
entossudir-se, to persist, be
stubborn
espatllar, to damage, break,
spoil, ruin
pròxim -a, next
renyir, to quarrel, fall out
la roda, wheel

EXERCISE 25

(a) Study and translate:

1. Va dir un dels empleats que no s'hi quedaria a treballar,
en aquella casa, ni que li oferissin un augment de sou.
2. El fet que no s'ho cregui ell no vol pas dir que no sigui
veritat.
3. Vam treure de la sala totes les taules, i vam disposar
les cadires així, perquè hi cabés el màxim possible de gent.

(b) Translate:

1. You will have to look for a mechanic to change this
damaged wheel for you. I am not very good at it.
2. Those who buy return tickets will save at least ten duros.
3. Then he looked at me, smiling, as though I had said
something funny.
4. If he were only to put on a clean collar he would look
very much smarter.
5. He knew that his mother would be annoyed when she
saw his shirt all covered in wine stains.
6. I will not fall out with him as long as he continues to
behave properly.
7. However much his relatives scold him he will not take
any notice.
8. I should never wear such a hat in my life, not even if you were to make me a present of it.
9. According to how the rehearsals go, this play could be a great success. I should be very pleased if it were so.
10. The maid had put the cups back in the cupboard so that they didn't get broken.
11. When you come to my office I will give you the papers that you are short of.
12. I knew that once he met that woman he would fall in love with her.

Lesson 26

Adverbs

In the course of this book we have encountered a number of Catalan adverbs, including some ending in -ment like normalment and seriósament. Such adverbs of manner are formed by the addition of the ending -ment to the feminine singular of the corresponding adjective:

lent -a (slowly) — lentament (slowly)
ple plena (full) — plenament (fully)
fàcil (easy) — fàcilment (easily)
públic -a (public) — públicament (publicly)
terrible (terrible) — terriblement (terribly)

Note that a written accent in the adjective stem is retained in the adverb. These adverbs in -ment are pronounced with a stress in the stem and in the ending: plenament [plənəmən].

Two adverbs in -ment can stand together, but in literary style the ending of the second one is sometimes dropped:

La vïdua vestia ricament i elegantment
La vïdua vestia ricament i elegant

The widow dressed richly and elegantly.

It is worth remarking that such adverbs are not used as freely as English adverbs in -ly. A prepositional phrase like de pressa, a poc a poc, or per fi is more common than the corresponding adverb ràpidament, lentament, finalment. Often amb with the appropriate noun, or the phrase d'una manera + adjective will be used instead of an adverb:

S'ho va mirar amb molta paciència = He looked at it very patiently.
Va narrar l'episodi d'una manera senzilla = He related the episode simply.
Several common adjectives are used as adverbs:

Crideu fort = Shout loudly.
Parla tan baix que no el sentim = He speaks so quietly that we cannot hear him.
Ès un home que ha treballat dur = He is a man who has worked hard.

Position of adverbs

Unless standing at the beginning of a sentence the position of the adverb is normally directly after the verb:

Desgraciadament he perdut la clau = Unfortunately I have lost the key.
Em va arribar ràpidament la notícia = The news came to me quickly.

When the verb is in a compound tense an adverb should not divide auxiliary from past participle:

Sempre ha insistit fortament en aquest punt = He has always strongly insisted on this point.

(This rule applies also to adverbs with the periphrastic preterite.) An exception to this is ben (well, properly, very, quite), which is the form taken by bé when it precedes an adjective, infinitive or participle:

T’han ben enganyat = They have really deceived you.
(Cf. Has dormit bé? = Have you slept well?)
Em van confondre = They confused me well and truly.

Study these other adverbial uses of ben and bé (well and truly; a good):

Ès ben alta, aquella muntanya = It’s very high, that mountain.
Ho puc ben creure = I can well believe it.

Comparison of adverbs

The comparative and superlative of an adverb are formed in the same way as for an adjective:

Jo m’explico més francament que tu = I explain myself more frankly than you.
No ho ha fet tan ràpidament com el seu germà = He hasn’t done it as quickly as his brother.
Com ho esbrinaré més fàcilment? = How shall we get to the bottom of it most easily?

There are a few irregular comparatives of adverbs:

bé (ben) — millor  molt — més
malament — pitjor  poc — menys
Lesson Twenty-Six  217

In both colloquial and formal usage, however, it is common to find més bé and més malament used respectively instead of millor and pitjor:

Ells ho faran \{ més bé \\ millor \} que nosaltres = They will do it better than us.

El ferit es trobava cada dia \{ pitjor \\ més malament \} = The wounded man got worse every day.

Temporal expressions

There is an important difference between the ways in which English and Catalan express an action begun in the past and continuing into the present. The basis of this difference is that English measures forwards from the point in the past, whereas Catalan measures backwards from the present. Thus English uses a perfect tense (I have been here for days) or, in the more distant past, a pluperfect (I had been there for days). In such expressions Catalan uses a present and imperfect tense respectively. The span or passage of time is conveyed by an impersonal use of the verb fer (fa, feia = for, ago), by the prepositions des de, d’ençà de (since) or by the conjunctions des que, d’ençà que (since):

Som aquí des d’aquest matí; fa més de tres hores que t’estem esperant = We have been here since this morning; we have been waiting for you for more than three hours.

D’ençà que vostè és l’amo han canviat molt les coses = Since you have been the boss things have changed a lot.

Feia anys que preparava la seva autobiografía = He had been preparing his autobiography for years.

Des que era fora no havia vist cap diari espanyol = Since he had been away he had not seen a Spanish newspaper.

Ho sabia des de feia més d’un any = He had known about it for more than a year.

218  Catalan

The above examples all illustrate an action which stretches over a period of time, from a previous point up to the moment when the action is expressed. When, on the other hand, one is concerned with a single action completed in the past, Catalan tenses coincide with the English. Ago is translated by fa, feia, etc.

De tot això ja fa molts anys = All that was many years ago.
No feia gaire que li ho havia dit = It wasn’t long ago since I had told him.

Van començar, ara farà tres anys, a construir l’autopista de Girona = They began, some three years ago now, to build the Gerona motorway.

D’ençà d’aquell dia ja no es van veure més = From that day on they did not see one another again.

No he menjat res \{ des de divendres \\ de divendres ençà \} = I have eaten nothing since Friday.

D’ençà que es van barallar no s’han tornat a parlar = Since they quarrelled they have not spoken to each other again.

Fa temps que no m’ha escrit = It is a while since he wrote to me, He hasn’t written to me for a while.

VOCABULARY

\begin{align*}
\text{the other} & \quad \text{el compte} \\
\text{(wrong) way} & \quad \text{cara} \\
\text{round;} & \quad \text{la cura} \\
\text{upside down;} & \quad \text{cortes -esa, polite} \\
\text{back to} & \quad \text{des de} \\
\text{front, etc.} & \quad \text{de . . . estant} \quad \text{(position)} \\
\text{provided that} & \quad \text{enutjós -osa, annoying, troublesome} \\
\text{l’art (m. & f.), art} & \quad \text{estar a punt de}, \text{to be about} \\
\text{on consideration,} & \quad \text{to} \\
\text{on reflection} & \quad \text{estendre, to stretch, hold out}
\end{align*}
Lesson Twenty-Six  219

expressar, to express
franc -a, frank
la frontera, frontier
l'horitzó (m.), horizon
la lent, lens
el litre, litre
llargament, at length
lleuger -a, light, slight
la màquina (fotogràfica), camera
més aviat, rather
pel seu compte, on one's own account, for oneself
picant, spicy, hot

el pla, plain
la política, policy; politics
portar un negoci, to run a business
regirar, to rummage (in, amongst); to upset
la serra, mountain ridge, mountain range
la sucursal, branch (of business)
el suggeriment, suggestion
la suggestió
la vista, sight, view
xerrar, to chat

220  Catalan

8. Ens està enganyant des de fa no sé quant temps. Tard o d'hora caldrà que ens parli francament d'aquest afer.
9. Si acostumés a menjar coses més aviat lleugeres, un plat tan fort i picant segurament us regirà l'estómac.
10. Han tardat ben bé cinc anys a convertir l'antic palau en un museu d'art contemporani, però ara ja estan a punt d'obrir-lo al públic.
11. No puc perdre el temps xerrant amb vosaltres; haig d'enllèstir aquesta feina al més aviat possible.
12. Mirant per aquesta lent ho veuràs tot girat a l'inrevés.

(b) Translate:

1. Go up to the balcony, all of you. From there you will see the procession better when it passes in front of the town hall.
2. This big bottle will easily hold (use cabre) two litres.
3. He wanted someone to explain to him clearly and simply what had finally been decided.
4. How long have you been working for yourself? — Since the death of my uncle, five years ago this month, I have been running the business all alone, without anyone to help me.
5. Provided that you handle the camera carefully, it is impossible for the lens to be damaged.
6. Life in the army is not as interesting as I had imagined. On reflection, I have done practically nothing since I have been here.
7. In the discussions organized by the teacher, Thomas always used to defend an opposite point of view to the majority's.
8. What do you think of his suggestion? — Frankly, I don't like it very much. I find it rather annoying. A well brought up person ought not to think of such things.
9. It is not worth hiding anything. When they get to the

EXERCISE 26

(a) Study and translate:

1. Vuit anys a la presó li van fer malbé la salut.
2. Ara que fa tanta calor convé vestir lleugerament.
3. D'allí estant, des d'aquell punt de la serra, es veia ben clarament la frontera francesa, i, cap al sud, el pla que s'estenia fins a l'horitzó.
4. Fa només dos mesos que el ministe es va declarar netament i públicament a favor d'aquesta política. No és gaire probable que ara canviï d'opinió.
5. No és que ens hagi dit res d'enutjós, però, ben mirat, s'hauria pogut expressar d'una manera més cortesa.
6. Des del punt de vista econòmic i industrial, hi ha pocs països tan mal organitzats com aquest.
7. Contràriament al que es podria creure, el negoci d'en Busquets va molt més malament d'ençà que es va obrir la nova sucursal a Madrid.
frontier the customs officers will certainly rummage in all their cases.
10. I had been chatting with her for a good two hours, and was about to take my leave, when suddenly she burst into tears.
11. A year ago the doctor spoke to him at length about the dangers of smoking. Since then he has not touched a cigarette, and he says that he feels better every day.
12. He got dressed quickly, putting his shirt on inside out, and ran down to open the door.

Lesson 27

Numerals

Cardinal numbers up to 20 have already been given (see pp. 30 and 38). The following numbers can now be studied:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Spanish</th>
<th>Numerical Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>seixanta</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>setanta</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>vuitanta</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>noranta</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>cent</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>cent dos (dues)</td>
<td>102</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td>dos-centes (dues-centes)</td>
<td>200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
<td>tres-centes (-centes)</td>
<td>300</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29</td>
<td>mil</td>
<td>1,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>dos mil (dues mil)</td>
<td>2,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31</td>
<td>mil cent</td>
<td>1,100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32</td>
<td>mil dos-centes (dues-centes)</td>
<td>1,200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33</td>
<td>cent mil</td>
<td>100,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39</td>
<td>un milló (de)</td>
<td>1,000,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>dos millions (de)</td>
<td>2,000,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td>cinquanta</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note that -cents (but not cent) has the feminine -centes:

tres-centes vuitanta-set milles quadrades = 387 square miles
sis-centes homes i cinc-centes dones = 600 men and 500 women

Note also that -i- does not join tens and units beyond vint-i-nou; after this only a hyphen is used: treinta-dos, treanta-tres, etc. Used as a noun to express number one, the first becomes u:
Lesson Twenty-Seven

\{ l'u \} de gener = the first of January
\{ el dia u \}

Compounds of numbers are formed by accumulation, a hyphen being used between tens and units and in multiples of hundreds.

tres mil nou-cents noranta-quatre = 3,994
vuit-centes mil lliures = 800,000 pounds
un millió, tres-cents vint-i-quatre mil, sis-cents cinquantu-vuit = 1,324,658

Counting by hundreds goes up only to 900; beyond that one counts in thousands and hundreds:
mil vuit-centes pessetes = eighteen hundred pesetas
l'any mil nou-cents setanta-dos = the year 1972

Un millió, dos milions, etc., are nouns and must therefore be followed by the preposition de when they express a quantity of anything:
Londres té deu milions d'habitants = London has ten million inhabitants.

Dates

Dates are given in Catalan with cardinal numbers:

Quina data és avui? — És el vint-i-set de juliol = What is the date today? — It is the 27th of July.

With dates, as with days of the week, the definite article alone translates on or in:

Vindran el divuit de novembre = They will come on November 18th.
\{ El \} mil vuit-cents quinze van enderrocar les antigues muralles de la ciutat = In (the year) 1815 they demolished the old city walls.

224 Catalan

Remember that with months of the year per with the definite article translates in:
pel març i per l'octubre = in March and in October
allà pel setembre = some time in September

Age

Age is expressed by the verb tenir:

Quants anys tens? = How old are you?
Tinc vint-i-tres anys = I am 23.

The verb complir (to fulfil, complete) and more colloquially fer, acabar de fer are used to express attainment of age or actual birthday:

Avui compleixo vint-i-nou anys = I am 29 today.
L'àvia acaba de fer vuitanta anys = Grandmother has just reached 80.

Measurements

These can be given by the relevant adjective + de + measured number:

una carretera llarga de quatre-cents quilòmetres = a road 400 kilometres long

However, the most frequent way of giving measurements is using the noun of what is being measured: alcàda (height); gruix (thickness); profunditat (depth); amplada (width); llargada, longitud, extensió (length):

Aquí el riu és d'una amplada de trenta metres = Here the river is thirty metres wide.
Tots aquests cims tenen una alcàda de més de mil metres = All these peaks are higher than a thousand metres.
Smaller measurements are sometimes given roughly in palms (un pam = about ten inches):

Hi havia ben bé dos pams de neu = There was a good eighteen inches of snow.
Era una taula de nou pams de llarg per cinc i mig d’ample = It was a table (about) seven and a half feet long by four and a half feet wide.

**Prepositions and numbers**

The preposition a is used with distance and position:
El meu poble és a cent quilòmetres de Barcelona = My home town is a hundred kilometres from Barcelona.
Vi u a dos passos d’aquí = He lives a stone’s throw away from here (lit. two steps away).
A also indicates price and rate:
Aquest vi es ven a dos duros el litre = This wine is sold at two duros a litre.
Pots invertir el capital al vuit per cent = You can invest the capital at 8%.

Distribution and frequency are expressed with per or by the definite article alone:
Les entrades són a cinc duros per cap = The tickets are five duros a head.
dos cops per any

dos cops l’any = twice a year

**Time**

The time of day is indicated by means of ésser used in the present or imperfect tense. Study the following expressions:

Quina hora és? = What time is it?
És la una = It is one o’clock.

Són les dues, són les tres, etc. = It is two o’clock, three o’clock, etc.
Eren les cinc i vint (minuts) = It was twenty (minutes) past five.
A les deu menys quatre (minuts) = At four minutes to ten
A les set en punt = At exactly seven o’clock
Cap a les nou
Cap allà a les nou = Around nine o’clock
Les tres de la matinada = Three o’clock in the (early) morning
Les nou i vint del matí = Twenty past nine in the morning
Les quatre de la tarda = Four o’clock in the afternoon
Les onze de la nit = Eleven o’clock at night
el migdía = midday
la mitjanit = midnight
Quina hora tens? = What time do you make it?
Falten dos minuts per a les vuit = It is two minutes before eight o’clock.
Tinc les tres vint-i-cinc = I make it three twenty-five.
El meu tren surt a les divuit cinquanta = My train leaves at 18.50.
Eren més de les vuit = It was turned eight o’clock.

The half hour and the quarter hours are given in a special way which the English person might find a little strange at first:

un quart de tres = a quarter past two (lit. one quarter of the third hour)
dos quarts de tres = half past two (lit. two quarters of the third hour)
tres quarts de tres = a quarter to three (lit. three quarters of the third hour)

Remember that two o’clock starts the **third** hour, three o’clock the **fourth** hour, four o’clock the **fifth**, and so on. For practice go through the twelve hours of the day measuring by quarters in this way. After a while this way of
giving the time, which is after all a very logical one, will come quite naturally.

At the risk of creating some confusion, it must be remarked that the quarter is itself sometimes divided or qualified. Thus un quart i mig de set means (about) twenty-two minutes past six; a dos quarts i deu means at twenty minutes to the hour. Finally there is an expression (and a sometimes disconcerting convention) which gives the time around half past the hour in a very approximate way. A quarts de... means around half past..., which can be anywhere between a quarter past one hour and a quarter to the next:

Vàrem quedar que ens trobàrem a quarts de dues = We agreed to meet around half past one.

VOCABULARY

l’acer (m.), steel
assecar, to dry
avançar, to advance; to be fast (watch)
là biga, beam
la catifa, carpet
el cens, census
el clima, climate
cobrar, to collect, receive payment; to cash, charge
la cortina, curtain
darrerament, recently
despatxar, to serve, sell
donar corda a un rellotge, to wind up a watch
l’escaleta (f.), scale
l’estanc (m.), tobacconist’s shop
el ferro, iron
el ferrocarril, railway
fondre’s, to melt
el grau, degree, grade
gruixut -uda, thick
introduir, to introduce
llevat de } except for, apart
tret de } from
marcar, to mark; to show (watch)
la mida, measurement
millorar, to improve
mitjà -ana, middle; average
el nombre, number
la para, speech, language
la població, population
el pont, bridge

228 Handling

retardar, to delay, postpone;
  to be slow (watch)

Catalan

suportar, to support, bear
tocar, to strike (time)
vint-i-tants -es, twenty-odd

EXERCISE 27

(a) Study and translate:

1. El tres de setembre de mil nou-cents trenta-nou és va declarar la guerra entre Anglaterra i Alemanya, la qual va durar fins l’any quaranta-quatre.
2. Hom ha calculat darrerament que més d’un quinze per cent d’espanyols són de parla catalana.
3. Quan em va dir que acabava de fer vuitanta-sis anys, jo vaig quedar molt sorprès, exclamant que la feia molt més jove.
4. Aquí tenim un clima molt variable. A l’estiu la temperatura mitjana és de vint-i-quatre graus centígrads, i pel desembre baixa a dos graus sota zero.
5. Falten quatre minuts per a les dotze; quan toqui mitjanit, tots, llevat d’en Francesc, us n’haureu d’anar.
6. Dos cops l’any la mare renta les cortines i les estén al terrat perquè s’assequin.
7. Als cims que tenen una alçada de més de tres mil cinc-cents metres hi ha neu que no es fon durant tot l’any.
8. No importa que la corda sigui gruixuda, amb que la llargada no passi de setze metres.
9. Durant els anys cinquanta la població de la capital va augmentar de divuit mil tres-cents caps, pujant a un nombre total de gairebé dos milions d’habitants.
10. Quines mides haurà de tenir la catifa per al passadís? — Si no m’equivoco, tretze metres de llarg per seixanta-sis centímetres d’ample.
11. Vam parar en una masia, a vint-i-tants quilòmetres de Lleida, que no estava marcada en cap mapa.
12. Tinc un quart i cinc d’onze, però és possible que aquest rellotge meu avanci una mica.

(b) Translate:

1. According to the census of 1967 Barcelona had a population of 1,738,498.
2. What time do you make it, please? I forgot to wind up my watch this morning. — Mine shows half past seven, but I think it is slow.
3. Fifty-four kilometres beyond Olot the road climbs to a height of fifteen hundred metres. From there we shall have a marvellous view, as long as there is no mist.
4. Twice a year the widower collected the interest (pl.) from his capital, which he had invested at seven per cent.
5. If we say we shall meet around half past eleven, no one will appear until a quarter to. It is best to agree on half past exactly.
6. How old are you? — I was born on the first of December, 1944, which means that I shall be twenty-nine this year.
7. Water boils at a temperature of a hundred degrees, or at two hundred and twelve if one is using the Farenheit scale.
8. The old stone bridge was demolished over four hundred years ago.
9. I bought this rice for thirty-two pesetas a kilo; last week they were selling some at six duros. Sometimes it seems that they charge what they like.
10. They have improved the railway service between Barcelona and Geneva a lot recently, introducing some new trains capable of doing a hundred and twenty kilometres an hour.
11. What time does the tobacconist’s open after midday? — They normally serve from a quarter past four until nine o’clock in the evening.
12. The ceiling was supported by iron or steel beams, each of which was a good thirty-five centimetres thick.

Lesson 28

Numerals (continued)

The ordinal numbers in Catalan are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Catalan</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>Ordinal</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>primer</td>
<td>1st</td>
<td>dotzè</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>segon</td>
<td>2nd</td>
<td>tretzè</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tercer</td>
<td>3rd</td>
<td>catorzè</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quart</td>
<td>4th</td>
<td>quinzè</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cinqué</td>
<td>5th</td>
<td>setzè</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sisè</td>
<td>6th</td>
<td>dissetè</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>setè</td>
<td>7th</td>
<td>divuitè</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vuitè</td>
<td>8th</td>
<td>dinovè</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>novè</td>
<td>9th</td>
<td>vintè</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>desè</td>
<td>10th</td>
<td>centè</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>onzè</td>
<td>11th</td>
<td>milè</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>milionèsim</td>
<td>millionth</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The ordinal numbers are adjectives and therefore agree in number and in gender with the nouns to which they refer. Their position is usually before the noun. Primer is also an adverb meaning first, before:

La casa on primer vaig viure = The house where I first lived.

Ordinals are rarely used beyond the tenth, after which point they are usually replaced by cardinals:

Isabel II (Isabel segona) = Elizabeth II, but Lluís XIV (Lluís catorze) = Louis XIV.
Jaume I (Jaume primer) = James I, but el Papa Innocencí XIII (tretze) = Pope Innocent XIII.

el segle vint = the twentieth century

Remember that in dates Catalan uses cardinals where English uses ordinals.
Partitives and fractions

Fractions are formed from the ordinal numbers, thus:

\[ cinc \text{ sisens} = \frac{5}{8}, \quad tres \text{ setzens} = \frac{3}{10} \]

An alternative way is to use the feminine form of the ordinal + the noun part:

\[ \text{una novena part} = \frac{1}{9}, \quad \text{set quinzenes parts} = \frac{7}{5} \]

Note, however, that the three fractions in most frequent use have special forms:

\[ \text{mig mitja} = \text{a half}, \quad \text{un quart} = \text{a quarter}, \quad \text{un terç} = \text{a third} \]

Mitja is used with feminine nouns. Both forms go before the noun when no other numeral is present:

\[ \text{mitja hora} = \text{half an hour} \]
\[ \text{dues hores i mitja} = \text{two hours and a half} \]
\[ \text{Vaig estar-hi un dia i mig} = \text{I was there for a day and a half} \]

When half expresses a portion and not a mathematical fraction la meitat is used:

\[ \text{Ja n’havien menjat la meitat} = \text{They had already eaten half of it} \]

In such cases Catalan always says the half, not a half or half.

Collective numerals

There are some words which represent a number of things as a single unity, often approximate:

\[ \text{un parell} = \text{a pair, couple}, \quad \text{una dotzena} = \text{a dozen} \]
\[ \text{un centenar} = \text{a hundred}, \quad \text{un miler} = \text{a thousand} \]
\[ \text{una vintena} = \text{a score}, \quad \text{una trentena} = \text{thirty} \]

\[ \text{Els diumenges els barcelonins surten a milers de la ciutat} = \text{On Sundays Barcelona people leave the city in their thousands} \]

232 Catalan

L’organització esperava centenars d’espectadors, però només n’hi van anar una vintena = The organization was expecting hundreds of spectators but only a score turned up.

Una quinzena is frequently used for a fortnight (i.e. 15 days):

\[ \text{No el vaig veure en tota la quinzena} = \text{I didn’t see him for the whole fortnight} \]

The conjunction sinó

But, as we have seen, is usually translated in Catalan by però. However, when but introduces an affirmative statement which opposes a preceding negative one, making a modification within a general assertion, it is then translated by sinó:

\[ \text{No ho dic pas de tu sinó del teu amic} = \text{I don’t mean it about you but about your friend}. \]
\[ \text{Vindran no pas avui sinó demà} = \text{They will come not today but tomorrow}. \]

But in some contexts means except, other than or only and can be translated either by sinó or by més que:

\[ \text{No s’ho creu ningú sinó més que ell} = \text{No one but him believes it}. \]
\[ \text{Aquest nen no fa res més que plorar sinó més que} = \text{This child does nothing but cry}. \]

When but after a negative statement introduces a whole clause sinó (que) is likewise used:

\[ \text{No refusem aquest oferta, sinó que l’acceptem molt agraits} = \text{We are not turning down this offer but accepting it very gratefully}. \]
\[ \text{No tornaré aquest any a Londres, sinó que seguiré estant a Barcelona} = \text{I shall not return to London this year but stay on in Barcelona}. \]
Exclamations

We have already used exclamations with quin:

Quina porqueria! = What filthy!
Quin soroll! = What a noise!
Quina noia més bonica! = What a pretty girl!

Quant -a is used in exclamations referring to quantity:

Quanta pobresa! = What (a lot of) poverty!
Quantes mentides que has dit! = What lies you have told!
Quant temps fa que no m’escriu! = How long it is since he wrote to me!

How in exclamations is translated by que:

Que interessant! = How interesting!
Que de pressa que han passat els dies! = How quickly the days have passed!
Que simpàtica que és aquella dona! = How nice that woman is!
Guaiga que pràctiques que són aquestes espardenyes! = Look how practical these sandals are! (espardenyes are canvas shoes with rope soles, worn particularly in country districts.)

Note from the examples above how que introduces a qualifying clause in exclamations.

When how introduces not a proper exclamation but an expression of a great amount of a certain quality represented by an adjective or adverb, then another construction is used which involves com:

Ara ens diran com era d’ensopit l’espectacle = Now they will tell us how boring the show was.
No pots imaginar-te com és de desgraciada aquesta família = You cannot imagine how unfortunate this family is.
Seguia pensant com arribaria de tard = He kept on thinking how late he would arrive.

234 Catalan

The same idea can often be conveyed more colloquially by using fins a quin punt (to what extent):

Vull que comprenguis fins a quin punt estic atrafegat = I want you to understand how very busy I am.
No sabien fins a quin punt això seria acceptable = They did not know how acceptable this would be.

Vocabulary

a partir de, (starting) from
al cap de, after, . . . later
anterior, previous, earlier
l’ase (m.), ass
la barreja, mixture
barrejar, to mix
calçar, to put on (shoes)
el congrés, congress, conference
el duc, duke
l’emoció (f.), emotion, excitement
l’empenta (f.), push, shove
extens -a, extensive, long
el fi, end, object, aim
la fortuna, fortune
el gegant, giant
el gra, grain
inclusiu -iva, inclusive
justificar, to justify

males llengües, gossip;
gossips
marcar, to score
el mitjà, means
l’oficina (f.), office
orfe òrfen, orphan
la palla, straw; chaff, padding
la parella, couple (of people)
posar al dia, to bring up to date
propòsit, own
restablir, to restore
la sèrie, series
tot plegat, all together, all in all
tractar, to treat, have dealings with
tractar de, to deal with

El seny is a word which does not have a simple English equivalent. It means natural wisdom, discernment and a sense of proportion in thought and behaviour, and is a quality on which many Catalans pride themselves.
EXERCISE 28

(a) Study and translate:

1. És una barreja, la meitat conyac i la meitat vi. Què? No t'agrada?
2. La reina no solament va fer educar la pobra òrfena, sinó que també la va tractar sempre com si fos la seva pròpia filla.
3. Quina parella més simpàtica que són els Sardà. És increïble que el fill sigui un ase tan pesat!
4. Durant l’últim terç del segle dinou, quan totes les ciències naturals avançaven a passos de gegant, es van fer aquests progressos enormes en el camp de la medicina.
5. En aquesta empresa fem les vacances anuals durant la segona quinzena d’agost. Per tant, a partir de dissabte, dia divuit, fins al trenta inclusivament, seran tancats tots els tallers i oficines de la companyia.
6. Tot plegat, jo diria que la culpa no és pas d’ell sinó d’aquells que l’han portat pel mal camí.
7. Males llengües ho diuen, però ningú no sap fins a quin punt és cert.
8. Al cap d’una hora i mitja l’ordre havia estat restablert per dues parelles de la Guàrdia Civil.
9. Quantes empentes que es donava aquella gent que havia anat a milers per veure el Barcelonista jugant a casa contra el Real Madrid! Quina emoció quan els del Barça van marcar primer!
10. És massa jove encara per a saber separat el gra de la palla. El seny és quelcom que ve amb els anys.
11. Enaara que portava un parell de mitjons molt fins, les sabates noves m’eren estretes i no me les podia calçar.
12. La setena edició del llibre és força més extensa que les anteriors, perquè l’autor, per tal de posar-lo al dia, hi ha afegit un capítol que tracta de la situació actual.

(b) Translate:

1. More than half of those who attended the congress were foreigners.
2. The bills and the correspondence were all mixed [together] at the bottom of the drawer, and I spent the whole evening separating the latter and trying to put it in order.
3. We have ordered a couple of chickens and half a dozen bottles of champagne. Don’t you think we shall have enough with that?
4. The ship arrived in Bilbao at a quarter to four in the morning. An hour and a half later hundreds of cars were making [their] way southwards.
5. The last chapter of his autobiography, in which he deals extensively with the Second World War, has a certain interest. But, all in all, if you take away the padding, there is nothing left but a series of commonplaces.
6. The first time that he went to London he saw King George VI with his own eyes.
7. Not only do they approve of this plan, but they also believe that the end justifies all the means used to achieve it.
8. Give him a push; if you don’t (if not) he won’t jump.
9. When the Duke’s fortune is shared out each of the two sons will receive two-fifths, and the other fifth will go (tocar) to the only daughter as soon as she is of age.
10. What a lot of things they had done since they had been married! But also, unfortunately, how quickly the days had passed!
11. I have reminded him about it for [the] millionth time, but I don’t think he will take any notice.
12. Just look how late it is! I can’t tell you how sorry I am to have to put [an] end to the conversation.
Lesson 29

The imperative and the subjunctive

We have already seen that some parts of the imperative affirmative are identical with the corresponding parts of the present subjunctive. Care must be taken to distinguish those irregular verbs whose first person plural imperative is identical with the present subjunctive for that person (beveu, preneu, coneixeu, veniu, creieu, moveu, etc.) but whose second person plural imperative coincides with the present indicative (beveu, preneu, coneixeu, veniu, creieu, moveu, etc.). Some other irregular verbs, on the other hand, coincide in both these parts of the imperative with the present subjunctive: diguem, digueu; siguem, siguieu; estiguem, estigueu, etc.

The negative imperative

A negative order (Don’t do that) is expressed in Catalan with the present subjunctive for all persons:

No pateixis = Don’t worry (lit. don’t suffer).
No s’amoini (vostè) = Don’t be disturbed.
No creguin aquestes besties = Don’t believe this nonsense.
No siguem pas massa exigents = Let us not be too demanding.

The particle pas frequently reinforces a negative imperative, as in the last example above. When weak object pronouns are used with a negative command they will precede the verb. Thus we say Beveu-la (Drink it) but No la begueu (Don’t drink it); Menja-t’ho (Eat it up) but No t’ho mengis (Don’t eat it). Study a few more examples:

No te’n vagis sense acomiadar-te = Don’t go without saying goodbye.

238 Catalan

No ens despullem a la vista de tothom = Let’s not get undressed in view of everyone.
No m’ho compliqueu pas = Don’t make it difficult for me.

The subjunctive in a main clause

The negative imperative provides an instance of the subjunctive used in a main clause. There are some other cases of this which we can now observe. In exclamations and exhortations que + subjunctive refers to the third person (Let him . . .; May he . . ., etc.). The same construction used with a second person subjunctive is less abrupt than the straightforward imperative:

Que els compri un altre = Let someone else buy them.
Que això et serveixi de llicó = Let this be a lesson to you.
Que descansis = Have a good rest, Sleep well.
Que tinguin bon viatge = Have a good journey.
Bon dia tingui = Good day to you.
Visca el rei! = Long live the King.

Tant de bo que + subjunctive expresses a wish or exhortation (Would that . . .):

Tant de bo que tornin = Oh, for them to come back.
Tant de bo que visquis el pare = Would that Father were alive.
Potser vindran demà. Tant de bo! = Perhaps they will come tomorrow. That would be nice.

Closely related with these types of exhortation is the use of the subjunctive in expressions like digui el que digui (say what he will, whatever he says); sigui com sigui (be it as it may); vingui qui vingui (come who may, whoever may come).

The simple preterite

So far in this book we have used the periphrastic form of
the preterite tense (vaig parlar, etc.). The alternative form of this tense, which was only mentioned earlier, can now be introduced. We shall call this the simple preterite since, unlike its compound or periphrastic equivalent, it is made up in one word of stem plus ending. The simple preterite conjugation of our model verbs is as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I</th>
<th>II</th>
<th>III</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>parl-í</td>
<td>perd-í</td>
<td>dorm-í</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parl-àres</td>
<td>perd-eres</td>
<td>dorm-ires</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parl-à</td>
<td>perd-é</td>
<td>dorm-ëm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parl-àrem</td>
<td>perd-érem</td>
<td>dorm-irem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parl-àreu</td>
<td>perd-éreu</td>
<td>dorm-ireu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parl-àren</td>
<td>perd-eren</td>
<td>dorm-iren</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Inceptive verbs of the third conjugation form their simple preterite like dormir: llegí, llegires, etc. As in some other tenses, certain regular verbs show spelling changes in accordance with pronunciation: començar — comenci, començares, etc.; menjar — mengi, menjares, etc.; tancar — tanquí, tancares, etc.; pagar — paguí, pagaires, etc.; conduir — conduï, conduïres, etc. A few irregular verbs follow the regular pattern in forming the simple preterite: anar — ani, etc.; saber — sabi, etc. Most verbs whose first person singular present indicative ends in -c (tenir, venir, creure, conèixer, etc., but not escriure or viure) have their preterite stem in -gu- (tinguí, vinguí, creguí, coneguí, etc., but escriví, visqui). Without consulting the verb tables, write out the simple preterite of treure, dir, estar, caure, poder and prendre. Check your results with the lists in Appendix I, and study there also the preterite conjugations of verbs which display particular irregularities in this tense: córrer, escriure, ésser, fer, haver, néixer, veure and voler. It will be observed that regular and, with few exceptions, irregular verbs have a common stem for the imperfect subjunctive and the simple preterite.

240 Catalan

Use of the simple preterite

The meaning of the simple preterite is identical with that of the periphrastic form, denoting a single action completed in the past:

Déu digué ‘Sigui feta la llum’, i la llum fou = God said ‘Let there be light’, and there was light.

Van sembrar-hi pèsols
Hi sembraren pèsols \} = They sowed peas there.

The two preterite forms can, and often do, appear side by side in the same sentence:

S’acostà a la porta i va trucar-hi dos cops = He went up to the door and knocked twice.

One might well read such a sentence, but one would rarely hear it spoken. In everyday language the simple preterite is hardly used, being considered something of an affectation (especially in the first person singular), and it has been overtaken almost entirely, except in Valencia and the Balearic Islands, by the periphrastic form. In written and literary Catalan, however, the simple preterite has a very strong life. Here, unless abused, it has no tone of affectation and is widely found in every kind of writing. For these reasons students should make themselves fully familiar with this form and attempt to use it sensitively in writing Catalan.

The past anterior tense

This tense is formed with the preterite of haver (simple or periphrastic) together with the appropriate past participle. It translates the English pluperfect, when this expresses a single action, and occurs only after a temporal conjunction when the main verb is in the preterite:

A penes hagnéreu sortit de casa que es va posar a ploure
= Scarcely had you left home when it began to rain.
No va callar fins que ho hagué contat tot = He did not stop talking until he had recounted everything.
Tan bon punt el va haver comprat en veïé un altre d'ídèntic = As soon as he had bought it he saw another one just the same.

The past anterior tense can be avoided (and frequently is, especially in conversation) by the use of the pluperfect:

Quan \{hagué \} parat de nevar ... = When it had stopped snowing ... = Quan havia parat de nevar ...

Observe also that the preterite tense after a temporal conjunction sometimes has the force of the pluperfect or past anterior:

Després que es retirà el jurat ... = After the jury (had) retired ...

VOCABULARY

l'ànec \(m\), duck
la bufetada, slap, hit
cassar, to hunt, shoot
comptet!, be careful! watch out!
de part meva, on my behalf
el desastre, disaster
l'enuig \(m\), annoyance
esmolar, to sharpen
el gest, gesture, movement
girar-se, to turn round
l'inconvenient \(m\), inconvenience
l'intèrpret \(m\), interpreter
el joc, game, play
el méthode, method
el motiu, reason, motive
el paper, role, part
pegar, to hit, strike
\(a\) blow
el periodista, journalist
provar, to try (out)
que jo sàpiga, as far as I know
el record, memory;
\(p.l\), regards
sens dubte, without doubt
la sort, (good) luck
el terra, floor
les tisores, scissors
la via, way, track

Note the use of estar meaning to stop (doing something), and distinguish between this and aturar (to bring to a halt, stop), aturar-se (to come to a halt, stop). Remember also that parar, used both transitively and intransitively, is synonymous with aturar(-se).

EXERCISE 29

(a) Study and translate:

1. Tret d'això no hi ha res més a fer, que jo sàpiga.
2. Compte, que ve un tren! No passin per la via.
3. El capità dels guàrdies es va aixecar i, en una veu plena d'emoció, pronuncià les paraules següents: 'Que l'exemple d'aquest home valent ens serveixi a tots de lliçó.'
4. Les tisores grosses són molt esmolades; compte que no us hi talleu.
5. Estigues, home; no em venguís amb jocs. Que sóc capaç de pegar-te una bufetada.
6. Si voleu que no us estafin, que no us prenguin per turistes estrangers.
7. No sé estar-me d'anar-hi, passi el que passi, enfadi's qui vulgui.
8. La sort volgué que es tornessin a trobar i que es conequessin després de tants anys.
9. Demà anirem a caçar ànecs. Tant de bo que no plogui.
10. Degueren empimar-se molt quan per fi ho varen saber.
11. Els digué que no patissin, i s'oferí ell mateix a fer-los d'intèrpret.
12. Tan bon punt es van haver posat d'acord, anaren a comunicar llur decisió als periodistes que estaven esperant a fora.
Lesson Twenty-Nine 243

13. Després que hagué llegit l’anunci es va girar, impacient, i féu un gest d’enuig.
14. Està bé que no vulgui fer-ho avui, però que no deixi pas de pensar-hi demà.
15. No se sap encara quins foren els motius que el van portar a acceptar un paper tan difícil.

(b) Translate:
1. Don’t stop because of (per) me. I shan’t bother you.
2. Without doubt, it must have been an almost impossible role to learn.
3. Watch out! Don’t touch it; it’s hot (cremar).
4. Whatever the inconveniences might be, I think that, on reflection, it will perhaps be worth while to try out this other method.
5. Don’t hit him. He didn’t mean to offend you.
6. They arrived in Saragossa on the nineteenth and stayed there over a fortnight.
7. As far as I know, he has played (fer) no part in this affair. He had no reason to get mixed up in it.
8. The show was a total disaster. Everything went badly.
9. When you see Charles at Christmas, give him [our] regards and don’t fail to congratulate him on our behalf on his success.
10. He did not stop until he had climbed to the very top.
11. He opened the letter with a gesture of impatience, and as soon as he had read it he threw it to [the] floor.
12. It would be nice if things were always so simple.
13. We ran to help him, but it was too late.
14. Enjoy yourselves, gentlemen, but don’t drink too much.
15. He had the bad luck to fall ill on the day when the prizes were distributed.

Lesson 30

The verb after si

Even though a clause introduced by si (if, whether) will not present a fact or a reality, a subjunctive is used after this conjunction only in certain cases. We have, therefore, an exception to the general rule about the subjunctive, and si must be distinguished from those conjunctions referred to in Lesson 25 (pp. 208–10). Si can introduce either an indirect question or a condition. In an indirect question, however great the degree of doubt or uncertainty implied, si is followed always by a verb in the indicative:

No sabíem pas si l’operarien o no = We did not know whether they would operate on her or not (cf. Dubtàvem que l’operessin).
Pregunta-li d’una vegada si això és a càrrec d’ell = Ask him once and for all if this is his responsibility (cf. No crec que això sigui a càrrec d’ell).

In a simple conditional sentence, with an open condition, when there is no indication as to whether it is a reality or not, a verb in the indicative will follow si:

Si plovisqueja, no surtis = If it is drizzling don’t go out.
Si les noies portaven pantalons no les deixaven entrar = If the girls wore trousers they were not allowed in.
Si el ferit ha perdut molta sang, no el moguis pas = If the wounded man has lost a lot of blood, don’t move him.

However, in cases where the condition is not open, if it is felt to be remote or presented as contrary to fact, then a subjunctive is often used in a conditional clause after si although the imperfect indicative is still correct. The main clause of such sentences will invariably have a verb in the conditional or conditional perfect tense:
Si en tenia te’n donaria = If I had any I should give you some.
Si jo morís, què faria la meva família? = If I were to die, what would my family do?
Si m’ho haguéssis dit abans, hauria pogut retardar la meva sortida = If you had told me earlier I should have been able to postpone my departure.
Si no fos per ell, les coses estarien encara pitjor = If it were not for him, things would be even worse.

Note that in every such case only an imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive can be used: the present subjunctive never appears after si.
Occasionally si + subjunctive stand in an independent exclamation of wish or desire:
Si pogués anar-hi! = If only I could go there!
Si haguéssis pogut veure-la! = If only you could have seen her!

An alternative conditional
The verbs ésser and haver have alternative forms of the indicative conditional tense:

ésser: fóra, fores, fóra, fórem, fóreu, foren
haver: haguera, hagueres, haguera, haguérem, haguéreu, haguernen.

These forms are very common; they can replace in any context the normal conditional indicative. They must not be confused with the imperfect subjunctives fos, hagués, etc., nor, in the case of fores, fórem, fóreu, foren, with the identical forms of the simple preterite of ésser.

{Seria \} millor no parlar-ne = It would be better not to speak about it.

Catalan

No ho \{hauria \} sospitat mai = I should never have suspected it.
Si se n’anessin els pares, què \{seria \} dels fills? = If the parents were to leave, what would become of the children?
Si no li ho haguéssis promès, no \{t’hauria \} amoinat amb tantes preguntes = If you had not promised him it, he would not have bothered you with so many questions.
Si no fos per mi, tots ara \{serieu \} a la presó = If it were not for me, you would all be in prison now.

Suffixes
Catalan is rich in suffixes which modify or amplify the basic meaning of a word. Many of these, like -isme, -ista, -able, etc., are easily recognizable because they have English equivalents. The most important suffixes to learn, and those to which an English speaker will be least accustomed, are those which give an augmentative, a diminutive or a pejorative sense to the primary word. Translation of these suffixes often involves providing an adjective or adverb, or substituting the primary word in English for a more colloquial and expressive synonym.

The commonest example of an augmentative suffix is -às -assa. Observe how it is joined to the word and how it affects the meaning of these examples:

un minyó = a young man; un minyonàs = a big, strapping fellow
una minyonassa = a hefty young woman
una mà = a hand; una manassa = a big, huge hand
gran = big; grandàs -assa = very big, huge, unusually big
Lesson Thirty 247

There is also the augmentative -arro -arra whose use is more familiar:

un homenarro = a big bloke; una veuarr = a loud voice

There are several diminutive suffixes, but the one in most common use is -et -eta. As well as denoting smallness of size, the diminutive often conveys also a note of intimacy or of a favourable disposition on the part of the speaker:

Fa fresqueta aquí fora = It's chilly out here.

Esperi's {una estoneta
                un momentet}, si us pla = Wait a short while/
                just a moment, please.

Una truiteta crueta per dins i ben rosseta per fora = A little omelet, nice and runny inside and lightly browned on the outside (una truita = omelet; cru -a = raw; ros rossa = fair, light brown).

Vés a buscar una cadireta per a la nena = Go and fetch a little chair for the little girl.

És una criatura molt entremaliadeta = He (she) is a very mischievous child (entremaliat -ada = naughty).

The pejorative suffix -ot -ota denotes a strongly depreciative attitude on the part of the user. Words formed with this suffix may also suggest, as part of their pejorative sense, an idea of ugliness or awkwardness:

No trepitsis la catifa amb aquests sabatots bruts = Don't trample on the carpet with those dirty old shoes.

Llavors deixà anar una paraulota molt forta i llejtota = He then came out with a very strong and ugly swear word.

Another suffix which must be mentioned here, because it is much used over a wide range of meaning, is -ada. First, it indicates a group or collective noun derived from a primary word:

una gentada = a crowd

la teulada = roof (from teula = tile)

una costellada = a barbecue (from costella = meat chop)

248 Catalan

The same suffix also forms words which express a blow with an instrument or the part of the body where the blow is received:

una bastonada = a blow with a stick
una pedrada = a hit with a stone
una ganiivetada = a stab with a knife
una esquenada = a slap on the back
una galtada = a slap on the cheek (from galt = cheek)

Units, periods, measurements, etc., of time are often indicated by -ada:

la matinada = early morning
una temporada = a season, period
una diada = a special day, festival
la migdia = the midday nap, siesta
la mesada = the month's salary

Finally, -ada forms many derived words which express a product or a specialized function of a primary concept:

una ventada = a gust of wind
una animalada = something wicked or stupid
una callerada = a spoonful
una queixalada = a mouthful (from el queixal = [molar] tooth)

A note on fer and the substitute fúmer

In the course of this book we have seen the verb fer used in a wide variety of idioms. It must now be remarked that in the spoken language another verb, fúmer (and sometimes the very vulgar fotre), replaces fer and a good many other transitive verbs. This substitution need not be imitated, but it does have to be recognized, as in the following examples:

Què fumeu aquí? = What are you doing here?
En tot el dia no fum res = He does nothing all day.
Lesson Thirty 249

Li vaig fúmer una puntada de peu = I gave him a kick.
L'han fumat escales avall = They have knocked him down
the stairs.
Es va fúmer dos plats de crema = He ate two dishes of
custard.

In addition fúmer occurs in some particular idioms. It can
mean to embarrass, to put in a difficult situation:

M'has ben fumut = You've really put me in a spot.
No fumis! = \{ You don't say!
\{ Don't be silly!

Fúmer el camp means to go away, to leave; fúmer-se de
means to make fun of or not to care about:

Diu que vol fúmer el camp: \{ me'n fum
\{ tant se me'n fum

He says
he wants to leave; I couldn't care less.

És un que es fum de tot = He is a person who doesn't care
about anything.

VOCABULARY

agafar-se a, to grab hold of,
to clutch
to crush, squash;
to weigh down
xafar \{ on, exhaust,
wear out
arriscat -ada, risky
la branca, branch
la calefacció, heating
celebrar, to celebrate, hold
dei día, in the day time, by
day
de nou, freshly, newly
durament, harshly
eixamplar, to widen
extraordinari -ària,
extraordinary
el forat, hole
la fresca, cool weather, cool
air
el llençol, sheet
el patró, patron saint
petitó -ona, tiny
la petjada, footprint
el tub, tube
la víctima, victim

EXERCISE 30

(a) Translate:

1. I can't lend you a cent until I am paid my week's wages.
2. On April 23rd, the feast of Saint George, patron saint
of Catalonia, the famous book festival is held in Barcelona.
3. If he were as extraordinarily intelligent as he tries to
make out (wants to seem), he would not have committed
(fer) an act of such enormous stupidity.
4. It's a very tiny little hole, but if you don't block it up
straight away it will go on getting wider and then the rain
will come in through it.
5. It would be too risky to try to do it in the day time. Let's
wait for it to turn dark.
6. Don't touch my sheets with those horrible dirty hands.
They are freshly ironed.
7. By following their enemy's footprints they finally caught
up with him near the place where he had killed his first
victim.
8. They would have been harshly punished if they had not
told the whole truth about it.
9. A strong gust of wind blew which would have knocked
him over (made him fall) had he not grabbed hold of a
branch which was hanging [down].
10. The curtain of thick grey fog which covered the city
weighed down on the few people who were about in the
streets.
11. If it were just a question of changing a little piece of
tube, without any sort of complications, we could have
mended it ourselves.
12. The central heating has made me feel worn out. I'm
going out [for] a short while to take [a breath of] cool air.

(b) Translate the following short story, using when neces-
sary the vocabulary at the end of the book. Study the
passage carefully, paying particular attention to grammatical
construction, word order and turn of phrase. The translation
and explanatory notes given on pp. 324–8 will help to clear
up any points of difficulty, but an attempt should first be
made to complete the passage without consulting them. For
further practice, translate the English version of the story
back into Catalan and compare your attempt with the
original after you have finished.

**Feblesa de Caràcter**

Un dia, trobant-me dormint com he dormit tantes i tantes
vegades, va despertar-me un soroll que venia del meu
despatx.

— Ja hi som! — vaig dir-me.—. És el lladre.
Fi, caminant de puntetes, vaig guanyar la distància que
em separava del lloc on algú m'espoliava. Allí hi havia un
senyor desconegut, amb un sac, que triava aquelles de les
meves coses que li feien més goig i les amuntegava en
una pila.

— Ep! Parlem-ne... — li vaig dir.
Ell es va girar sense sobresalt ni sorpresa, em va mirar
de cap a peus i respongué:

— No cal. Jo us guanyo. Així, calculant-ho a ull, peso
uns vint quilograms més que vós. Aquest avantatge natural
m'estalvia tota mena d'explicacions. Porteu armes?

— No.

— Raó de més.
I procedí a omplir el sac amb els meus béns, fent com si
m'ignorés. Jo, com és de bona llei, no em vaig pas resignar:

— Però, home, això no és quèstió de força. Hi ha moral,
m'enteneu? Sense principis no anireu enlloc i tothom us
mirarà de cua d'ull...

— La moral! — digué.—. És el pes més inútil que pot
carregar un home.
I posant-se seriós de sobte, em preguntà:
balanç de la meva vida i trobar que, fins aleshores, havia errat. No es pot anar contracorrent, i si hi vas en pagues les conseqüències. Això quedava tan clar que vaig decidir canviar de vida.

‘Ara trobo que faig el que vull sense noses de consciència i tothom troba que estic tan bé. Les dones em sol·liciten, els coneguts proclamen la meva simpatia i els veïns, quan els vaga, diuen entre ells: “Ja ho veus, tan ase que semblava i encara farà carrera!”’

‘Això és tot. Si us pot servir d’alguna cosa, aquí ho teniu.’

— Vinc amb vós! — vaig dir-li.—. Em sabria molt de greu ésser víctima d’una decisió tardana.

L’endemà els diaris publicaven la següent notícia:

‘Aahir de bon matí, els lladres entraren en un pis de l’avinguda Oriental. Entre altres objectes de valor, hom troba a faltar l’amo de la casa, ja que ningú no sap donar raó del senyor Calders, ciutadà honorable i contribuent de bons costums.’

(Pere Calders, Cròniques de la veritat oculta, Editorial Selecta, Barcelona, 1955, pp. 237–9.)

(c) Translate the passage Lunch at Montserrat, which has already been used on pp. 21–5 for pronunciation practice.

Appendix I

IRREGULAR VERBS

Only tenses with irregular parts are listed. The conditional tense has the same stem as the future; unless otherwise indicated, the imperfect subjunctive is formed on the stem of the preterite with the endings appropriate to the conjugation. Verbs ending in -endre are conjugated like aprendre, verbs ending in -endre like encendre.

ANAR, to go
Present: vaig, vas, va, anem, aneu, van
Future: aniré, aniràs, anirà, anirem, anireu, aniran
Imperative: vés, vagi, anem, aneu, vagin
Present subjunctive: vagi, vagis, vagí, anem, aneu, vagin

APRENDER, to learn
Gerund: aprenent
Past participle: après
Present: aprenc, aprens, aprèn, aprenem, apreneu, aprenen
Imperfect: aprenia, aprenies, aprenia, apreniem, aprenieu, aprenien
Preterite: aprendí, aprendueres, aprendgué, aprendguérem, aprendguéreu, aprendgueren
Imperative: aprèn, aprendui, aprenduem, apreneu, aprenduin
Present subjunctive: aprendi, aprenduis, aprendgi, aprendguem, aprengeu, aprendguin

ASSEURE, to seat: conjugated like CREURE

BEURE, to drink
Gerund: bevent
Past participle: begut
Present: bec, beus, beu, bevem, beveu, beuen
Imperfect: bevia, bevies, bevia, bevien, bevien, beviem
Preterite: beguí, begueres, beguí, beguí, beguí, beguí, beguerem, beguéren, begueren
Imperative: beu, beguí, beguem, beveu, beguın
Present subjunctive: beguí, beguí, beguí, beguí, beguem, beguem, beguın

**CABRE, to be contained**
Present: cabo, caps, cap, cabem, cabeu, caben
Imperative: cap, càpiga, capiguem, cabeu, càpiguen
Present subjunctive: càpiga, càpigues, càpiga, capiguem, capiguen, càpiguen

**CALDRE, to be necessary**
Gerund: calent
Past participle: calgut
Present: cal, calen
Imperfect: calia, calien
Preterite: calgui, calgueren
Present subjunctive: calgui, calguin

**CAURE, to fall**
Gerund: caient
Past participle: caigut
Present: caic, caus, cau, caiem, caieu, cauen
Imperfect: queia, queies, queia, queiem, queieu, queien
Preterite: caigui, caigueres, caigui, caiguérem, caiguéreu, caigueren
Imperative: cau, caigui, caiguen, caieu, caiguen
Present subjunctive: caigui, caiguis, caigui, caiguem, caiguen, caiguen

**COLLIR, to gather:** conjugated like SORTIR

---

**CONÈIXER, to know**
Gerund: coneixent
Past participle: coneugut
Present: conec, coneixes, coneix, coneixem, coneixe, coneixen
Future: coneixeré, coneixerás, coneixera, coneixerem, coneixeren, coneixeren
Preterite: coneugui, coneugueres, coneugué, coneuguérem, coneuguéreu, coneuguéren
Imperative: coneix, coneugi, coneuguem, coneixe, coneuguin
Present subjunctive: coneugui, coneuguis, coneugui, coneuguem, coneuguen, coneuguin

**CONVÈNÇER, to convince:** conjugated like VÈNCER

**CONVENIR, to be fitting:** conjugated like VENIR except:
Present: convinc, convens, convé, convenim, conveniu, convenen
Imperative: convén, convingui, convinguem, conveniu, convinquin

**CÓRRER, to run**
Gerund: corrent
Past participle: corregut
Present: corro, corres, corre, correm, correu, corren
Future: correré, correrás, correrà, correrem, correreu, correren
Preterite: corregui, corregueres, corregué, correguérem, correguéreu, corregueren
Imperative: corre, corri, corre (correguem), correu, corrín
Present subjunctive: corri, corris, corri, correm (correguem), correu (correguen), corri

**COSIR, to sew**
Present: cuso, cuses, cus, cosim, cosiu, cusen
Imperative: cus, cusi, cosim, cosiu, cusin
Present subjunctive: cusi, cusis, cusi, cosim, cosiu, cusin
COURE, to cook
Gerund: coent
Past participle: cuit
Present: coc, cous, cou, coem, coen, couen
Imperfect: coïa, coies, coïa, coïem, coïen, coïen
Preterite: cogui, cogueres, cogui, coguérem, coguereu, cogueren
Imperfect: cou, cogui, coguem, coeu, coguin
Present subjunctive: cogui, coguis, cogui, coguem, cogueu, coguin

CRÉIXER, to grow
Gerund: creixent
Past participle: crescut
Present: creixo, creixes, creix, creixem, creixeu, creixen
Future: creixeré, creixerás, creixerà, creixerem, creixereu, creixeran
Preterite: cresqui (creixi), cresqueres (creixeres), cresqué (creixé), cresquérem (creixérem), cresquéreu (creixéreu), cresqueren (creixeren)
Imperfect: creix, creixi, creixem, creixeu, creixin
Present subjunctive: creixi, creixis, creixi, creixem, creixeu, creixin

CREURE, to believe
Gerund: creient
Past participle: cregut
Present: crec, creus, creu, creiem, creieu, creuen
Imperfect: creia, creies, creia, creieu, creien
Preterite: cregui, cregueres, cregué, creguérem, creguéreu, cregueren
Imperfect: creu, cregui, creguem, creieu, creguin
Present subjunctive: cregui, creguis, cregui, creguem, cregueu, creguin

DESCRIURE, to describe: conjugated like ESCRIURE

DESFER, to undo: conjugated like FER except:
Present: desfaig, desfàs, desfa, desfem, desfeu, desfan
Imperative: desfés, desfaci, desfem, desfeu, desfacin
Imperfect subjunctive: desfés, desfessis, desfés, desféssim, desfessiu, desfessin

DEURE, to owe, must: conjugated like BEURE

DIR, to say, to tell
Gerund: dient
Past participle: dit
Present: dic, dius, diu, diem, dieu, diuen
Imperfect: deia, deies, deia, dèiem, dèieu, deien
Preterite: digni, digueres, dignu, dignérem, diguereu, digueren
Imperative: digues (digue + pronoun), digui, diguem, diguex, diguin
Present subjunctive: digui, diguis, diguie, diguem, digueu, diguin
Imperfect subjunctive: dignés, diguessis, dignès, diguëssim, diguëssiu, diguessin

DUR, to carry, to take, to wear
Gerund: duent
Past participle: dut
Present: duc, duus (dus), duu (du), duem, dueu, duen
Future: duré, duràs, durà, durem, dureu, duran
Imperfect: duia, duies, duia, dúiem, duieu, duien
Preterite: dugui, dugueres, duguè, duguérem, duguéreu, dugueren
Imperative: duu (du), dugui, duguem, dueu, duguin
Present subjunctive: dugui, duguis, dugui, duguem, dugueu, duguin
Imperfect subjunctive: dugués, duguessis, duguès, duguësséim, duguëssiù, duguessin

EIXIR, to go out
Present: ixo, ixes, ix, eïxim, eïxiu, ixen
Imperative: ix, ixí, eixim, eixiu, ixin
Present subjunctive: ixí, ixis, ixí, eixim, eixiu, ixin

ENCENDRE, to light
Gerund: encendent
Past participle: encès
Present: encenc, encens, encén, encenem, enceneu, encenen
Imperfect: encenia, encenies, encenia, enceniem, enceniéu, enceniéen
Preterite: encengui, encenguieres, encengué, encenguérem, encenguéreu, encenguéuren
Imperative: encén, encengui, encenguem, enceneu, encenguin
Present subjunctive: encengui, encenguís, encenguí, encenguem, encenguéu, encenguín

ENDUR-SE, to take away: conjugated like DUR

ESCRUIRE, to write
Gerund: escrivint
Past participle: escrit
Present: escric, escrís, escrui, escrivim, escriviu, escriuen
Imperfect: escrivia, escrivies, escrivia, escrivíem, escrivieu, escrivien
Preterite*: escrivi, escrivires, escriví, escrivírem, escrivíreu, escrivíren
Imperative: escrui, escrigui, escriguem, escruiu, escruguin
Present subjunctive: escrígui, escriguís, escrigui, escriguem, escrigueu, escriguin

* Note: Common in colloquial usage is the alternative preterite escriguí, escrigueres, escrigué, etc., and the imperfect subjunctive on the same stem escrigués, escriguèssis, escrigués, etc.

ESDEVENIR, to become, to happen: conjugated like CONVENIR

260 Catalan

ÉSSER, SER, to be
Gerund: essent
Past participle: estat
Present: sóc, ets, és, som, sou, són
Future*: seré, serás, será, seren, serau, seran
Imperfect: era, eres, era, érem, éreu, eren
Preterite: fui, fores, fou, fórem, fóreu, foren
Present subjunctive: sigui, sigui, siguï, siguem, siguén, siguin
Imperfect subjunctive: fos, fossís, fos, fòssim, fóssiu, fòssin

* Note: As well as the conditional seria, series, seria, etc., there is the alternative form fóra, fores, fóra, fórem, fóreu, foren.

ESTAR, to be
Present: estic, estás, està, estem, esteu, estan
Preterite: estigui, estiguieres, estigué, estiguérem, estiguéreu, estiguéren
Imperative: estigues, estigui, estiguem, estiguéu, estiguin
Present subjunctive: estigui, estiguis, estigui, estiguem, estiguéu, estiguin

FER, to do, to make
Gerund: fent
Past participle: fet
Present: faig, fas, fa, fem, feu, fan
Future: faré, faràs, farà, farem, fareu, faran
Imperfect: feia, feies, feia, féiem, féieu, feien
Preterite: fui, feres, féu, fèrem, féreu, feren
Imperative: fees, faci, fem, feu, facin
Present subjunctive: faci, facis, faci, fem, feu, facin
Imperfect subjunctive: fees, fessis, feis, fèissim, fèissiu, fessin

FUGIR, to flee
Present: fujo, fuges, fuig, fugim, fugiu, fugen
Imperative: fuig, fugi, fugim, fugiu, fugin
HAVER, to have (auxiliary verb)
Past participle: hagut
Present: he (hagi*), has, ha, hem (havem), heu (haveu), han
Future†: hauré, hauries, haurà, haurem, hauren, hauran
Preterite: haguí, hagueres, hagué, haguérem, haguéreu, hagueren
Present subjunctive: hagi, hagis, hagi, hàgim, hàgiu, hagin
* Note: In expressions of obligation (haver de + infinitive) hagi is preferred to he.
† Note: As well as the conditional hauria, hauries, hauria, etc., there is the alternative form haguera, hagueres, hagueria, haguérem, haguéreu, hagueren.

MOURE, to move
Gerund: movent
Past participle: mogut
Present: moc, mou, mov, movem, moveu, mouen
Imperfect: movia, moves, movia, moviem, movieu, movien
Preterite: mogui, mogueres, moguí, moguérem, moguéreu, mogueren
Imperative: mou, mogui, moguem, moveu, mogul
Present subjunctive: mogui, moguis, mogui, moguem, mogul, mogul

NÉIXER, to be born
Gerund: naixent
Past participle: nascut
Present: neixo, neixes, neix, naixem, naixe, neixen
Future: naixeré, naixeràs, naixerà, naixerem, naixereu, naixeran
Imperfect: naixia, naixies, naixia, naixiem, naixieu, naixien
Preterite: nasqui (naixi), nasqueres (naixeres), nasqué (naixé), nasquérem (naixérem), nasquereu (naixéreu), nasqueren (naixeran)
Imperative: neix, neixi, naixem, naixe, neixin
Present subjunctive: neixi, neixis, neixi, naixem, naixe, neixin

262 Catalan

OBRIR, to open
Past participle: obert
Present: obro, obres, obre, obrim, obriu, obren
Imperative: obre, obri, obrim, obriu, obrin

OBTERIR, to obtain: conjugated like CONVENIR

OMPLIR, to fill: conjugated like OBRIR

PLOURE, to rain: conjugated like MOURE

PODER, to be able, can
Past participle: pogut
Present: puc, pots, pot, podem, podeu, poden
Future: podré, podràs, podrà, podrem, podreu, podran
Preterite: pogui, pogueres, poguí, poguérem, poguéreu, pogueren
Imperative: pugues, pugui, puguem, pugueu, puguin
Present subjunctive: pugui, puguis, pugui, puguem, pugueu, puguin

PRENDRER, to take: conjugated like APRENDER, but without a written accent in the following parts:
Past participle: pres
Present (3rd person singular): pren
Imperative (2nd person singular): pren

REBRE, to receive
Present: rebo, reps, rep, rebem, rebeu, reben
Imperative: rep, rebi, rebem, rebeu, rebin

RECOLLIR, to collect: conjugated like SORTIR

RECONÈIXER, to recognize: conjugated like CONÈIXER
REEIXIR, to succeed: conjugated like EIXIR except:
Present: reixo, reixes, reix, reexim, reexiu, reixen
Imperative: reix, reixi, reexim, reexiu, reixin
Present subjunctive: reixi, reixis, reixi, reexim, reexiu, reixin

RESOLDRE, to resolve
Gerund: resolent
Past participle: resol
Present: resolc, resols, resol, resolem, resoleu, resolen
Imperfect: resolia, resolies, resolia, resoliem, resolieu, resollen
Preterite: resolguí, resolgueres, resolgué, resolguérem, resolguéren, resolgueren
Imperative: resol, resolgui, resolguem, resoleu, resolguin
Present subjunctive: resolguí, resolguis, resolguí, resolguem, resolguen, resolguin

RIURE, to laugh
Gerund: rient
Past participle: rigut
Present: ric, rius, riu, riem, rieu, rjuen
Imperfect: reia, reies, reia, riein, rieiu, reien
Preterite: rigui, riguires, riguié, riguiérem, riguiéren, rigueren
Imperative: riu, rigui, riguem, rieu, riguin
Present subjunctive: rigui, riguis, rigui, riguem, rigueu, riguin

SABER, to know
Present: sé, saps, sap, sabem, sabeu, saben
Future: sabré, sabràs, sabrà, sabrem, sabreu, sabren
Imperfect: sàpiques, sàpiga, sapiquem, sapiquen, sàpiguen
Present subjunctive: sàpiga, sàpiques, sàpiga, sapiquem, sapiquen

SEURE, to sit down, to be seated: conjugated like CREURE

SOMRIURE, to smile: conjugated like RIURE

SORTIR, to go out, to leave
Present: surto, surts, surt, sortim, sortiu, surten
Imperative: surt, surti, sortim, sortiu, surtin
Present subjunctive: surti, surtis, surti, sortim, sortiu, surtin

TENIR, to have
Past participle: tingut
Present: tinc, tens, té, tenim, teniu, tenen
Future: tindré, tindràs, tindrà, tindrem, tindreu, tindran
Preterite: tinguí, tingueres, tingué, tinguérem, tinguéreu, tingueren
Imperative: té (ten, tingues), tinguí, tinguem, teniu (tingueu), tinguin
Present subjunctive: tinguí, tinguís, tinguí, tinguem, tingueu, tinguin
Imperfect subjunctive: tingués, tinguessis, tingués, tinguéssim, tinguéssi, tinguessin

TREURE, to remove, to take out
Gerund: traient
Past participle: tret
Present: trec, treus, treu, trailem, traieu, treuen
Future: traüré, traürès, traürà, traurem, traureu, trauran
Imperfect: treia, treies, treia, tréiem, tréieu, treien
Preterite: tragui, tragueres, tragué, traguérem, traguéreu, tragueren
Imperative: treu, tregui, traguem, traieu, treguin
Present subjunctive: tregui, treguis, tregui, traguem, tragieu, treguin

VALER, to be worth
Past participle: valgut
Present: valc, vals, val, valem, valeu, valen
Future: valdré, valdràs, valdrà, valdrem, valdreu, valdran
Appendix One 265

Preterite: valguí, valgueres, valgué, valguérem, valguéreu,
valgueren
Imperative: val, valguí, valguem, valeu, valguin
Present subjunctive: valguí, valguis, valgui, valguem, valgueu,
valguin

VENCER, to defeat
Past participle: vençut
Present: venço, vences, venç, vencem, venceu, vencen
Imperative: venç, vencí, vencem, venceu, vencin
Present subjunctive: venci, vencis, venci, vencem, venceu,
vencin

VENDRE, to sell: conjugated like PRENDRE except:
Past participle: venut

VENIR, to come
Past participle: vingut
Present: vinc, vêns, ve, venim, veniu, vênen
Future: vindré, vindràs, vindrà, vindrem, vindreu, vindran
Preterite: vingui, vingueres, vingué, vinguérem, vinguéreu,
vingueren
Imperative: vine, vingui, vinguem, veniu, vinguin
Present subjunctive: vinguí, vinguis, vinguí, vinguem, vinguëu,
vinguin
Imperfect subjunctive: vingués, vinguessis, vingués, vinguéssim,
vinguéssiu, vinguessin

VEURE, to see
Gerund: veient
Past participle: vist
Present: veig, veus, veu, veiem, veieu, veuen
Imperfect: veia, veies, veia, vèiem, vèieu, veien
Preterite: viu, veieres (veres), veié (véu), veiérem (vérem),
veiéreu (véreu), veieren (veren)
Imperative: veges (ves), vegi, vegem, vegeu, vegin

266 Catalan

Present subjunctive: vegi, vegis, vegi, vegem, vegeu, vegin
Imperfect subjunctive: veiés, veiessis, veiés, veiéssim, veiéssiu,
veiessin

VIURE, to live
Gerund: vivint
Past participle: viscut
Present: visc, vius, viu, vivim, viviu, viuen
Imperfect: vivia, vivies, vivia, viviem, vivieu, vivien
Preterite: visquí, visqueres, visqué, visquérem, visquéreu,
visqueren
Imperative: viu, visqui, visquem, viviu, visquin
Present subjunctive: visqui, visquis, visqui, visquem, visqueu,
visquin

VOLER, to wish, to want, to like
Past participle: volgut
Present: vull, vols, vol, volem, voleu, volen
Future: voldré, voldràs, voldrà, voldrem, voldreu, voldran
Preterite: volguí, volgueres, volgué, volguérem, volguéreu,
volgueren
Imperative: vulgues, vulgui, vulguem, vulgueu, vulguin
Present subjunctive: vulgui, vulguis, vulgui, vulguem, vulgueu,
vulguin
### Appendix II

**COMBINATIONS OF TWO WEAK OBJECT PRONOUNS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>EN</th>
<th>HI</th>
<th>HO</th>
<th>LES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>ES</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>-se'n</td>
<td>1.</td>
<td>-s'ho</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>-se'n</td>
<td>2.</td>
<td>-s'ho</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>se'n</td>
<td>3.</td>
<td>s'ho</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>se n'</td>
<td>4.</td>
<td>s'ho</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>EM</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>-me'n</td>
<td>1.</td>
<td>-m'hio</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>-me'n</td>
<td>2.</td>
<td>-m'hio</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>me'n</td>
<td>3.</td>
<td>m'hio</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>me n'</td>
<td>4.</td>
<td>m'hio</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>ENS</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>-nos-en</td>
<td>1.</td>
<td>-nos-hio</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>'ns-en</td>
<td>2.</td>
<td>'ns-hio</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>ens en</td>
<td>3.</td>
<td>ens hio</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>ens n'</td>
<td>4.</td>
<td>ens hio</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>ET</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>-te'n</td>
<td>1.</td>
<td>-'t'ho</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>-te'n</td>
<td>2.</td>
<td>-'t'ho</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>te'n</td>
<td>3.</td>
<td>'t'ho</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>te n'</td>
<td>4.</td>
<td>'t'ho</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>US</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>-vos-en</td>
<td>1.</td>
<td>-vos-hio</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>'us-en</td>
<td>2.</td>
<td>'us-hio</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>us en</td>
<td>3.</td>
<td>us hio</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>us n'</td>
<td>4.</td>
<td>us hio</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LI</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>-li'n</td>
<td>1.</td>
<td>-li-hio</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>-li'n</td>
<td>2.</td>
<td>-li-hio</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>li'n</td>
<td>3.</td>
<td>li hio</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>li n'</td>
<td>4.</td>
<td>li hio</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>ELS (indirect object)</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>-los-en</td>
<td>1.</td>
<td>-los-hio</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>'ls-en</td>
<td>2.</td>
<td>'ls-hio</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>els en</td>
<td>3.</td>
<td>els hio</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>els n'</td>
<td>4.</td>
<td>els hio</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The numbers 1–4 in each square of the table refer to the following positions of the pronoun group:

1. after a verb which ends with a consonant or u;
2. after a verb which ends with a vowel other than u;
3. before a verb which begins with a consonant;
4. before a verb which begins with a vowel or h.
### Notes

1. When the verb begins with unstressed `i` or `u` (or `hi`, `hu`) the reinforced form `la` is preferred to the elided `l`.
2. After the first person plural of the imperative, `-nos-` becomes `s-` in colloquial speech (`anem`s-en`).
3. Before the verb (positions 3 and 4) vos sometimes replaces us. After the second person plural of the imperative, `-vos-` becomes `s-` in colloquial speech (`aneu`s-en`).
4. The colloquial `l`hi for this combination should not be imitated.
5. The combinations of dative `LI` with the direct object pronouns `LES`, `LA`, `ELS`, `EL` are usually replaced by combinations of these direct object pronouns with `HI`. The substitution of `-n`hi, `n`hi for `-l`in, `l`in should not be imitated.
### Continental and Countries

The proper name is given first, followed by the corresponding adjective. The English name is given only where it might not be recognized.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Continent (language)</th>
<th>Language (language)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Europa (Europe)</td>
<td>Gal·les (Wales)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>èsl (Spain)</td>
<td>(Gal·lies -esa)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Àustria (Austria)</td>
<td>la Gran Bretanya</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Austria)</td>
<td>(britànica -a)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Austria</td>
<td>Grècia (grec grega)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Austria)</td>
<td>Holanda (holandès -esa)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Austria</td>
<td>Hongria (hongarès -esa)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Austria)</td>
<td>Irlanda (irlandès -esa)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Austria</td>
<td>Islàndia [Iceland]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Austria)</td>
<td>(islandès -esa)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bèlgica (Belgium)</td>
<td>Itàlia (italià -ana)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Belgium)</td>
<td>Iugoslàvia (iugoslav -ava)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bélgica</td>
<td>Luxemburg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Bélgica)</td>
<td>(luxemburguès -esa)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bélgica</td>
<td>Mallorca (mallorquí -ina)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Bélgica)</td>
<td>Menorca (menorquí -ina)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bélgica</td>
<td>Noruega (noruec -ega)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bélgica</td>
<td>Polònia (polonès -esa)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bélgica</td>
<td>Portugal (portuguès -esa)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bélgica</td>
<td>el Regne Unit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Bélgica)</td>
<td>[United Kingdom]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bélgica</td>
<td>Romania (romanès -esa)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bélgica</td>
<td>Rússia (rus russa)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bélgica</td>
<td>África (afrià -ana)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Bélgica)</td>
<td>Algèria (algerià -ana)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bélgica</td>
<td>el Sud d'Àfrica</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Bélgica)</td>
<td>Egipte (egipc -ipcia)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bélgica</td>
<td>Líbia (libi lìbia)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Bélgica)</td>
<td>el Marroc (marroquí -ina)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bélgica</td>
<td>Ìndia (indi ìndia)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Bélgica)</td>
<td>el Japó (japonès -esa)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bélgica</td>
<td>Jordània (jordanès -esa)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Bélgica)</td>
<td>Àsia (asíà -a)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bélgica</td>
<td>les Illes Filipines (filipi -ina)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Bélgica)</td>
<td>Pèrsia (persa)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bélgica</td>
<td>l'Índia (indi India)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Bélgica)</td>
<td>Siria (sirià -ana)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bélgica</td>
<td>Israel (israelita, israelí -ina)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Bélgica)</td>
<td>Turquia (turquí -ina)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bélgica</td>
<td>el Japó (japonès -esa)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Bélgica)</td>
<td>la Xina (xinès -esa)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bélgica</td>
<td>Jordània (jordanès -esa)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Bélgica)</td>
<td>Xipre [Cyprus] (xiprà -ana)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Principal towns in the Catalan-speaking regions

(Note that some of these names come into English through their castilialized forms.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Catalan</th>
<th>Castilian</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Alacant [Alicante]</td>
<td>Alacantí</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>l’Alguer [Alghero, Sardinia]</td>
<td>Alguères</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Andorra (Andorra -ana)</td>
<td>Andorrà</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arbúcies</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arenys de Mar</td>
<td>Arenys</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Badalona</td>
<td>Badallona</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Banyoles</td>
<td>Banyoles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Barcelona (Barcelona -ina)</td>
<td>Barcelona</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Benicarló</td>
<td>Benicarló</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Benidorm</td>
<td>Benidorm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Berga (Bergà -ana)</td>
<td>Bergà</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>La Bisbal d’Empordà</td>
<td>Bisbal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cadaqués</td>
<td>Cadaqués</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Calella</td>
<td>Calella</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Camprodon</td>
<td>Camprodon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Castelló de la Plana</td>
<td>Castelló</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cervera</td>
<td>Cervera</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ciutadella</td>
<td>Ciutadella</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Elx [Elche]</td>
<td>Elx</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L’Escala</td>
<td>L’Escala</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figueres</td>
<td>Figueres</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Girona (Gironí -ina)</td>
<td>Gironí</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Granollers</td>
<td>Granollers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Igualada</td>
<td>Igualada</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lleida [Lérida]</td>
<td>Lleida</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(lleidatà -ana)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lloret de Mar</td>
<td>Lloret de Mar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malgrat</td>
<td>Malgrat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manresa</td>
<td>Manresa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maó</td>
<td>Maó</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Martorell</td>
<td>Martorell</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mataró</td>
<td>Mataró</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Olot (Olotí -ina)</td>
<td>Olot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Palafrugell</td>
<td>Palafrugell</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Palamós</td>
<td>Palamós</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Palma de Mallorca [also] Ciutat de Mallorca</td>
<td>Palma de Mallorca</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perpinyà (Perpinyà -es)</td>
<td>Perpinyà</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Puigcerdà</td>
<td>Puigcerdà</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reus (Reusenc -a)</td>
<td>Reus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ripoll</td>
<td>Ripoll</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Roses</td>
<td>Roses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sabadell</td>
<td>Sabadell</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sant Celoni</td>
<td>Sant Celoni</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sant Feliu de Guíxols</td>
<td>Sant Feliu de Guíxols</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sant Hilari Sacalm</td>
<td>Sant Hilari Sacalm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sant Joan de les Abadesses</td>
<td>Sant Joan de les Abadesses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>la Seu d’Urgell</td>
<td>la Seu d’Urgell</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sitges</td>
<td>Sitges</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tarragona (Tarragoní -ina)</td>
<td>Tarragona</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Terrassa</td>
<td>Terrassa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tortosa (Tortós -ina)</td>
<td>Tortosa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>València (Valencià -ana)</td>
<td>València</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vic (Vigatà -ana)</td>
<td>Vic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vilafranca del Penedès</td>
<td>Vilafranca del Penedès</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vilanova i la Geltrú</td>
<td>Vilanova i la Geltrú</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vinaròs</td>
<td>Vinaròs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Xàtiva [Játiva]</td>
<td>Xàtiva</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

Oceanía (oceànica -a)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Austràlia (australià -ana)</th>
<th>Nova Zelanda (neo-zelandès -esa)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ais de Provença</td>
<td>L’Hàia [The Hague]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alexandria (alexandrí -ina)</td>
<td>L’Havana (havà -ana)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alger (algerí -ina)</td>
<td>Hèlsinki</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amsterdam</td>
<td>Lisboa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aquisgrà [Aachen, Aix-la-Chapelle]</td>
<td>Londres (londinenc -a)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Asis</td>
<td>Madrid (madrileny -a)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Atenes (atenès -esa)</td>
<td>Magúncia [Maentz]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Avinyó</td>
<td>Marsella (marsellès -esa)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Basilea [Basle]</td>
<td>Milà</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bayona</td>
<td>Montpeller</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Berlin</td>
<td>Moscou (moscovita)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Berna</td>
<td>Munic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Betlem [Bethlehem]</td>
<td>Nàpols (napolità -ana)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bolònia</td>
<td>Narbona</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bordeus [Bordeaux]</td>
<td>Niça</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brusel·les</td>
<td>Nova York</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cadis</td>
<td>Pekín (pekinès -esa)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>El Caire</td>
<td>Praga</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carcassona</td>
<td>Roma (romà -ana)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colònia</td>
<td>Saragossa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Constantinoble</td>
<td>Segòvia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Copenhague</td>
<td>Tolosa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Còrdova</td>
<td>Tòquio</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>La Corunya</td>
<td>Torí [Turin]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Edimburg</td>
<td>Troia (troíà -ana)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Estocolm</td>
<td>Varsòvia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Florència (florentí -ina)</td>
<td>Venècia (venecià -ana)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gènova (genovès -esa)</td>
<td>Viena (viènes -esa)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ginebra [Geneva]</td>
<td>Xerès [Jerez]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ginebri -ina)</td>
<td>Xicagò or Chicago</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Personal names

(Common abbreviations or familiar forms are given in parentheses.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adrià</th>
<th>Ferran</th>
<th>Lluc</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Agustí</td>
<td>Fidel</td>
<td>Lluís</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Albert</td>
<td>Francesc</td>
<td>Manel, Manuel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alexandre</td>
<td>Frederic</td>
<td>Marc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alfons</td>
<td>Gil</td>
<td>Martí</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amadeu</td>
<td>Guerau</td>
<td>Mateu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Andreu</td>
<td>Guifre, Guifré</td>
<td>Maurici</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antoni (Toni)</td>
<td>Guillem</td>
<td>Miquel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Artur</td>
<td>Gustau</td>
<td>Narcís</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bernat</td>
<td>Ignasi</td>
<td>Nicolau</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blai</td>
<td>Isidre</td>
<td>Pau</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carles</td>
<td>Jacint</td>
<td>Pere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Claudi</td>
<td>Jacob</td>
<td>Rafel, Rafael</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cristòfol, Cristòfor</td>
<td>Jaume (Jaumet)</td>
<td>Ramon, Raimon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Daniel</td>
<td>Joan (Joanet)</td>
<td>Ricard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>David</td>
<td>Joaquim (Quim, Quimet)</td>
<td>Roger</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Emili</td>
<td></td>
<td>Samuel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enric</td>
<td>Jordi</td>
<td>Terenci</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ernest</td>
<td>Josep (Pep)</td>
<td>Tomàs (Tomaset)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Esteve</td>
<td>Josep-Maria</td>
<td>Vicenç, Vicent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eugeni</td>
<td>Lleonard</td>
<td>Victor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Felip</td>
<td>Llorenç</td>
<td>Xavier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adela</td>
<td>Bàrbara</td>
<td>Clàudia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Agnès</td>
<td>Berta</td>
<td>Concepció</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alícia</td>
<td>Blanca</td>
<td>Constança</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amàlia</td>
<td>Brígida</td>
<td>Cristina</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Andrea</td>
<td>Carlota</td>
<td>Dolors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Àngela, Angelina</td>
<td>Carme</td>
<td>Dorotea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Àngels</td>
<td>Caterina</td>
<td>Elena, Helena</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anna</td>
<td>Cèlia</td>
<td>Elvira</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antònia</td>
<td>Clara</td>
<td>Emília</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Catalan

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Josepa</th>
<th>Judit</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Laura</td>
<td>Llúcia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lurdes</td>
<td>Maria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mercè</td>
<td>Montserrat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neus</td>
<td>(Montse)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Núria (Nuri)</td>
<td>Paula</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paulina</td>
<td>Pilar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Raquel</td>
<td>Rebeca</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rita</td>
<td>Rosa (Roseta)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sara</td>
<td>Susanna</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Teresa</td>
<td>Úrsula</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vera</td>
<td>Verònica</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Victòria</td>
<td>Virginia</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Appendix IV

SUGGESTIONS FOR FURTHER READING AND STUDY

Items marked with an asterisk are in Castilian (Spanish). The place of publication is Barcelona, unless otherwise indicated. Most of the publications listed below are available from The Dolphin Book Company Ltd., Tredwr, Llangranog, Llandyssul, Dyfed, SA44 6BA, or from Messrs Grant and Cutler Ltd., 11 Buckingham Street, Strand, London WC2N 6DQ.

1. Grammars

Students should not be misled by the enticing sound of *El catalán en dos semanas* (Arimany, 1963). This and E. Kucera, *Aprenda catalán conmigo* (Libro del Turista, 1957), also available in French and German, scarcely go beyond the level of the phrase-book. A more serious approach to a ‘crash course’ is that provided by B. Montsià in *El català en vint liçons* (Barcino, 1955), while C. A. Jordana, *El català i el castellà comparats* (Barcino, 1968) will be helpful to those who come to the study of Catalan with a previous knowledge of Castilian. The brief *Gramàtica essencial de la llengua catalana* (Bruguera, 1967) by Albert Jané is a useful introductory survey of the grammar.

Joan Gili’s *Introductory Catalan Grammar* (4th ed., Dolphin, Oxford, 1974), containing an introduction to the pronunciation and an outline of the grammar, the only one available in English until now, has proved its usefulness in the twenty years since its first publication. It does not have exercises, but the text is illustrated with examples and the final section contains an anthology of selections from Catalan authors.

The work of Pompeu Fabra (1868–1948) is the cornerstone of the modern Catalan language. The *Gramàtica catalana* (5th ed., Teide, 1969) is the latest and most readily available edition of Fabra’s authoritative work. The *Introducció a la gramàtica catalana* (Edicions 62, 1968) is much more schematic. The collected *Converses filològiques* (2 vols., Barcino, 1954–6) cover in a clear and precise way many crucial points of morphology and syntax; it is a work for browsing through and, like the previous item, for reference rather than for systematic study.

A. M. Badia Margarit’s *Gramàtica catalana* (2 vols., Gredos, Madrid, 1962) supplements the work of Fabra with its detailed and up-to-date coverage of grammar and usage. It contains a thorough range of examples, with Castilian translations.

J. Llobera i Ramon, *Pràcticas de catalán bàsico* (Teide, 1969) provides, in addition to the results of the author’s researches into basic Catalan vocabulary and word frequency (*El català bàsic*, Teide, 1968), a rudimentary grammatical survey, simple exercises and conversational models. A key to the exercises is available.


Much valuable new material for learning Catalan has appeared since 1975 due to the altered circumstances of the language. Particularly recommended is the cassette course *Paral·lel* (Edi 6, 1982) by J. Mas, J. Melcion, and others, providing effective initiation in the spoken language.

Those who are interested to study the historical development of Catalan can consult A. M. Badia Margarit, *Gramàtica històrica catalana* (Noguer, 1951) and F. de B. Moll, *Gramàtica històrica catalana* (Gredos, Madrid, 1952). An account in English is provided by W. J. Entwistle in *The Spanish Language together with Portuguese, Catalan and Basque* (Faber, London, 1936).


2. Dictionaries

The standard reference dictionaries of Catalan are Pompeu Fabra’s *Diccionari general de la llengua catalana* (15th ed., Edhasa, 1981) – abridged version, *Diccionari manual* (Edhasa, 1983) – and the recent *Diccionari de la llengua catalana* (Enciclopèdia Catalana, 1983). Of limited usefulness for translation is the *Nou diccionari anglès–català, català–anglès* (Pòrtic, 1981) by J. Colomer. The more comprehensive *Diccionari anglès–català* by S. Oliva and A. Buxton was published in 1983 by the Fundació Enciclopèdia Catalana: with the appearance of the corresponding Catalan-English part, students will have at their disposal a complete and reliable tool for translation from and into Catalan. Of the various Castilian-Catalan/Catalan-Castilian dictionaries available, those by J. Miracle (Edhasa, 1969) and F. de B. Moll (Moll, Mallorca, 1978) can be recommended. The *Vocabulari castellà–català* (Barcino, 1961) by E. Artells is concise and economical because it concentrates on words which are not identical in the two languages. Finally, the dictionaries of synonyms and antonyms by Pey Estrany (Teide, 1972) and Franquesa (Pòrtic, 1971) are invaluable sources of information and vocabulary.

3. Works of general interest


J. B. Trend’s essay ‘The Catalan Contribution’ in *A Picture of Modern Spain* (Constable, London, 1921), although by now inevitably dated in some respects, is still eminently readable. The same is true of the early part of A. E. Peers’s history, *Catalonia Infelix* (Methuen, London, 1937), but the later chapters invite criticism and serious reappraisal. J. Trueta, *The Spirit of Catalonia* (Oxford...
University Press, Oxford, 1946), which covers mainly the medieval and Renaissance periods, studies Catalan contributions to European civilization. George Orwell’s *Homage to Catalonia* (Secker & Warburg, London, 1959; also in Penguin Books) is not what it sounds, but is nonetheless a moving account of the author’s experiences in the Spanish Civil War.


A. M. Badia i Margarit, *Llengua i cultura als Països Catalans* (Edicions 62, 1964) gives the reflections of a linguist on aspects of Catalan in the modern period and on some central problems. One of the most complex and pressing of these problems, the question of Catalan–Castilian bilingualism, is the subject of F. Vallverdú’s *Ensayos sobre el bilingüismo* (Ariel, 1972). The social background and consequences of the migration of Castilian-speakers into the Catalan regions are sympathetically investigated in F. Candel’s highly successful *Els altres catalans* (Edicions 62, 1964). In another region, Joan Fuster’s *Nosaltres, els valencians* (Edicions 62, 1962) energetically expounds the Valencian point of view.

4. Catalan literature

The best introduction to Catalan literature for the English reader is that provided by Arthur Terry in *A Literary History of Spain: Catalan Literature* (Benn-Barnes & Noble, London–New York, 1972). Outstanding figures and their achievements are presented against the background of the main lines of development in the literature from the earliest times to the present. Joan Gili’s *Introductory Catalan Grammar* (see p. 277) gives a brief historical outline of the language and literature as preface to a selection of prose and verse from major authors of all periods. P. Russell-Gebbett, *Medieval Catalan Linguistic Texts* (Dolphin, Oxford, 1965) presents an anthology of texts from the older literature for the study of the development of the language.

E. Artells and J. Triadú, in *Lectures escolloses* (3 vols., Barcino, 1962–9), provide a useful and attractive anthology of extracts from modern Catalan prose-writers. A biographical and critical sketch introduces each passage, and there are copious notes on points of linguistic and stylistic interest. *Abans de l'alba*, a novel by Ferran de Pol, has recently been published (Spes, 1972) with similar annotation, edited by A. Jané.

An encouraging development in recent years has been the increasing interest in Catalan literature, expressed in the growing number of translations and bilingual editions. *The Pigeon Girl* (Deutsch, London, 1967) is a translation of Mercè Rodoreda’s novel, *La Plaça del Diamant* (Club Editor), one of the most impressive achievements of Catalan literature in the post-war period. The series—*La Senda*, published by Poligrafa of Barcelona, offers a whole range of prose works by modern authors in editions which have a Castilian translation facing the Catalan original. *Tirant lo Blanc*, a most entertaining and influential novel of chivalry from fifteenth-century Valencia, has appeared in a modern Castilian translation (2 vols., Alianza, Madrid, 1969).

Catalan poetry has been even better served than the novel. The Dolphin Book Company has published anthologies of poems by Josep Carner and Carles Riba (Dolphin, 1962 and 1970) with English versions by Pearse Hutchinson and Joan Gili respectively. *Ocho siglos de
Key to the Exercises

EXERCISE 1

(a) l’obra; l’home; una noia; la universitat; un edifici; un llibre; la dona; un no i una dona; sóc professor; ets l’estudiant; és una casa.

(b) les ampolles; les mares; (unes) rates; els metges; les ties; els dentistes; som estudiants; són (unes) persones; sou nois; els animals; (uns) pares i (uns) oncles; les vides i les obres.

(c) 1. Three and five are eight; four and six are ten. 2. Are you (a) Catalan? — Yes, sir; I am (a) Catalan. 3. What is that? — This is a bottle. 4. Clara is the mother and Peter is the father. 5. Three men and two women; seven boys and eight girls. 6. Hello! Good morning, Mr. Charles. Goodbye, Mrs. Oliver. 7. Aunt Mary is a teacher and Uncle Edward is a doctor. 8. Who are you? Are you the teachers? — No, madam; we are students. 9. Cats and rats are animals. 10. Is that all, sir? — Yes, boy; that is all. Thank you; goodbye.

EXERCISE 2

(a) una botiga; (el) dissabte; l’aigua; un pis; un gos suís; el català i l’anglès; la força; un braç; la mà; tinc el llapis; la plaça; una classe de francès.

(b) les habitacions; els temps; els dijous i els diumenges; els nassos; (dos) mesos; són disc(o)s; tenen (dues) filles; són els senyors Bofill; som els pares d’ells; no teniu fred?; els oncles tenen por; vins dels països catalans.

(c) 1. Is there no fish nor chicken on today’s menu? 2. Martha and John are friends of one of the French master’s children. 3. On Mondays I am always at home, but on Tuesdays I am in the office or at the shop in Spain Square. 4. Today is Saturday and we have no classes. 5. The hospital is a building of eleven or twelve storeys. 6. Where are Mr. and Mrs. Vidal? — They are at the table and they are hungry. 7. Whose are the pencils and the pens? — Do they not belong to the students? 8. Yes, sir; there is a bus-stop on the corner. 9. Thank you for the records, Uncle, and for the flowers. 10. The Porters have a son of sixteen (years) and a daughter of eighteen months.

(d) 1. Hi ha un grup de persones a la parada de l’autobús. 2. On són els llapis i els papers de les noies? — No són a la classe? 3. L’hotel de la plaça té almenys vint habitacions i tretze o catorze cambres de bany. 4. Tens raó, Marta; les bicicletes són dels amics d’en Pere. 5. Els homes i les dones tenen dos braços i dues mans. 6. A la ciutat hi ha places, cases de tres o quatre pisos, botigues, hospitals, cafès, escoles i hotels. 7. Si teniu set hi ha aigua o vi aquí; si teniu gana hi ha pa, pol·laster i taronges. 8. Els senyors Roig tenen cinc fills; dues noies i tres nois. 9. Quantes milles hi ha d’aquí a València? 10. Els divendres les noies són sempre a l’escola, però els dissabtes i els diumenges no hi ha classe.

EXERCISE 3

(a) Check carefully the conjugation of the verbs listed using the models given in the lesson and paying special attention to any spelling changes.

(b) 1. Today we stop work, close the shop and begin the holidays. 2. When they are cold they always wear an overcoat. 3. Are you travelling by train, by aeroplane or by car? 4. Who are you talking about, the father or the son? 5. Why don’t you fetch the cases now? — Because I am tired. 6. The boys are playing in the street because they have no work. 7. What are you eating? — I am eating chicken with bread and tomato (pa amb tomàquet is bread rubbed with oil and tomato, used for sandwiches). There are no potatoes. 8. Henry carries Teresa’s case to the station. She, meanwhile, goes to pay for the tickets and buys some magazines. 9. When I hear the train I run to the station. If we miss the train we look for the bus-stop. 10. On Saturdays we always go with the Ferrers to eat at the restaurant in Casanova Street.

(c) 1. De què parlen vostès ara, senyors? 2. No perdem el camí perquè sempre viatgem amb amics. 3. Tanquen la porta ara perquè senten fred. 4. (A) on va vostè? — Vaig al cine(ма) amb una amiga. 5. Per què no anem a l’estació amb el cotxe d’en Pere? 6. Quan els homes pleguen busquen un cafè, perquè sempre tenen set. 7. El professor parla amb els estudiants de la història de Catalunya. 8. Què mengen vostès amb les patates? — Carn i tomàquets. 9. Els nois corren pel carrer perquè tenen por de perdre el tren. 10. El senyor Prat plega el diari i comença a parlar a la dona de la botiga. 11. Els pares porten les maletes al tren i els fills corren a pagar els bitllets i a comprar (unes) revistes. 12. Dóna carn als gossos, però els gats mengen peix.
EXERCISE 4

(a) Use the models given in the lesson to check carefully the conjugation of the verbs listed.

(b) 1. The river divides the city into two parts. 2. Tony’s father is not a shop assistant; he is a bank clerk, isn’t he? — Yes, I think so. You are right. 3. The audience laughs and applauds a lot when one of the actors runs away from a dog and falls from the window. 4. Mary sews a button on father’s overcoat, and then puts the needle and thread back in the drawer. 5. To whom do we owe the money for the tickets? 6. Why don’t you write a letter in Catalan to our/your (lit. the) friends in Barcelona? — Very well; I’ll fetch some paper now. 7. When they close the windows Mr. Miralles opens the door and goes out into the street. (Mr.) Prat and (Mr.) Oliva are hot as well, and they go out with the (ir) companion. 8. The two friends sit on a bench in the square. John opens the newspaper and begins to read; Mary watches the cars. 9. We go into the café and there we hear again the sound (lit. voice) of the radio. 10. I repeat that everything depends on what John says. If he writes (and says) ‘Yes’, then I too am coming to the theatre. 11. Martha, why are you carrying the books in your hand? — (It’s) because they don’t fit in the handbag. 12. Joseph speaks Spanish very well, but he doesn’t understand a word of French.

(c) 1. Veig que la maleta no cap al cotxe. 2. Vostè creu que bevem molt? 3. Venen dolços i programes a l’entrada del teatre, no? 4. Veieu la casa de cinc pisos? Doncs crec que els pares de la Marta viuen allà. 5. L’empleat treu una bossa del caixa i llavors comença a repartir els diners. 6. Vostè parlen molt bé el català, oï? Entenen també el francès? 7. Seguim els homes pels carrers. Tornen a entrar al banc. Nosaltres mirem per la finestra. 8. Els actors somriuen quan el públic aplaudeix la peça. 9. Quan els companys surten de missa els diumenges sempre van al cine. 10. Sí no venen les noies és que tenen feina a casa. 11. Els viatgers ara són a Barcelona. Escriviu en una carta que tornen d’allí a Tarragona divendres o dissabte. 12. El professor obre el llibre i comença la classe amb les paraules, ‘Bé, nois.’

EXERCISE 5

(a) 1. Good afternoon. What are you doing here? What is happening? Aren’t you going to school today? 2. The trousers and shoes are quite new, but the shirt and the tie are old. 3. You are very hot, aren’t you? Why don’t you take a beer or a glass of cool water? 4. The young men, all eyes, watch Rosa when she goes out shopping. Always smart, she is wearing today a very short silk skirt with blue and yellow stripes, and a wide belt of green leather. 5. Many thanks/thank you very much for the sandwiches and (for) the cup of tea. You are very kind, miss. 6. What is on at the cinema today? — Well, I think it is at the Central that they are showing a new work by Buñuel and a short French film. Both are evidently very good. 7. Ladies and gentlemen, on the right-hand side you (can) see Spain Square and on your left the castle of Montjuïc. 8. Sunday afternoons is when we send the little ones out to play with the neighbours’ children. 9. Every year Miss Coromines spends a fortnight’s (fifteen days’) holiday in the neighbouring country, at the home of an elder brother. 10. Yes, my friend (lit. boy), you are quite right; now I (can) see that the girl with blue eyes and long, black hair is Joseph’s little (or younger) sister. 11. Núria is a very bright and intelligent young girl, and she learns all the lesson in the twinkling of an eye. 12. Well, yes, of course, the two machines are very similar. The fact is that one is a Japanese imitation of the other.
(b) 1. Fan portar les cadires i la petita taula rodona a la finestra, on hi ha tots els altres mobles vells. 2. Quan escrit amb la mà esquerra no faig les ratlles dretes. 3. Passen per uns carrers estrets i surten llavors a la plaça ampla i buida. 4. Avui tenim tota la tarda lliure i anem a veure què fan al Cinema Pelayo. 5. La sala a mà dreta de l'entress és plena de quadres dolents i de mobles lletjos. 6. Això, és clar, depèn de moltes altres coses. 7. En Josep i l'Enric, els dos germans, surten amb dues senyoretes molt amables de la universitat. 8. La vida és molt tranquil·la ací quan els petits són al col·legi. 9. Fan seure els dos jovis amb el president, l'un a l'esquerra i l'altre a la dreta d'ell. 10. Quan reben els veïns a casa, els diumenges, bevem tasses de te calent i mengem sandvitxos. Sempre passem una tarda molt agradable. 11. Hi ha vi negre i blanc. Tots dos són molt bons. Vostè pren un got del negre? Molt bé, senyora. 12. Crec que el senyor prim de la camisa groga i pantalons verds dóna lliçons de pintura al Col·legi Central. També ven quadres i fa molts diners.

EXERCISE 6

(a) 1. Behind the cathedral there was a large public garden where the children of the district often used to play at football and climb the trees. 2. While you were going up in the lift the neighbours were coming down by the stairs. 3. I thought that Philip was from Figueras, but the others said (that he was) not, that he was from Gerona. 4. The travellers had just climbed on to the aeroplane one after the other. 5. Last year, when we were working far from home, we sometimes used to have lunch at Henry’s, a little restaurant near the site. 6. The girls were packing the cases while the boys were taking the food down to the car. 7. The day before yesterday was Sunday and Barcelona were playing at home against Valencia. At lunch-time everyone was talking about the great match. 8. Every night, before supper, the men would go out for a little stroll round the district where they lived. 9. What were you doing yesterday morning while Mother was lighting the fire and preparing breakfast? — Well, we were cleaning the dining room; we were getting rid of the dust from the furniture and the walls. 10. Previously the city streets were clean and decent, but not any longer. Don’t you see that they are all dirty, full of dust, dry leaves and rubbish? 11. After the meal, when a waiter was making coffee, the young people were laughing at Charles’s jokes. 12. We had just received a piece of bad news.

(b) 1. Jo no creia la notícia que en Pere ja no treballava a cals Vilar. 2. Quan érem jovis portàvem una vida molt feliç. 3. Acaben de pujar vostès amb l'ascensor o per l'escala? 4. El vell oncle Ramon deia que ja no beivia ni cafè ni conyac després dels àpats. 5. El menjador del restaurant era decent i net, però la cuina on preparaven els menjars era molt bruta. 6. Les fulles ja eren seques i grogues i queien dels arbres. 7. Darrera la universitat hi havia un petit cafè on els estudiants bevien cervesa a l'hora de dinar, i on anaven sovint a jugar a cartes abans de les classes. 8. Ahir al matí, mentre tots vosaltres dormíeu, la mare netejava la casa, treia la pols de les paret i baixava les escombraries al carrer. 9. Els viatgers acabaven d'arribar de Girona i buscaven un bon hotel vora la catedral. 10. Quan treballava al banc esmorzava a casa cada matí. Dinava a can Martorell i llavors normalment berenava a la feina, abans de tornar a casa cada nit a l'hora de sopar. 11. Seguïem un camí que conduïa de la costa al vell castell. 12. De vegades els nois del barri pujaven als arbres i miraven d'allí el partit de futbol.
EXERCISE 7

(a) 1. If your hands are clean, my son, you can begin to serve the soup now. 2. The guide wants to take the tourists to a restaurant where they serve cheap meals at all hours. 3. As your grandfather used to say, ‘Where there’s a will there’s a way’ (lit. to want to is to be able); in other words, with a will everything is possible. 4. I find that your idea of helping Thomas to write his reply is a very good one. 5. I can’t turn the key in the lock and I don’t want to knock at the door, for fear of waking my wife. I wonder if it is possible to get in through a window? 6. He wanted to telephone the news to his cousins, but he couldn’t find their number in the directory. 7. As far as I could understand, the lawyer wanted to put a few questions to his clients, but they either would not or could not answer. 8. Ramon and a girl friend of his were spending a few days’ holiday in Valencia, at the home of her grandmother. 9. Thank you very much, Mrs. Pol. We are all grateful, as usual, for your help. 10. The carpenter used to make pretty and inexpensive furniture. He always had a lot of items on sale at his workshop.
11. I have a blue scarf and a green one. They are both pretty, aren’t they? 12. John was going on his motor-cycle and I was going on mine to meet our workmates in a bar near the station.

(b) 1. Ma mare i ton avi eren cosins. 2. Com dieu en la vostra llengua ‘Saragossa és una ciutat molt bonica’? 3. Uns clients nostres acaben d’arribar de Palma, i això vol dir que no podem venir avui a trobar els altres a can Soldevila. 4. Si vostès volen, podem anar tots a veure l’exposició divendres a la tarda. 5. I ara vull parlar de d’altres coses, i fer unes quantes preguntas als senyors. A veure... 6. Segons la nostra guia aquí hi ha tres restaurants bons, dos d’econòmics i un de molt car. 7. Tu sempre contestaves (a) les preguntas de l’àvia, però ella no volia contestar (or no contestava) (a) les teves. 8. Els turistes pregunten a llur guia on poden trobar un telèfon públic. 9. Porto el meu passaport a la butxaca. On tens el teu? La Teresa sempre perd el seu. 10. Sentíem la seva veu, però no enteníem què deia ni què volia. 11. Els alumnes sempre agraien molt l’ajuda dels (seus) mestres. 12. Com que érem molts a taula, en Tomàs ajudava la seva germana a servir el menjar.

EXERCISE 8

(a) 1. It was already late when you said goodbye and ran to catch the underground. 2. Do you want to wear the cotton blouse or the woollen one? 3. The foreigners wanted to stop and visit the village church, and they parked their car in the shade, beneath the trees in the middle of the square. 4. I could not hide my surprise when I saw who was coming in behind Paul. 5. He took a knife and divided the loaf into five pieces. 6. It was the last day of the year and the whole work-force, except for the bricklayers, finished work early. 7. The day after my visit was Henry’s day off and so we were able to return to the city together. 8. After walking (for) two hours we reached (lit. arrived as far as) the spring. But it was still a good way from there to the village.
9. While he was waiting for his sister-in-law, in the bar on the corner, James had a ham sandwich and afterwards a glass of gin with ice and lemon. 10. The little girl took hold of her uncle’s stick by the middle and found that in this way she could walk a little. 11. Two or three times during the holidays my sister and Michael’s spent the day out of town together. 12. Then in came our neighbour, Mr. Pujol, sat down in front of us and took a small packet from his pocket.

(b) 1. El paquet va arribar la setmana passada mentre encara érem fora. 2. Vaig tancar la porta del garatge i
llavors vaig amagar les claus sota (d’)una pedra. 3. Si agafes la copa així, no pot caure. 4. Els estrangers van parar i van aparcar el cotxe al mig de la plaça, a l’ombra dels arbres vora la font. 5. Vam plegar d’hora i vam caminar junts fins a la cantonada on vaig agafar el metro. 6. Mentre esperaven els seus cosins un dels nois va fer un petit ocell d’un tros de paper. 7. Va dir que amb un bon bastó i sabates fortes podia caminar tot el dia. 8. Van partir del seu poble dimecres, van passar la nit a Madrid, i van arribar a Londres a l’endèmà, una mica abans de l’hora de sopar. 9. Normalment lleixxo tota la premsa barcelonina, però no vaig veure _La Vanguardia_ d’ahir ni la d’abans-d’ahir. 10. L’endèmà de la festa el meu cunyat va rebre una visita de la policia. 11. El paleta va veure que darrera seu pujava l’escala el fuster amb el martell a la mà. 12. Si tenies festa diumenge, per què no vares venir al partit? Va ser una bona sorpresa quan varen guanyar els nostres. 13. La brusa de cotó era molt bonica, però volia portar la de llana. 14. Durant els últims anys de la seva vida el rei va passar molt de temps fora del país. 15. L’última vegada que vaig veure en Miquel va ésser durant les vacances.

**Exercise 9**

(a) 1. If you come at the last minute as usual, you will have to queue. 2. Aren’t the others here yet? — No; they must be arriving on the last train. 3. The newspapers were saying that the government would soon be imposing a new tax on the wealthy families in the country. 4. If the coal isn’t dry it will make a lot of smoke and then you will not be able to put the pot on the fire. 5. There can be no rule without exceptions. From now on I do not wish to discuss this again. 6. When you leave here it will already be very late and there will not be a soul about in the streets. 7. Without taxes a packet of Virginia tobacco would cost only nine or ten pesetas, and black tobacco would perhaps not cost as much as twenty cents (½ peseta) for a large packet. 8. Now you will see how the little girl can walk. It’s very funny; she takes one step forwards and two backwards. 9. The day after tomorrow Dr. Roig i Fontanals will speak to our society on modern Catalan history. 10. You can trust Michael. He will be as good as two men; he is strong, intelligent and very hard-working. I believe he would be capable of working eight hours on the trot without a rest. 11. You ought to have a nice (cup of) milk coffee. That will certainly take away your sleepiness. 12. There is no problem. I’ll do your job if you want to go to the beach tomorrow with your family.

(b) 1. La noia dels cabells rossos deu ser la cosina d’en Pere. 2. D’ara endavant tots haureu de fumar tabac negre, amics meus. 3. No pot haver-hi excepcions a la regla, senyor: sense passaport vostè no podrà sortir del país. 4. Devia ésser tard, perquè tots tenien molta son i només volien anar a descansar. 5. Obre el paquet? — No. Hauries d’esperar fins demà. 6. Jo diria que una pipa com la seva valdría vuit o nou dòlars, amb uns quants cèntims d’impostos. 7. Com que el nou director no entén el català tots haurem de parlar en castellà. Així, potser, no hi haurà malentesos. 8. Si tens freds hauries de portar un abric sobre l’americana. 9. Demà a la tarda el doctor Cardona llegirà a la classe un tros del seu últim treball sobre els problemes del govern a les societats modernes. 10. Quan serà l’hora de dinar la tia Clara traure l’olla del foc i començarà a servir la sopa. 11. Haig de confessar que vaig trobar molt gràciosa la contesta del president. 12. Demà passat, si tot va bé, farem les maletes i anirem a la platja amb la família (or els) Vidal.
EXERCISE 10

(a) 1. Here is the list of members of our association; the ones marked with a cross have already paid the year’s subscription. 2. When he had lit his cigarette he began to speak in a very low voice. 3. The building of the big stores has removed many old houses from the city centre. 4. When you have reached the very top the caretaker's wife will already have put out the lights on the staircase. 5. At last they have opened the doors of the museum to the general public, so we shall be able to visit the exhibition. 6. Who has broken a pane in the downstairs window? — It must have been one of our neighbour’s children. 7. In the company of her niece Clara has spent the weekend in the Catalan Pyrenees. Up there they will have been able to open their lungs (lit. breathe with full lungs). 8. Don’t you think that there could have been an easy way of putting an end to all this? 9. The young company secretary is very promising. Everyone says that he will go far and that he will soon be a member of the board of directors. 10. Where did Paul go? — Well, I saw him go out, with his head down, in the direction of the library. 11. In the evening, when the daylight had not quite faded, we saw in the distance the spire of Saint Mary’s church. 12. A group of foreign tourists have come and taken some photographs of the place where they buried the exiled president.

(b) 1. Tinc entès que una companyia espanyola ha construït la nova carretera de la costa, sota la direcció d’uns arquitectes alemanys. 2. Els avisos, escrits per un membre de la nostra associació, han caigut en mans de la policia. 3. La porter a va pujar a preguntar als turistes per què havien encès els llums de llur habitació. 4. Una pedra grossa ha caigut de la torre de l’església de Sant Pau i ha trencat un vidre d’un coteix estacionat al dessota. 5. Quan per fi arribarem a Cadaqués els altres ja hauran passat dues o tres

EXERCISE 11

(a) 1. It was the annual festival and all the people of the town were very excited. Even the policemen had had a drink and were slightly merry. 2. Anna’s stockings were dark blue and Núria’s were brown. 3. The poor woman had a bad heart and in winter she had to stay seated all day by the fire. 4. How many days will you be in Puigcerdà? — We should like to spend the whole autumn here, until November, but my husband will perhaps have to leave before. 5. Only when we were alone could we relax and discuss our affairs. 6. Downstairs the rooms were very dark. Even in summer they had to have the lights on almost the whole (of the) day. 7. We are tired of having to solve your problems. 8. Hey! Where is Charles? Couldn’t he come? — No; he has caught a cold and a very bad cough, and he says he doesn’t want to come out. 9. He stood for a good while with his mouth open, with his eyes fixed on the ceiling. I almost dared not breathe, for fear of breaking the silence. 10. Who has swept the stairs? When I went out after breakfast they were very dirty and covered in sand.
11. Man’s greatest desire has always been to live in peace and to be happy. 12. Are we agreed then? Is everyone happy about the decision? I should say that (to do) this is the only fair and honest solution.


EXERCISE 12

(a) 1. He can read, that (much) is sure, but he says that without glasses he can’t make out the small writing. 2. When the fruit is ripe in August it will fall from the trees and will be gathered by one of the gardener’s daughters. 3. Do you mean (to say) that you have been to the Costa Brava four times and you still have not learned to dance the sardana? 4. If you are not familiar with all the details of the case you have no right to speak. 5. The architect’s grand-

daughter was accompanied to the dance by Thomas. There they announced that they were already engaged. 6. We still have to pay the butcher’s bill. I don’t know how much it must come to now. 7. Gosh, (my) boy, you are very sun-burnt! — Yes; it’s because yesterday and the day before, instead of working, I went to the beach to sun-bathe. 8. Everything has now been said. The words of the witnesses have been noted down by a policeman and will be read (out) tomorrow in front of the judge. 9. I am sure that you would recognize Mercè (Grace) immediately. She is tall and dark, and very serious like her sister. 10. Our grandson is very bright, you will see. He has heard the song only once and now he knows by heart the words and the tune. 11. Carmen did not go to the theatre because she was afraid of being seen by the priest. 12. The door was open and we were able to go in without making a noise or putting on the lights.

(b) 1. Ja és hora de marxar, saps. Encara no estàs llet? 2. La secretària sabia de cor les adreces de tots els clients. 3. Les cançons eren conegudes de molts i la cantant era estimada de tots. 4. El sol no ha brillat en tot avui. Tot és fred, fosc i trist. 5. Vostè sap de matemàtiques? Doncs pot ajudar en Jaume a preparar els comptes. 6. No sabíem on vivia el carnisser, però sí sabíem el carrer on tenia la seva botiga. 7. Podia veure que havia estat malalta, perquè estava blanca com la neu i ni tan sols podia caminar sense l’ajuda d’un bastó. 8. Tota la família va ésser despertada pel soroll de la pluja i pel cant dels ocells. 9. Va ser quan era a la univeritat que va conèixer un nét del poeta famós. 10. Coneixes l’home de les ulleres de sol? D’aquí no distingeixo qui és. 11. Estàs segur que la (noia) rossa era l’Anna? Qui era la morena, doncs, que va marxar d’hora del ball? 12. Heu d’estar seriosos ara, amics meus. En comptes de perdre el temps hauríeu de preparar la lliçó de demà.
EXERCISE 13

(a) 1. I don’t know what this means either. The sentence doesn’t make sense. 2. It is a very useful tool and (one which is) not at all difficult to handle. 3. For sweet they gave a choice between fruit, cheese or cream. 4. You can come at any time of the day; you will always find someone at home. 5. When he has nothing to do Grandfather goes out for a walk; (but) not when it rains. 6. Nowhere in the world will you see such a landscape again. 7. If you have any common sense at all you will keep quiet and from now on check the facts before arguing with anyone. 8. Some among those responsible for clearing up the question believed that there was a certain connection between the two facts. Others, however, said that one had nothing to do with the other. 9. It is not just any (old) book, certainly not. On the contrary, it is a very rare edition of the complete works of our national poet. 10. Were there many tourists on the road on Sunday afternoon? — Not many. In fact, we saw few people and few cars along the whole coast between Barcelona and Arenys de Mar. 11. You have said that you want to see another doctor; just wait and see how they send the same one tomorrow. 12. Then he explained in a few words how he had built the garage himself, in such-and-such a way, with such-and-such materials.

(b) 1. No passa mai res d’interessant al poble on vivim. 2. Aleshores va explicar, no sense una certa ironia, com ella mateix a i un tal Santiago Martínez eren els culpables. 3. Si creus que hi ha prou benzina al dipòsit, podem partir ara mateix. 4. El jove anava disfressat de tal manera que no hauria estat coneugut mai, ni per la seva mateixa mare. 5. Encara no has llegit la nova novel·la d’en Vidal? Jo tampoc. Diuen que no és gaire bona. 6. Van fer molt de soroll quan feien obres al carrer prop de casa vostra? — Gens. 7. Pot tornar els llibres a la biblioteca demà. — Però no serà pas oberta demà. 8. Això no té res a veure amb cap dels altres fets. No vull discutir amb ningú, però haig de dir la veritat. 9. Hauríem de portar quelcom per al petit Eduard: un llibre, un bolígraf, un regal qualsevol. 10. Alguns eren grossos i d’altres eren petits; però totes eren del mateix color. 11. I què va dir després? — Res. Va callar. Era clar que no tenia cap ganes de donar més detalls del cas. 12. Com vostè comprendrà, hi ha una gran diferència entre tenir pocs diners i no tenir ni una pesseta. 13. Creia que protestarien, però ningú no va dir res. 14. Si mai vas a la capital, hauries de fer una visita al mercat nou.

EXERCISE 14

(a) 1. Be quiet, all of you, and listen. I have something very important to say on this subject. 2. Do you know in which province the Ebro river rises? Answer immediately without looking at the map. 3. What will you do if the television is not working? — In that case I shall listen to the radio or put on some of my new records. 4. Be patient, gentlemen. This is no good at all. Please don’t upset people, and wait your turn. 5. If you want to get to know a group of really nice young people, come to my house this evening. 6. How do you want to arrange the room? — Look: let’s change this sofa round, and let’s put the two big chairs facing the window. If the round table won’t fit here it can go in the dining room. 7. This train goes down the coast as far as Tarragona; then it goes inland through several towns in that province and goes on to Lerida. 8. The neighbours have sent these flowers for Grandmother, with their compliments. How sweet they smell! 9. In the evening the parents took their children to the park. They (the children) ran up and down (back and forth), played at football on the grass, climbed the trees and threw stones into the lake, until they were tired and could not play any more. 10. Don’t you find
a great resemblance, especially in the face and the features, between this girl and her elder sister? 11. What a muddle! Never in his life had he had to reply to a letter like that. 12. That business the other day was nothing more than a clear and open discussion; an exchange of impressions, without any kind of standing on ceremony, between people of very diverse opinions.


EXERCISE 15

(a) 1. This gold watch and the one which Joseph has used to belong to Grandfather. 2. I am not the one who must tell the others what they ought to do. 3. One of the workers said that he would never vote in favour of those who wanted to go on strike without even listening to the boss’s arguments. 4. I have put on one side the letters and the parcels which the secretary will take to the post. Here are the ones which will be distributed by hand. 5. Apparently (lit. by what appears) the author deals again in this study with a subject on which he has already published several articles.

(b) 1. El que busca és un martell amb què clavar els claus. 2. No, aquests mitjons no són pas els mateixos que portava aahir. 3. La màquina d’escriure és una eina sense la qual no podríem treballar. 4. Quins lladres! Els que han fet això seran agafaits i castigats. 5. No volia explicar les raons per les quals (= per què) havia de marxar aviat. 6. Emboliquem de moment només els articles que hem de distribuir a mà. Poseu a una banda tots els que seran enviats per correu. 7. Alguns potser diran que aquest màquina és inútil, cosa que no és pas veritat. 8. No vaig ser jo qui vaig dir que la vaga no duraria gaire. 9. El senyor Prat i el seu fill, els quals havien hagut de venir a peu, no van arribar fins al vespre. 10. Varem pujar a veure l’amo, sense el permís del qual cap foraster no podia entrar al taller. 11. Qui era aquella persona estranya amb qui parlaves el dia que vaig venir al
teu despatx? — Sé qui vols dir, però he oblidat el seu nom. 12. Ja has trobat el que buscaves? — Sí, aquests llibres són els que volia consultar.

EXERCISE 16

(a) 1. Where is the newspaper? — I don’t know; look for it yourself. — I have looked for it already, but I can’t find it anywhere... Ah, yes; look! I have it! It was hidden under this cushion. 2. If you see Núria, ask her what she intends to do with the money that her grandfather has left her. Let’s see if she will disclose her secret to you. 3. What do I think of these songs? Well, I don’t find them very attractive. What about you? 4. Go into the waiting room, please. If you need me for anything, (just) call me. 5. If he intends to talk about himself again I don’t want to listen to him. 6. Good day. Can I help (serve) you, madam? — Kindly show me one of those aprons which you have got on display in the window. 7. Let them speak. They will tell you the same as we have just explained to you. 8. Fetch me the screwdriver. — What do you want it for? — Do as I tell you. These screws are rusty and I want to change them. 9. Did you remember the little girls? — Yes; I have given them a toy each. 10. You and I between us will wrap up these parcels and take them to the post office. Thomas will post the letters when he has bought the stamps. 11. Llavors ens va enenyar (va enenyar-nos) unes fotos que ens van fer (van fer-nos) molta gràcia. 12. Qui va vendre-us (va vendre’ls; or us va vendre, els va vendre) aquests pastissos? — Els vam comprar (vam comprar-los) ahir a cal forner. Què passa? No són gaire bons?

(b) 1. Aquests sempre han pogut comptar amb mi; jo ara haig de comptar amb ells. 2. Què fa amb aquells llibres? No els necessita tots. Per què no torna al seu lloc els que no fa servir? 3. Si els pagues (els paga vostè, els pagueu, els paguen vostès) de seguida el lloguer de la sala potser et faran (li faran, us faran, els faran) un petit descompte. 4. Torna’m (torni’m, torneu-me, tornin-me) si us plau les dues lliures que et vaig deixar (li vaig deixar, us vaig deixar, els vaig deixar; or vaig deixar-te, deixar-li, deixar-vos, deixar-los) la setmana passada. 5. Parlen molt entre ells (entre si) però no ens diuen mai els seus secrets. 6. Hem vist en Jaume aquest matí, però no hem pensat a felicitar-lo d’haver guanyat el premi. 7. On són les nenes? Crida-les (cridi-les, cridueu-les, cridin-les) si us plau i dóna’ls (doni’ls, doneu-los, donin-los) el sopar. 8. He deixat el tornavis al garatge. Espera’m (esperi’m, espereu-me, esperin-me) un moment; que vaig a buscar-lo. 9. Digues-li ([Digue-li], digui-li, digueu-li, diguin-li) en què penses (pensa, penseu, pensen). Només vol ajudar-te (ajudar-lo/ajudar-la, ajudar-vos, ajudar-los/ajudar-les). 10. On penses (pensa, penseu, pensen) passar la nit si no et (el/la, us, els/les) deixen entrar a la sala d’espera? 11. Qui va vendre-us (va vendre’ls; or us va vendre, els va vendre) aquests pastissos? — Els vam comprar (vam comprar-los) ahir a cal forner. Què passa? No són gaire bons?

EXERCISE 17

(a) 1. One good turn deserves another. 2. Someone had left the cupboard open and the children took out of it everything that was inside. 3. This all looks too complicated to me. Let’s leave it for now; I don’t want any more headaches. We’ll talk about it another day. 4. Come over here. Show us what you are carrying in that bag. — Look: it’s empty; I’m not carrying anything in it. 5. I haven’t drunk much of this wine, but it’s gone to my head. When I started to drink it, it didn’t seem at all strong to me, but now I can see that it really is. 6. The young man said that he would
confess everything to his parents, that he did not want to hide from them any longer the truth about what had happened to him. 7. You haven’t remembered the errands which they entrusted to you. Martin has remembered them. 8. Their feet hurt and they did not want to continue along that path. They turned (off) to the right and took another which led down towards the village. 9. The two watches were almost the same. No one would have noticed any difference between them. 10. He can’t hear much, poor man; you will have to shout in his ear. 11. We never used to see (Mr.) Batista at the factory because by the time we used to arrive there he and all the others who worked nights had already left. 12. Hold my hat and stick (for me), and I’ll look for one of my visiting cards for you ... Here you are. If I can be of any service to you, you (now) know where to find me. Good day, Mr. Pujols.

(b) 1. Faci’m pesar aquest paquet, si us plau, i posi-hi els segells. 2. Hi sent encara el vell? — Bé, és una mica dur d’orella, però ho entén tot, per això. 3. Si no vol fer-nos aquesta bona obra, deixem-ho córrer per ara. No hi fa res; a mi m’és igual. 4. Als soldats els feia mal l’esquena, i no podien aguantar més el pes d’aquells sacs que els havia fet portar el capità. 5. Tenen cintes vermelles? — No; només en tenim de blaves i de grogues. 6. Posa les sabates a en Joanet i corda-li l’americana. 7. Què et passa? — Tinc un mal de cap molt fort. És que he entrat a la biblioteca avui de bon matí i no n’he sortit fins que han tancat aquest vespre. 8. Algú deu haver-li pres la cartera de la butxaca quan anava cap al camp de futbol. 9. Aquest gerro sembla fet a mà, però de fet no ho és. Ho sé perquè en tenim un d’igual a casa. 10. Si voleu prèsecs en comptes d’aquests gelats, demaneu-ne al cambrer. 11. No podrem anar a travèrs d’aquests camps. El masover no hi deixa passar ningú. 12. Quan els núvols els amagaven les estrelles, la bruixola els ensenyava cap a on queia el mar.
fa bonic aquí, oi? Qui us el va regalar? 6. El seu sogre havia pintat uns quadres preciosos, però ningú no volia comprar-ll’ en el preu que en demanava. 7. Si, aquest autobús para davant mateix del mercat. El cobrador m’ho ha dit quan hi he pujat. 8. Ensenyin-li a quin calaix guarden les culleres, i els les posarà a taula. 9. No varen sentir res del que deia el jutge. Llur nebot, però, que té l’orella molt fina, no en va perdre ni una sola paraula i els ho va explicar tot després. 10. La companyia diu que no saben encara quan partirà el vaixell cap a Nova York, però que ens ho avisaran aviat. 11. El pare va amagar la caps de llumins damunt l’armari de la cuina i va dir que els nens mai no la hi trobarien. 12. El seu bagul fa nosa aquí al passadís. L’en trauré i te’l deixaré prop de la porta. 13. Explica’ls-ho, i a veure si podran fer-ho ells mateixos.

EXERCISE 19

(a) 1. All the friends agreed to meet the next day in a bar near the port. 2. I think that some people still do not realize the importance of the results we have obtained. We are now presented with a good opportunity to convince them. 3. Again and again it has been said, ‘God helps those who help themselves’ (Help yourself and Heaven will help you). 4. What were those young people called whom you were with last night? — One of them was called Pere Bosch and the other one was some Maurice or other; I can’t remember his surname now. 5. One bullet took away the soldier’s left hand and another went through his shoulder. He died shortly afterwards, owing to the great loss of blood which he had suffered. 6. Stay here with us a few days more, for the annual festival is coming up and we shall have a really good time, I promise you. 7. The little ones used to give bottle stoppers to the dog and let him play with them, until one day the poor animal swallowed one and almost choked to death. When they realized they were completely to blame they turned quite red with shame.

(b) 1. Vèiem una certa semblança entre les dues germanes, però ni l’una ni l’altra no s’assemblava gens a la seva mare. 2. Qui t’ha aflatat la barba? — Me la vaig aflatar jo mateix perquè em feia nosa i volia desfer-me’n. 3. Imagina’t! Li donaven tot el que els demanava, i encara es queixava. 4. Van baixar al port a acompanyar(-se de) llur cunyat que se n’anava aquell dia als Estats Units. 5. Un dia que baixava d’un taxi se li’n va anar un peu, va caure i es va trencar un os de la cama. 6. Per què s’ha tret la brusa? — És que vol posar-se el suèter nou i mirar-se al mirall. 7. Es veu que algú s’ha endut un dels llibres d’aquesta pila i s’ha descuidat de tornar-l’hi. 8. Es va posar molt nerviós quan va adonar-se que haviem descobert la mala passada que pensava jugar- nos. 9. Els estudiants es van felicitar els uns als altres quan varen assistir-se els resultats de l’examen i quan van veure a la llista que tots havien aprovat. 10. S’aixeca cada matí a la mateixa hora, es renta, es raspalla les dents i es menja un bon esmorzar d’ous abans d’anar-se’n a la feina. 11. Coneixes aquella noia que acaba d’acostar-se a en Jaume? Et recordes del seu nom? — Em penso que es diu...
Alicia o una cosa així, però no li sé el cognom. 12. Es preguntava sovint què havia esdevingut (s'havia fet) de la seva antiga promesa, però no es varen tornar a veure mai més després que s'havien barallat aquell dia.

EXERCISE 20

(a) 1. They will not be able to get married until the autumn, because she is still a minor and her father has refused to give them his permission. 2. He drinks more wine at one meal than I drink in a whole day. Sometimes he has so much that when he leaves the table he can hardly stand up straight. 3. The vegetables which grow in this corner are the biggest, the most abundant and, for my taste, the best in the whole garden. Just look at these onions. 4. These days things are going from bad to worse in the country, and it is evident that the government does not know what to do about it. 5. He has had as many advantages in life as his brothers. The thing is that he has not managed to make use of them and so he has not become as rich as them. 6. I am not so silly! I would rather spend the winter at home, by the fireside, than roam the world with people like that. 7. Some pages in the notebook looked smaller than the others, a fact which drew our attention and made us suspect that someone had changed them. 8. The more effort you make to study this subject the more benefit you will derive from it and the fewer problems you will have with it when it comes to the examinations. 9. The mayor's wife was just as she had been described to us, an unpleasant person, far more disagreeable and less intelligent than her husband. 10. Have they sent you as many boxes as you expected? — No; we have only received one very small one. 11. Most of the tourists chose paella, the typical dish of the region, but there were some, not so daring, who without even tasting it said that they preferred steak and chips. 12. From what

the announcement says, this evening's concert will be most interesting. Most of the tickets have already been sold.

(b) 1. Tens tota la raó, amic meu. Ho faré tal com dius. 2. El germà petit no creix gaire; sempre el veig igual. 3. Encara que es deia que el general Mas era un dels soldats més bons de tot l'exèrcit, era la persona més antipàtica que he conegut en ma vida. 4. Com més avantatges li oferí vostè, més li'n demanarà. 5. Va resultar tan ximple com la seva germana, que ja coneixem, però era força més simpàtica que no ens havíem imaginat. 6. La botifarra era bonissima; mai no n'havien tastada de tan rica. 7. A l'estiu s'estimaven més seure a fora, al balcó o dalt al terrat, que no pas quedar-se tancats a dins. 8. Tenen tanta pràctica com jo en aquestes qüestions. Han d'afanyar-se els mateixos per arreglar-ho. 9. Gairebé totes les cebes que vam collir a la tardor s'hàn tornat toves i no les hem pogudes menjar. 10. El millor que podeu fer de moment és treure-us la roba mullada i eixugar-vos amb aquesta tovallola. Apa, afanyeu-vos! 11. És més difícil que no sembla fer funcionar aquesta màquina. Fixa't bé en els detalls que t'he apuntat en aquesta llibreta. 12. La majoria de les dones eren casades, però mensys de deu d'elles van venir acompanyades del marit.

EXERCISE 21

(a) 1. When I worked with him at the insurance company we used to see each other almost every day, but now we only meet from time to time, in the street or in some bar in the (city) centre. 2. How many pieces do you need to complete your collection? 3. He has assured us that he will pay for everything in advance, but we doubt it. We have never trusted this gentleman and his promises. 4. These are very important facts which ought to be borne in mind by
the committee in the present circumstances. 5. The old farmer acted as a guide to the hikers who used to come in the summer to climb that mountain. 6. While the fishermen were at sea their wives were mending nets in a shed on the beach. 7. I’ll try to have a look at it for you today. — It isn’t urgent. If you wish, you can leave it until later. 8. A girl put her feet in the water and exclaimed that it was too cold to be able to bathe. 9. She rushed to fetch the silver box where she kept some special tablets which, according to her, acted as a cure for any illness at all. 10. Ask them in their language how long they want to hire the boat for. I have spoken to them slowly in Catalan, but we have had a job to understand each other. 11. Mr. Ferrer, as managing director of our agency, has left today for Brussels for a meeting of European politicians and businessmen. He says that if he has any time left he will go on afterwards to London, just to say hello to his colleagues over there. 12. What did you think of this poem of mine? — I think it is admirable, and I should like very much to buy a copy of the book, in order to be able to study the whole collection. — Well, keep this one. Here you are; it’s a present.

(b) 1. Moltíssimes gràcies per la vostra ajuda. Això que heu fet ens ha estalvat molta feina. 2. L’aigua d’aquesta font no és gaire bona per a beure. El pagès ens ha dit que només s’hauria de fer servir per a rentar plats. 3. El senyor Vendrell ve a casa nostra de tant en tant — com a col·lega del meu marit, és clar. Li asseguro que no l’hi invitaria mai com a amic. 4. Com que no portàvem cap pressa vam anar amb ells fins a la parada de l’autobús, només per fer-los companyia. 5. Els polítics han faltat a tantes promeses que ja no podem refiar-nos-en més. 6. El capità de la barca es va portar com un heroi: va morir per salvar la vida dels pescadors. 7. Amb els diners que vostè ha estalvat en té prou per a comprar un cotxe i encara li’n quedarà per a pagar l’assegurança. 8. Què t’ha semblat el conte que acaba de llegir-nos? — M’ha agradat tant que penso encarregar un exemplar del llibre per al meu nebot. 9. No tenen (cap) ganes de ficar el nas en un afar polític que podria resultar més perillós que ningú no s’imaginà. 10. El comitè es reunirà en una sala de l’ajuntament per discutir aquest assumpte. L’alcalde els ha citat per a dimecres. 11. De totes les cases noves que es van construir en aquell carrer ja en queden menys de cinc per vendre. 12. Proven van de convèncer-lo dels avantatges de dipositar a la caixa d’estalvis la quantitat que li sobrava de la compra.

EXERCISE 22

(a) 1. By folding the sheet in the middle and sticking the two ends together like this, you make a sort of envelope out of it. 2. You carry on; see that you make the ropes secure. I’ll attend to picking up the tools. 3. The car wasn’t pulling, and they wondered whether there was something wrong with the engine or whether it was just a matter of changing the oil. 4. If you follow this short cut you will go through the thickest part of the wood and come out on the road beyond the deserted mill. 5. Montse(rrat) sang a Portuguese song, being accompanied on the piano by her twin sister. 6. He arrived in a sweat at the appointment, having run in order not to be late, and he ordered a refreshing drink from the waiter, who immediately brought him a lemonade. 7. If you leave the trunk here no one will be able to get by. You ought to move it over there a bit. 8. Now that Mr. Ferrater has offered to pay all the expenses, it would be best to do just as he suggests. 9. If the chocolate turns out too thick put in a small cupful of boiling water. 10. I gather that they will be doing roadworks in the High Street until the end of next week. 11. As he was strolling in the Rambla he recognized an old friend of his sitting outside a café. 12. When he was young and single life as a travelling sales-
man suited him very well, but now that he is married he says that the business of spending a lot of time abroad has become very tedious (for him).

(b) 1. Gira full i segueix llegint. Trobaràs que el capítol següent té coses encara més divertides. 2. Els dies que l’amava fora, visitant clients, per exemple, o comprant materials, una de les aprenentesses s’encarregava de la botiga. 3. Essent a l’estraner sempre li agradava enraonar i escoltar els idiomes que havia estudiat de jove. 4. El te no sortirà bé si no hi tires aigua bullent. Aquesta no és prou calenta; té, posa-la a escalfar una mica més. 5. Estava assegut a la terrassa d’un cafè de la Rambla, llegint el diari i aixecant el cap de tant en tant per mirar la gent que (es) passejava amunt i avall. 6. Caminant amb pas ferm per la drecera que travessava el bosc, per fi va aconseguir els altres una mica més enllà de l’església abandonada. 7. Quan va sentir la seva amiga plorant a fora, va deixar caure el llibre que llegia i va sortir corrent per preguntar-li què passava. 8. El seu cotxe vell segueix tirant, però gasta massa oli i estic segur que tindrà una avaria un dia d’aquests. Penso comprar-me’n un de nou l’any vinent. 9. Havent pagat totes les despeses, em quedava menys d’una lliura. 10. Seguint un tal exemple no aconseguiran mai els resultats que desitgen. 11. La carn va ser servida amb un suc tan espès que gairebé s’havia de tallar amb un ganivet. 12. Tenint prou segells i sobres, aquestes cartes les podrem tirar a la bústia avui.

EXERCISE 23

(a) 1. I am as interested as you are in the success of this undertaking. Isn’t it important to us all to see the value of our shares grow? So I’ll get straight down to business and explain to you what I wish to propose. 2. Whose turn is it to peel potatoes? — I thought it was Peter’s turn today, but

he isn’t back yet. — Well, it doesn’t matter. I’ll do it myself.
3. He is very lazy, but I suppose that in the end we shall persuade him to finish off the job once and for all. 4. I too have heard talk of something similar, but it is best not to trust such rumours. 5. What was the weather like in the mountains yesterday? — It was horrible, really, bitterly cold. The north wind was blowing so hard and it rained so much that we scarcely dared come out of our tent. 6. Our youngest son is learning to play the guitar. He has become really interested in it, and he can already play some simple pieces from beginning to end. 7. Rosa said that the boarding house where she was staying was so comfortable that one would never wish to leave it, and that she could not now be bothered to find herself a flat. 8. Walking down the avenue, the old man found a bird on the ground. When he touched it with the tip of his stick he saw that it could not fly because it had a broken wing. 9. Where have the French boys pitched their tent? — The farmer has allowed them to camp in a meadow up there, beyond these corn fields. 10. This scientific explanation is not at all simple nor easy to understand. One must make a great mental effort to follow its central argument. 11. If you persist in your intention of denouncing me to the authorities, I too shall have to insist on disclosing to them your part in this affair. I shall defend myself as best I can in my position. 12. I have heard this poem recited several times, but without catching the meaning of every line. I still find it hard to see what were the author’s aims in writing it.

(b) 1. Com a actor aquest (home) no ha tingut cap èxit, i ara s’ha proposat de buscar una manera més senzilla de guanyar-se la vida. 2. Encara no s’ha aixecat la boira i em fa l’efecte que aviat tornarà a ploure. — No importa. Si surto a passeig portaré el paraguà. 3. A qui li toca de regar les plantes? Amb aquesta calor que fa no duraran gaire sense aigua. 4. En haver parat les tendes vam buscar
EXERCISE 24

(a) 1. You can no longer deny that you were wrong. What a pity that you did not realize earlier the consequences of your mistake. 2. It will be better if he tells them himself than for them to find out about it some other way. 3. The doctor no longer fears that the sick woman’s temperature will rise any more. He has even consented to her getting up occasionally and taking a walk in the courtyard of the clinic. 4. She will probably come tomorrow. You must see her then and give her this piece of advice. 5. Who has ordered us not to carry arms? Who wants to stop us from defending our freedom? 6. Tell him not to worry; it is all sorted out now. 7. We shall ask them to contribute to the expenses. I don’t think they will be annoyed nor that they will refuse to do it. 8. It is hard to believe that a member of the council of ministers could behave in such an unworthy way. 9. Keep these documents in the bottom of your case. It is important that they should not be discovered by the customs officers. 10. What can I say? I am sorry that you are taking it like this, and I hope that you will soon be convinced that we could not have done anything else. 11. We are very pleased that you are all well, and we are waiting for you to tell us which day you will come to visit us. 12. I have been charged with conveying the bad news to you. I am very sorry to have to tell you that you have been suspended from your duties.

(b) 1. Vols que et presenti a la senyora de la casa? — Sí; m’alegraria moltissim de conèixer-la. 2. Qui ha manat als criats que serveixin (de servir) les begudes al pati? No creuen vostès que fa massa fred per a seure a fora? 3. Esperem que vinguin els altres. Vull que estigueu tots en el secret. 4. A en Pau li sap greu de marxar, i nosaltres sentim també que se n’hagi d’anar tan aviat. 5. El prego que esculti (d’escolar) el que haig de dir. No crec que m’equivoqui aquesta vegada. 6. Pot ésser que alguns s’hagin equivocat de camí, però encara m’estrenyao (or m’estrenya) que hagin arribat tan pocs. 7. Convé que tothom sàpiga la veritat del que va passar aquell dia. 8. És una llàstima que s’ho prengui tan seriosament, tot això. No cal que s’amoïni ni que s’enfadi (or No li cal amoinar-se . . .). 9. L’únic consell que hem pogut oferir-li és que presenti (or és de presentar) la seva queixa a un dels ministres responsables. 10. Encara queda una gota de vi al fons de la bota, però dubto que sigui gaire bo. Em temo que haurem de beure suc de taronja. 11. No és que ens neguem a ajudar-los; només volem saber alguns detalls del que desitgen que fem. 12. Nega que visqui a la mateixa casa que aquests (homes), i diu que és impossible que els hagi conegut.
EXERCISE 25

(a) 1. One of the employees said that he would not stay to work in that firm, not even if they offered him a salary increase. 2. The fact that he does not believe it does not mean that it is not true. 3. We removed all the tables from the room and arranged the chairs in that way, so that the maximum possible number of people would be able to get in. 4. Since he was the only one who knew a bit about the subject of modern painting, they asked him to give them a commentary on the pictures on show in the museum. 5. He had lent them a small sum on the sole condition that they gave it back to him the next time they saw him. 6. Those of you who do not observe this rule will have to appear before the disciplinary committee. 7. They begged us to write to them once we knew the date of our wedding. 8. He will not refrain from doing it. Even if they scold him he will persist. 9. If they had only explained to us before we should not have fallen out with them. 10. However interesting this essay may be, the conclusion has not quite convinced me completely. I do not think that it goes to the root of the problem. 11. Act as though you were not in on the secret. Let’s see if the others can guess it without our saying anything about it to them. 12. Do as you wish, as long as you don’t ruin the deal by doing something stupid.

(b) 1. Hauràs de buscar un mecànic que et canviï aquesta roda espattllada. Jo no m’hi entenc gaire. 2. Els que comprin (compraran) bitllets d’anar i tornar estalviarán almenys deu duros. 3. Llavors es va mirar, somrient, com si (jo) hagués dit una cosa divertida. 4. Només que es posés un coll net, estaria molt més elegant. 5. Sabia que la seva mare s’enfadaria quan veíés la seva camisa tota coberta de taques de vi. 6. No renyiré amb ell mentre segueixi portant-se com cal. 7. Per més que el renyin els seus parents no en farà cas. 8. En ma vida no portaria tal barret, ni que me’l regalessis.
EXERCISE 27

(a) 1. On the third of September, 1939, war was declared between England and Germany which lasted until the year (19)44. 2. It has been calculated recently that over 15% of Spaniards are Catalan speaking. 3. When she told me that she was 86 I was very surprised, and I exclaimed (lit. exclaiming) that she looked a lot younger to me. 4. Our climate here is very variable. In summer the average temperature is 24 degrees centigrade and it goes down in December to two degrees below zero. 5. It is five minutes
to twelve. When midnight strikes all of you except Frank will have to go. 6. Twice a year Mother washes the curtains and hangs them out on the roof-garden to dry. 7. On the peaks which are over 3,500 metres high there is snow which does not melt all the year round. 8. It does not matter if the rope is thick, provided that the length does not exceed 16 metres. 9. During the fifties the population of the capital increased by 18,300, rising to a total number of almost two million inhabitants. 10. What size will the carpet for the passage have to be? — If I am not mistaken, 13 metres long by 66 centimetres wide. 11. We stopped at a farmhouse, twenty-odd kilometres from Lerida, which was not marked on any map. 12. I make it twenty past ten, but this watch of mine is possibly a bit fast.

(b) 1. Segons el cens de mil nou-cents seixanta-set, Barcelona tenia una població d’un milió, set-cents trenta-vuit mil, quatre-cents noranta-vuit habitants. 2. Quina hora té, si us plau? M’he descuidat de donar corda al meu rellotge aquest matí. — El meu marca dos quarts de vuit, però en penso que retarda. 3. A cinquanta-quatre quilòmetres més enllà d’Olot la carretera puja a una alçada de mil cinc-cents metres. Des d’allí tindrem una vista meravellosa, sempre que no hi hagi boira. 4. Dos cops l’any el vidu cobrava els interessos del seu capital que tenia invertit al set per cent. 5. Si diem que ens reunirem a quarts de dotze, ningú no es presentarà fins a tres quarts. Més val que quedem per a dos quarts en punt. 6. Quants anys tens? — Vaig néixer l’u de desembre de mil nou-cents quaranta-quatre, i això vol dir que en faré vint-i-nou aquest any. 7. L’aigua bull a una temperatura de cent graus, o bé a dos-cents dotze graus si es fa servir l’escala Farenheit. 8. L’antic pont de pedra va ser enderrocat fa més de quatre-cents anys. 9. He comprat aquest arròs a trenta-dues pessetes el quilo; la setmana passada en despatxaven a sis duros. De vegades sembla que cobren el que vulguin. 10. Darrerament han millorat molt
el servei de ferrocarril entre Barcelona i Ginebra, introduint
uns trens nous capaços de fer cent vint quilòmetres per hora.
11. A quina hora s’obre l’estanc després del migdia? —
Normalment despatxen des d’un quart de cinc fins a les nou
del vespre. 12. El sostre era suportat per unes bigues de
ferro o d’acer, cadascuna de les quals tenia un gruix de ben
bé trenta-cinc centímetres.

EXERCISE 28

(a) 1. It is a mixture, half brandy and half wine. What?
Don’t you like it? 2. Not only did the queen have the poor
orphan girl brought up, but also she treated her always as
though she were her own daughter. 3. What a pleasant
couple the Sardàs are! It is incredible that their son is such
a dull ass. 4. During the last third of the nineteenth
century, when all the natural sciences were taking gigantic steps
forward, this enormous progress was made in the field of
medicine. 5. In this firm we take the annual holiday during
the second fortnight in August. Consequently, from
Saturday the eighteenth until the thirtieth inclusive all the
workshops and offices of the company will be closed. 6. All
in all, I should say that it is not he who is to blame but
those who have led him astray. 7. The gossips are saying it,
but no one knows how true it is. 8. An hour and a half
later order had been restored by four members of the Civil
Guard (Spain’s para-military police force, who invariably
work in pairs). 9. What pushing (and shoving) there was
amongst those people who had gone in their thousands to
see Barcelona playing at home against Real Madrid! What
excitement when the Barça side scored first! (El Barça is the
popular name for the Barcelona football team.) 10. He is
still too young to be able to separate the wheat from the
chaff (i.e. to be discerning). Judgement and a right sense of
proportion are something which comes with age. 11.

(b) 1. Més de la meitat dels qui van assistir al congrés eren
estrangers. 2. Les factures i la correspondència estaven totes
barrejades al fons del calaix, i vaig passar tot el vespre
separant aquesta i intentant de posar-la en ordre. 3. Hem
encarregat un parell de pollastres i mitja dotzena d’ampolles
de xampany. No us sembla que amb això en tinguem prou?
4. El vaixell va arribar a Bilbao a tres quarts de quatre de
la matinada. Al cap d’una hora i mitja centenars de cotxes
feien camí cap al sud. 5. L’últim capítol de la seva auto-
biografia, en el qual tracta extensament de la segona guerra
mundial, té un cert interès. Però, tot plegat, si en teus la
palla, no en queda res més que una sèrie de llocs comuns.
6. La primera vegada que va anar a Londres va veure el
rei Jordi VI (sísè) amb els seus propis ulls. 7. No solament
aproven aquest projecte, sinó que també creuen que el fi
justifica tots els mitjans que s’emprin per a aconseguir-lo.
8. Dóna-li una empena; si no, no saltarà. 9. Quan es
reparteixi la fortuna del duc, cadascun dels dos fills en
rebrà dos cinquens, i l’altra cinquena part li tocarà a la filla
única així que sigui major d’edat. 10. Quantes coses que
havien fet des que eren casats! Però també, desgraciada-
ment, que de pressa que havien passat els dies! 11. Li ho he
recordat per milionèsimà vegada, però no crec que en faci
cas. 12. Fixa’t com és de tard! No puc dir-te el greu que em
sap haver de posar fi a la conversació.
EXERCISE 29

(a) 1. Apart from that there is nothing else to do, as far as I know. 2. Watch out, there's a train coming! Don't cross the track. 3. The captain of the guards stood up and in a voice filled with emotion uttered the following words: 'May the example of this brave man serve as a lesson to us all.' 4. The big scissors are very sharp; mind that you don't cut yourselves on them. 5. Stop it, man; don't try your tricks on me. I am likely to give you a slap. 6. If you don't want to be swindled, don't let them take you for foreign tourists. 7. I can't resist going there, whatever might happen and whoever might be annoyed. 8. Luck had it that they should meet again and recognize one another after so many years. 9. Tomorrow we are going duck shooting. Let's hope it doesn't rain. 10. They must have been very annoyed when they finally found out. 11. He told them not to worry, and offered to act himself as their interpreter. 12. As soon as they had reached an agreement they went to inform the journalists waiting outside of their decision. 13. After he had read the announcement he turned round impatiently and gave a gesture of annoyance. 14. Fair enough if he doesn't want to do it today, but he had better not forget it tomorrow. 15. One still does not know what were the reasons which led him to accept such a difficult role.

(b) 1. Per mi no estigueu. No us amoïnaré. 2. Sens dubte, degué ésser un paper gairebé impossible d'aprendre. 3. Compte! No el toquis pas; que crema. 4. Siguin quins siguin els inconvenients, em sembla que, ben mirat, potser valdrà la pena de provar aquest altre mètode. 5. No el pegui. No volia pas ofendre'l. 6. Van arribar a Saragossa el dinou i s'hi quedaren més d'una quinzena. 7. Que jo sàpiga, no ha fet cap paper en aquest afer. No tenia cap motiu per a barrejar-s'hi. 8. L’espectacle fou un desastre total. Tot anà malament. 9. Quan vegis en Carles per Nadal, dóna-li records i no deixis de felicitar-lo de part nostra pel seu èxit. 10. No es va aturar fins que hagué pujat a dalt de tot. 11. Obri la carta amb un gest d’impatiència, i tan bon punt la va haver llegida la tirà a terra. 12. Tant de bo que les coses fossin sempre tan senzilles! 13. Correguérem a ajudar-lo, però fou massa tard. 14. Que es diverteixin, senyors, però no beguin massa. 15. Tingué la mala sort de caure malalt el dia que es van distribuir els premis.

EXERCISE 30

(a) 1. No et puc deixar ni un cèntim fins que cobri la setmanada. 2. El vint-i-tres d'abril, per la festa de Sant Jordi, patró de Catalunya, se celebra a Barcelona la famosa diada del llibre. 3. Si fos tan extraordinàriament intel·ligent com vol sembrar, no hugueria fet una animalada tan enorme. 4. És un foradet molt petitó, però si no el tapeu de seguida, anirà eixamplant-se i llavors hi passarà la pluja. 5. Fóra massa arriscat intentar fer-ho de dia. Esperem que es faci fosc. 6. No em toquis els llençols amb aquestes manotes brutes. Són planxats de nou. 7. Seguint les petjades de llur enemic per fi el varen aconseguir prop del lloc on havia matat la seva primera víctima. 8. Haurien estat durament castigats si no n'haguessin dit tota la veritat. 9. Bufà una forta ventada que l’haguera fet caure si no s'haguess agafa a una branca que penjava. 10. La cortina de boirassa grisa que cobria la ciutat aixafava les poques persones que anaven pels carrers. 11. Si només fos qüestió de canviar un trosset de tub, sense cap mena de complicacions, haguérem pogut adobar-ho nosaltres mateixos. 12. La caledacció central m’ha aixafat. Sortiré una estoneta a prendre la fresca.

(b) Weakness of Character

Sleeping one day, as I have slept so very many times before, I was awakened by a sound coming from my study.
'There we are!' I said to myself. 'It's the burglar.'

And so, walking on tiptoe, I covered the distance between me and the place where someone was plundering me. There I found (lit. there was there) an unknown gentleman, with a bag, who was selecting those of my things which most appealed to him and gathering them up in a pile.

'Hey! (Not so fast . . . )' I said to him. 'Let's talk it over.'

He turned round, startled and unsurprised, looked at me from head to foot and replied.

'There's no need. I come out on top. As it is, at a rough calculation, I weigh about twenty kilogrammes more than you. This natural advantage spares me from any kind of explanation. Are you armed?'

'No.'

'That makes another reason.'

And he proceeded to fill his sack with my possessions, pretending to ignore me. I, as is right and proper, did not give in at this.

'But, friend, this is not a question of physical strength. There are (such things as) morals, don't you see? Without principles you'll not get anywhere and everybody will look at you askance . . .' 

'Morality!' he said. 'It's the most useless weight that can burden a man's shoulders.'

And, suddenly turning serious, he asked me:

'Do you really believe in it, morality?'

'I should say so, my word, I should say so!' He

was most upset at this affirmation of my faith. He left what he was doing, took hold of me by the arm and invited me to sit at his side on a sofa.

And he addressed the following words to me:

'Look: you make me feel rather sorry for you and I want you to receive the benefit of my experience.

'Once upon a time I too used to put my trust in morality. I was married; I had a son, and a bosom friend, and a business. I had earned myself the reputation of being the most perfect man in the district and, consequently, also the biggest sucker. My confessor used to tremble as soon as he saw me, because my clear conscience gave him no chance to shine. "How boring you are!" he used to tell me, and, with the authority vested in him, gave me his blessing.

'At times, I was horrified by my own dullness, but the peace of my home, the good name of the family and the wholesomeness of my ways kept me company. "Bear up, boy, bear up," I used to say to myself. "All this will have its reward."

'And do you know what the reward was? I'll tell you all about it. One day my son, who was just fourteen, ran off with the maid. Alarmed by this, I went to look for my wife to share my affliction with her, and all I found was a letter from her explaining to me that she was tired of my dreariness and was going off to live with a man on the third floor, because he was nice and knew what life was all about.

'Shattered by this, I decided to immerse myself in the business, and a couple of days later I found out that my best friend, by using a bit of commercial manoeuvring, had relieved me of it.

'All I had left was my confessor. I explained to him what was going on and he, without the slightest hesitation, told me that I was entirely to blame and imposed on me one of those penances which leave you crippled.

'And my good reputation in the district? Listen to this: when I walked along the street, people would turn round to look at me and laugh.

'As you can appreciate, it was a good time to take stock of my life and to discover that, up to then, I had gone astray. One cannot go against the current, and if you do you pay for the consequences. That was so obvious that I decided to change my ways.

'Now I find that I can do what I like without my conscience getting in the way, and everybody considers me a
first-rate fellow. I am in demand among the women; my acquaintances declare how nice I am; and the neighbours, when they are inclined, say among themselves, "There you are, you see; the ass that he used to seem, and still he'll get on in the world!"

'That is all. If it can be of any use to you, there it is.'

'I'm coming with you!' I told him. 'I should hate to be the victim of a late decision.'

The next day the papers published the following item of news:

'Early yesterday morning burglars entered a flat on Eastern Avenue. Among other objects of value found to be missing is the head of the household, for no one can account for Mr. Calders, an honourable citizen and clean-living ratepayer.'

Notes

1. (En) fi: frequently used to link parts of a story told in conversation.
2. The expression de (bona) llei refers primarily to the quality or weight that certain precious metals must have by law: argent de llei = sterling silver. Here the phrase is used figuratively.
3. This emphatic use of home is very common, without a real equivalent in English.
4. Que often expresses a progression or connection between ideas that in English tends to be suppressed. Understood here is something like '(Do you say) that . . . ?'
5. I tant! appears often in conversation, either stressing agreement or, as here, as a strong affirmation in reply to a question. Mare de Déu: such exclamations have no blasphemous tone or intention in Catalan; the English equivalents are milder terms like 'Gosh!', 'Upon my word!'
6. The Fabra Dictionary gives for taulà -ana, 'Dit d'una persona rústica bonhomiosa, sense malícia.' Here the meaning is that of naïve, simple-minded or, more crudely, a sucker.
7. The meaning of saber viure is identical with that of the French savoir vivre.
8. m'assabentar: in narration the imperfect tense is occasionally used instead of the preterite to give force and vividness to a single action in the past.
9. The Fabra Dictionary explains, 'Pensar-s'hi (a fer una cosa), no llançar-se a fer-la irreflectivament.'
10. No es pot . . . = Hom no pot . . .: note this use of the reflexive pronoun as impersonal subject. Observe also the use of en and hi in the second part of the sentence.
11. estic tan bé = I'm fine, I couldn't be better.
12. Vagar = to wander, to stray or to be vacant: via an impersonal construction, as here, it means to have the time or leisure to do something.
13. La carrera = profession, career. Fer carrera means to have a secure and well-paid job, with the prospects and status that go with it, to get on in life.
14. See note 8 above.
15. La contribució is a tax levied on land and property to finance state services. The nearest English equivalent to contribuïent is ratepayer. Note the omission of the article before the nouns in apposition (ciutadà . . . contribuïent): this usually occurs in Catalan, unless the noun is individualized: Després ve Girona, capital de la província (. . . capital of the province), but La tomba de Verdaguer, el gran poeta nacional (The tomb of Verdaguer, the great national poet).

Lunch at Montserrat

They went up to the restaurant at a quarter past one. There were plenty of empty tables and they were able to take their pick. 'Blimey,' thought Mr. Joaquim, 'I thought it would be full to the brim.'

They were attended immediately by a waiter who seemed to be in a great hurry. Too much of a hurry for the liking of Mrs. Rosa, who just could not make up her mind looking at the menu.\textsuperscript{9} Deep down she distrusted those dishes whose names did not ring a bell, and on the other hand, though, she was reluctant to order something that she already knew off by heart.

‘Well,\textsuperscript{9} if you don’t get a move on,’ said the waiter, tapping his order-pad with his pencil, ‘the tourists will be here shortly and then there will be no chance of making ourselves understood.’

It was even harder to decide what the little ones would have to eat. Mrs. Rosa did not want to spend money for the sake of it,\textsuperscript{4} and she just could not come to a decision.

Mr. Joaquim was uneasy because he could see how impatient was their waiter, who every now and then would even go as far as to give a disapproving snort.

At last the decision came: four plates of soup, without egg, obviously, two helpings of hors d’œuvres (to be shared among the four of them) and lamb cutlets.

The waiter left their table quickly, at the very moment when the doors opened and in came a crowd of strangers.\textsuperscript{4}

They evidently belonged to a party in coaches who were following a prearranged timetable. Until then they must have been trooping round Montserrat admiring its delights under the dictation of a guide, and now, as though at the ringing of a bell, they were getting organized for lunch.

The Basters waited for more than twenty minutes, without seeing their waiter again. Fortunately the tourists were an entertaining spectacle, and they did not get too impatient. When their soup was finally served it was almost two o’clock.

The lunch was certainly no success. Mrs. Rosa could not get used to the idea of being served in a restaurant like that with a broth so thin and lacking in goodness. The hors d’œuvres did not come in for any praise from her either; and as for the chops, well, they could not possibly have been lamb, according to her.\textsuperscript{6}

The children scarcely tasted a thing, because they were shy about having to eat in front of so many people. Mrs. Rosa, however, did not wish to force them, because at five o’clock they had to set off on the journey back, and all that was needed was for them to be travel-sick and to disgorge in the middle of the coach.

When it was time to pay the bill Mrs. Rosa was horrified, and she left the restaurant with the impression that they had been in a den of thieves. Mr. Joaquim had to ask her to make her remarks in a quieter voice, because he thought that some red-faced tourists were making fun of her.

‘What we ought to do,’ Mr. Baster ventured to suggest afterwards, ‘is to go and buy some souvenir of Montserrat.’

‘Go on! Really?’

‘Yes, yes.’ A little something or other, just to do the right thing. It’s what people always do.’

Dragging the children along, they went into the gift shop. The things there were there! Too many. When it came down to it, the best idea was a medallion each, and no more complications.

Notes

1. Literally as full as an egg: the corresponding English expression is full to the brim or packed like sardines in a tin, although for the latter Catalan also has Estar com les sardines al barril. Note also the familiar use of senyor and senyora with a personal name, which is as common in Catalan as it is rare in English.

2. No acabar de means not to manage to, (just) to fail to, to be just unable to: No acabávem de comprendre-lo = We did not quite understand it. Do not confuse this with acabar de meaning to have just.

3. Es que ... can have the strength of The fact is that ...
or It is because ..., but it is often, as here, just a conversational link.
4. Gastar (to use up, consume, wear out) is incorrectly used colloquially for despendre (to spend). Here the novelist is reproducing his character’s speech habits. Note perquè sí, just for the sake of it, for no other reason than wanting to.
5. s’obrien...entrava...: see the remarks made on this use of the imperfect tense in note 8 to the previous passage.
Note the derivation of llopadà from el llop (wolf). Foraster is sometimes used, as here, for a person from a different part of the country.
6. The syntax is rather disjointed but the meaning is clear: ‘there is no need to mention the chops, which could not possibly have been lamb...’
7. This use of dona is like that of home, which has been remarked on in note 3 to the previous passage.

Vocabulary

The following vocabulary has been compiled for the purposes of this course, for which it aims to be complete. It does not, however, include articles (pp. 27–8), numbers (pp. 30, 38, 222–3, 230), possessives (pp. 67–9), personal pronouns (pp. 29 and 29–31), days (p. 36), months or seasons (p. 98). Adverbs in -ment are given only in special cases. Place names with their associated adjectives and personal names are listed in Appendix III, pp. 271–76. The conjugations of verbs marked with an asterisk are given in Appendix I; via indicates that a change of construction is necessary. Numbers in brackets refer to lessons.

When stressed e or o does not bear a written accent the mark ı indicates that the pronunciation is open ([é]), [ê]), and the mark ı, that it is closed ([è], [ô]): these symbols do not form part of the spelling of a word.

CATALAN-ENGLISH

a, to, at, in, on (21)
abandonar, to abandon, to desert
abans, before(hand), previously, earlier; abans de, before; abans que, before
abans-d’ahir, day before yesterday
l’abric (m.), overcoat
abundant, abundant
acabar, to finish, to end; acabar de, to have just; no acabar de, to be just unable to; acabar de fer ...
... anys, to be just ...
years old
acampar, to camp
acceptar, to accept
l’acció (f.), action; share (in company)
aci, here
aclàrir, to clear up, to clarify
acomiar, to dismiss, to see off; acomiar-se (de), to say goodbye (to), to take one’s leave (of)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Catalan</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>accompanyar</strong>, to accompany</td>
<td><strong>amoinar</strong>, to trouble, to upset, to worry; <strong>amoinar-se</strong>, to be troubled, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>acòrd (m.)</strong>, agreement</td>
<td><strong>ample -a</strong>, wide, broad</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>acostar</strong>, to take (bring) near; <strong>acostar-se (a)</strong>, to approach, to go (come) near</td>
<td><strong>l'ampolla (f.)</strong>, bottle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>acostumar (a, de)</strong>, to be used (accustomed) to</td>
<td><strong>amunt</strong>, up(wards), high, above</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>l'actor (m.)</strong>, actor</td>
<td><strong>amungetar</strong>, to heap (up), to pile (up)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>actual</strong>, present, existing, of the moment</td>
<td><strong>anar</strong>*, to go; <strong>anar a</strong>, to go and; <strong>anar bé</strong>, to suit; <strong>anar fent</strong>, to carry on; <strong>anar-se’n</strong>, to go away, to leave, to slip (off, away)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>l'acudit (m.)</strong>, joke</td>
<td><strong>anèc (m.)</strong>, duck</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>adéu, adéu-siau</strong>, goodbye</td>
<td><strong>l'anell (m.)</strong>, ring</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>admirable, admirable</strong></td>
<td><strong>l'ànima (f.)</strong>, soul</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>admirar</strong>, to admire</td>
<td><strong>l'animal (m.)</strong>, animal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>adobar</strong>, to mend, to repair</td>
<td><strong>animat -ada</strong>, lively, excited</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>adonar-se (de)</strong>, to notice, to realize, to see</td>
<td><strong>anit (passada)</strong>, last night</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>l'advocat (m.)</strong>, lawyer</td>
<td><strong>anterior, previous, earlier</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>afanyar-se (a, per)</strong>, to strive, to make an effort, to try hard (to), to hurry</td>
<td><strong>antipàtic -a</strong>, unpleasant, unlikeable, disagreeable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>anual, annual</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>afegir</strong>, to add</td>
<td><strong>l'anuncis (m.)</strong>, announcement, advertisement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>l'afèr (m.)</strong>, affair, matter</td>
<td><strong>anunciar</strong>, to announce</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>l'affirmació (f.)</strong>, affirmation, assertion</td>
<td><strong>l'any (m.)</strong>, year</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>agafar</strong>, to take (hold of), to hold, to catch, to seize</td>
<td><strong>l'anyell (m.)</strong>, lamb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>l'agència (f.)</strong>, agency, office</td>
<td><strong>apa!</strong>, come on!, hurry up!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>agradar, to please; via to like (21)</strong></td>
<td><strong>apagar</strong>, to extinguish, to put out</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>agrair</strong>, to be grateful for</td>
<td><strong>l'aparador (m.)</strong>, shop window</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>aguantar</strong>, to hold, to bear, to support; <strong>aguantar-se</strong>, to bear up</td>
<td><strong>l'àpat (m.)</strong>, meal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>aplaudir</strong>, to applaud, to clap</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>l'agulla (f.)</strong>, needle</td>
<td><strong>aprendre</strong>*, to learn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>ahir</strong>, yesterday</td>
<td><strong>aprofitar(-se de)</strong>, to take advantage of, to make use of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>l'aprovació (f.)</strong>, approval</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>apuntar</strong>, to (take a) note (of), to note down</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>aquell -a</strong>, that; <strong>pl.</strong> those</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>aquest -a</strong>, this, that; <strong>pl.</strong> these, those (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>aquí, here</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>ara</strong>, now; <strong>i ara!</strong>, (well I never!), go on!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>l'arbre (m.)</strong>, tree</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>l'argent (m.)</strong>, silver</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>l'argument (m.)</strong>, argument</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>l'arma (f.)</strong>, arm, weapon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>l'armari (m.)</strong>, cupboard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>l'arquitecte (m.)</strong>, architect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>arreglar</strong>, to arrange, to organize, to sort out</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>l'arrèix (f.)</strong>, root</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>arribar</strong>, to arrive, to come, to reach</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>l'art (m. &amp; f.)</strong>, art</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>l'article (m.)</strong>, article</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>l'ase (m.)</strong>, ass</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>assabentar-se (de)</strong>, to find out (about), to learn (of)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>l'assaig (m.)</strong>, essay; rehearsal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>assecar</strong>, to dry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>l'assegurança (f.)</strong>, insurance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>assegurar</strong>, to assure, to insure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>assegut -uda</strong>, seated, sitting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>asseure</strong>*, to seat, to set down; <strong>asseure’s</strong>, to sit down</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
l'associació (f.), association, society
l'atenció (f.), attention
atendre, to attend to
atrevir-se (a), to dare (to)
atrevit -ida, daring, bold
l'aument (m.), increase
augmentar, to increase
l'auto (m.), (motor) car
l'autobús (m.), (motor) bus
l'autocar (m.), (motor) coach
l'autor (m.), author
l'autoritat (f.), authority
avall, down(wards), low, below
avançar, to advance; to be fast (watch)
l'avantatge (m.), advantage
l'avaria (f.), breakdown
avenir-se, to be in agreement,
to get on well together, to be reconciled to
l'avi (m.), grandfather
l'àvia (f.), grandmother
aviat, soon, early
l'avinguda (f.), avenue
l'avió (m.), aeroplane
avui, today; these days

el bagul, trunk
(a) baix, below; downstairs
baixar -a, low, short; quiet
baixar, to go (come) down,
to take down; baixar de,
to get off (vehicle)
l'a bala, bullet

la biblioteca, library
el bistec, steak
el bilet, ticket
blanc -a, white
el blat, wheat, corn
blau blava, blue
el bloc, note-pad
bó [bòn], bona, good; bon dia,
good day, good morning
la boca, mouth
la bonata, goodness, kindness
bonic -a, pretty, attractive, nice
el bosc, wood(s)
la bòssa, bag, purse, handbag
la botiga, shop
el botó, button
el braç, arm
el bru, broth, soup
la brusa, blouse
brut -a, dirty
la bufanda, scarf
bufar, to blow
la bufetada, slap, hit
buit buida, empty
bullir, to boil
buscar, to look for; anar* a
buscar, to fetch
la bústia, post box
la butxaca, pocket

ca, cal, can, cals (= casa de); (followed by name of
owner or occupant), ...'s place (6)
el(s) cabell(s), hair
cabrera*, to fit, to be contained
cagar, to hunt, to shoot
cada, each, every; cadascú,
each one, everyone; cada-
scun -una, each (one)
la cadira, chair
el càfes, coffee; café
la caixa, box
calar, to put on, to wear
(shoes)
calcular, to calculate
caldre*, to be necessary, to
be right; via to need
callar, to be(come) quiet
la calor, heat; hot weather;
tenir* calor, to be (feel) hot
el cambrer, waiter
el camí, way, path, track
caminar, to walk
la camisa, shirt
el camp, field; country(side)
la campana, bell
la cançó, song
cansat -ada, tired; tiring
cantar, to sing
la cantonada, (street) corner
el canvi, change, exchange;
en canvi, on the other hand, however
canviar, to change, exchange
cap (a), towards, to
cap, no, none, any
el cap, head; top, end; al
cap de, after, ... later
capaç, capable
el capellà, priest
el capità, captain
el capital, capital
la capital, capital (city)
el capitol, chapter
la capsà, (small) box
la cara, face; de cara a, facing
caracter, character
caram! gosh!
la caravana, caravan, line
(carqueue) of vehicles
carvermell, -a, red-faced
el carbó (de pedra), coal
el cargol, snail; screw
el carnisser, butcher
carregar, to load, to burden
carreter, street; el carrer
major, high street, main street
la carrera, career, profession
la carretera, (main) road
la carta, letter; menu
el cas, case
la casa, house, home, household; firm
el casament, wedding
casar-se (amb), to marry, to get married (to)
el castell, castle
la catedral, cathedral
la catifa, carpet
cau* to fall
la causa, cause; a causa de, because of, owing to
la ceba, onion
el cel, sky
centigrad -a, centigrade
centímet, centí; peseta
centímetre, centimetre
central, central
el centre, centre
cercar, to look for, to seek
cert -a, certain; true
la cervesa, beer
la ciència, science
científic -a, scientific
el cigarret, cigarette
el cim, peak
el cinema, cinema
el cinturó, belt
la circumstància, circumstance
el cistell, basket
la cita, appointment
el ciutadà, citizen
la ciutat, city
civil, civil
clar -a, clear, light, bright; és
clar, of course, obviously
la classe, class; classroom
la clau, key
clarar, to nail, to fix
el client, la clienta, client, customer
el clima, climate
la clínica, clinic
el cobrador, conductor
cobrar, to receive payment, to cash, to charge, to be paid
el cognom, surname
cohíbit -ida, shy, timid

el coixí, cushion
la colla, group, gang
la col·lecció, collection
el col·lega, colleague
el col·legi, college, school
còm, how, as, like; còm
més (menys) . . . , the more (less) . . . ; còm que, since; còm sempre, as usual; còm si, as if, as though
la comarca, (ancient) district, region
començar, to begin, to start
el comentari, comment, commentary, remark
comercial, commercial
el comerciant, businessman
el comité, committee
comode -a, comfortable
el company, la companya, companion, friend
la companyia, company
compartir, to share
complèt -eta, complete
completar, to complete
la complicació, complication
complíc -ada, complicated
el compliment, compliment;
fer* compliments, to stand on ceremony
comprar, to buy
comprendre, to understand, to appreciate, to realize
comprovar, to check
el compte, account, bill; care; compte!, careful!, watch out!; en comptes de, instead of
comú -una, common
comunicar, to communicate, to convey, to tell
el concert, concert
la conclusió, conclusion
la condició, condition
el conductor, driver
conduir, to drive
el conegut, acquaintance
conèixer*, to know (acquaintance, recognition)
(12)
confessar, to confess
el confessor, confessor
la confiança, trust, confidence
la consciència, conscience
el consell, advice; council
consentir, to consent
la consecuència, consequence
el constipat, cold, chill
la construcció, building
construir, to build
contemporani -ària, contemporary
content -a, happy, pleased
la contesta, answer, reply
contestar, to answer, to reply
contra, against
a contracorrent, against the current, against the stream
contrari -ària, contrary, opposite; al contrari on the contrary
la contrarietat, annoyance
el contribuent, rate-payer
contribuir, to contribute
convèncer*, to convince
convenir*, to be right, proper, fitting, convenient
convertir, to convert
convidar, to invite
el conyac, brandy
el còp, blow, hit; stroke; time; dos cops, twice; un còp que, once, as soon as
la còpa, glass (for spirits, etc.); (presentation) cup
copsar, to catch, to understand
el çòr, heart
la corbata, tie
la corda, string, rope
correr*, to run, to move quickly; còrrer món, to roam the world
la correspondència, letters, correspondence
el correu, post; pl. post office, postal service
cortès -esa, polite
la cortina, curtain
la cosa, thing
el cosí, la cosina, cousin
cosir*, to sew
la còsta, coast
costar, to cost; to be difficult
el costat, side
la costella, rib; chop, cutlet
el costum, custom, habit, way
el cotó, cotton
el cotxe, car
la cova, cave; den
creixir*, to grow, to get bigger
cremar, to burn; to be hot
la creu, cross
créure*, to believe, to think
criar, to shout, to call;
cridar l’atenció (a), to attract someone’s attention
la cua, tail; queue; de cua
d’ull, askance
la cuina, kitchen
el cuir, leather
la culpa, blame; tenir* la culpa, to be to blame
la cunyada, sister-in-law
el cunyat, brother-in-law
la cura, cure; care
curt -a, short

(a) dalt, above, up(stairs), to (at) the top
damunt (de), on (top of)
darrer -a, last, recent
darréu (de), behind, after
la data, date
davant (de), in front of, before
el davantal, apron
de, of, from, about, as (2)
de debò, real, really
decent, decent
decidir, to decide; decidir-se, to make up one’s mind
la decisió, decision
declarar, to declare
defensar, to defend
deixar, to leave; to lend; + inf., to allow, to let;
deixar córrer, to leave alone, to let pass; no deixar de, not to fail to, not to omit to
demà, tomorrow; demà pas-sat, day after tomorrow
demanar, to ask for, to order; to ask, to request
el dentista, dentist
denunciar, to denounce
el dependent, shop assistant, employee
dependre, to depend
des de, from, since, for; des que, since
desprovador -a, disapproving
descansar, to rest, to relax
descobrir (p.p. descobert), to discover; to disclose
desconegut -uda, unknown
desconfiar de, to distrust
descriure*, to describe
descuidar-se (de), to forget (to), to neglect (to)
desfer*, to undo, to take apart; desfer-se de, to get rid of
desitjar, to want, to desire, to wish
el despatx, office, study
despertar, to wake (up)
les despeses, expenses
després, afterwards; després de, after; després que, after
del detall, detail
Dèu, God; Déu vos guard (formal greeting)
déure*, to Déu guard (formal greeting)
el dia, day
el diari, newspaper
el dictat, dictation
la diferència, difference
difícil, difficult, hard
la dificultat, difficulty
digne -a, worthy
dinar, to have the midday meal (lunch, dinner)
el dinar, midday meal, lunch, dinner
e l(s) diner(s), money
a dins (de), a dintre (de), inside, in
dir*, to say, to tell; dir-se, to be called; és a dir, in other words
la direcció, direction; management
el director, director, manager
dirigir, to direct, to supervise; to address
el disc, record
la disciplina, discipline
la discussió, discussion, argument

discutir, to discuss, to argue

disposar, to arrange, to prepare, to make ready

la distància, distance

distingir, to distinguish, to make out

distret -eta, amusing, entertaining

distribuir, to distribute, to deliver

el dit, finger

diversos -es, different, differing; several

divertir, to amuse; divertirse, to be amused, to enjoy oneself, to have a good time

divertit -ida, funny, amusing

dividir, to divide

doblegar, to fold (in half)

el document, document

doç -a, sweet

el doç, sweet

la dona, woman, wife

donar, to give; donar una volta, to take a stroll

doçes, well, then, so
dormir, to sleep

la dreça, short cut, path

el dret, right, law

dret -a, right, straight, upright; de dret a, straight to(wards)

la duana, customs


dubtar, to doubt

dur*, to carry, to take

durant, during, throughout, for

durar, to last

dutxar-se, to take a shower

econòmic -a, economic(al), cheap, money-saving

l'edat (f.), age

l'edició (f.), edition

l'edifici (m.), building

educar, to bring up

l'efecte (m.), effect; em fa l'efecte que, it strikes me that, I think that

l'èina (f.), tool

elegant, smart, elegant

l'embolec (m.), muddle, scrape, tricky situation

embolicar, to wrap up

l'emoció (f.), emotion, excitement

empassar-se, to swallow

l'empenya (f.), push, shove

empinar, to annoy

l'empleat (m.), l'empleada (f.) employee, clerk

empentar-se, to take (carry) away

emprendre, to undertake, to set off on

l'empresta (f.), undertaking, firm

en, in, at, on, to (21)

l'ensopiment (m.), dreariness, dullness

tenir, to understand; entendre's en, to be knowledgeable about, to be good at

tenir, to be stubborn

l'entrada (f.), entrance; (admission) ticket

entrar (a), to enter, to go in (to), to come in(to)

entre, among, between

els entremesos, hors d'œuvres

l'enúgia, annoyance

enutjós -osa, annoying, troublesome

enviar, to send

èp!, hey!

equivocar-se, to be wrong, mistaken

errar, to wander, to go astray, to go wrong

l'error (m.), mistake, error

l'esbufèc (m.), pant, snort

l'escaleta (f.), stairs, staircase; ladder; scale

escandalitzar-se, to be shocked, horrified

esclarissat -ada, thin

escollir, to choose, to select

escoltar, to listen (to)

escombrar, to sweep

les escombraries, rubbish, garbage
escriure*, to write
esdevenir*, to become
l'esforç (m.), effort
esgarrifar, to horrify, to
alarm
l'església (f.), church
esmolar, to sharpen
esmorzar, to have breakfast
l'esmorzar (m.), breakfast
l'espatlla (f.), shoulder
espatllar, to spoil, to damage, to
break, to ruin
especial, special
l'espectacle (m.), spectacle, to
show
esperar, to wait (for), to
expect, to hope
espès -essa, thick
espoliar, to plunder, to loot
esquerrer -a, left
essé (ser)*, to be (11, 12)
l'estació (f.), station
estacionar, to park
estafar, to swindle
estalviar, to save (up), to
spare
estar*, to be (11, 12); estar
bé, to be well, to be all
good; estar-se, to stay;
estar-se de, to refrain from,
to miss (doing something)
l'estàtua (f.), statue
estendre, to stretch, to hold
out; to hang out (washing)
estimar, to love, to like;
estimar-se més, to prefer

estirar, to pull, to stretch, to
drag
l'estómac (m.), stomach
l'estònia (f.), (short) time, while
estranger -a, foreign(er); a
l'estranger, abroad
estany -a, strange
estrènyer (p.p. estrenat), to
tighten, to narrow, to
squeeze
estret -a, narrow, tight
l'estudi (m.), study
l'estudiant (m. & f.), student
estudiar, to study
l'estufa (f.), stove, heater
esverar, to alarm, to shock
evident, evident
l'examen (m.), exam(ination)
l'excèpció (f.), exception
exclamar, to exclaim
l'excursionista (m. & f.),
hiker
l'exemplar (m.), copy (of
book)
l'exemple (m.), example
exiliar, to exile
l'èxit (m.), success
l'experiència (f.), experience
l'explicació (f.), explanation
explicar, to explain
exposar, to display, to put
on show
l'exposició (f.), exhibition
expressar, to express
extens -a, extensive, long

la fàbrica, factory
la facció, feature
fàcil, easy
la falda, skirt
faltar, to be missing, needed;
vía to need; faltar a, to
break (word, etc.); trobar
a faltar, to find missing,
to miss
la fama, fame, reputation
la família, family
la farmàcia, chemist's shop
el favor, favour
la fe, faith, belief
la fèblesa, weakness
la febre, fever; temperature
la feina, work, job
felic, happy
fèr*, to do, to make (and
numerous idioms); fa feia,
ago (26); fèr de, to work
as, to act as; fèr-se, to
become
fèrm -a, firm, secure, steady,
tight, solid
la festa, festival, holiday,
day off; party; fèr* (tenir*)
festa, to have a day off; la
festa major, annual festival
el fèt, fact; de fèt, in fact;
fèt i fèt, when all is said
and done
fi fina, fine, thin, delicate,
sharp, of (good) quality
la fi, end; en fi, per fi, in the
end, finally
fiar-se de, to trust
ficar, to put in(to)
el fil, thread
el fill, son; pl. children
la filla, daughter
final, final
el final, end
la finestra, window
fins (a), as far as, until; fins
a quin punt, how (far); fins
i tot, even; fins que, until
fixar-se en, to notice, to look
at, to pay heed to
la flor, flower
el foc, fire; light (for cigaret-
ette)
fondre*(s) (p.p. fos), to melt
el fons, bottom
la font, fountain, spring
(a) fora (de), outside, out,
away; except for; fora . . .,
an end to . . ., no more . . .
el foraster, la forastera,
stranger; person from a
different region
força, very, a lot, a good deal
la força, (physical) strength,
force
forçar, to force
formar, to form
el formatge, cheese
la forquilla, fork
fort -a, strong; hard
la fortuna, fortune, good
fortune
fos -a, dark
la foto (fotografia), photo
franc -a, frank
la frase, sentence
fré -a, cold; tenir* fré -a, to be (feel) cold
el fré -d, cold; cold weather
fregar, to fry
frésc -a, cool
la frontera, frontier
la fruta, fruit
fugir*, to flee, to run away
el full, sheet of paper
la fulla, leaf
el fum, smoke
la funció, function; discharge of duty, employment, etc.
funcionar, to function, to work
el fuster, carpenter
el futbol, football (game)
gaire, (not) much; pl. not many
gairebé, almost; gairebé no, scarcely, hardly
la galeria, gallery; pl. shopping arcade
la gana, hunger; pl. desire; tenir* gana, to be hungry; tenir* ganes de, to want to
el ganivet, knife
el garatge, garage
gastar, to consume, to use
up, to wear out; to spend
el gat, cat
el gegant, giant
el gel, ice
gen (de), none (at all), any (at all); no gens, not at all
la gent, people
el gerent, manager
el germà, brother
la germana, sister
el gest, gesture, movement
la ginestra, gin
girar, to turn, to spin; girar-se, to turn round
el goig, joy, pleasure; fer* goig, to look nice, to appeal
el gos, dog
gosar, to dare
el got, glass
el govern, government
el gra, grain
la gràcia, wit, charm; fer* gràcia, to be amusing, charming
gracies, thank you
graciós -osa, funny, witty, amusing
gran, big, large, great; elder, eldest
el grau, degree, grade
greu, serious; saber* greu, to cause regret or reluctance, to make sorry, via to be sorry
gréu, groga, yellow
grots grossa, big, large
gruixut -uda, thick
el grup, group
guanyar, to win, to overcome; to earn; to reach
guardar, to keep
el guardia, guard (person)
la guardia, guard
la guerra, war
el guia, guide
la guia, guide-book; la guia telefònica, telephone directory
la guitarra, guitar
el gust, taste, flavour; liking, pleasure; venir* de gust, via to fancy, to feel like
l'habitació (f.), room
l'habitant (m. & f.), inhabitant
haver*, to have (auxiliary verb) (10); haver* de, to have to, must (9); heus aquí, here is; hi ha, etc., there is, there are, etc.
l'herba (f.), grass
hi = preposition + pronoun (17)
la història, history; story
hola, hello
l'hóme (m.), man
honorable, honourable
horat -ada, honest, honourable
l'hora (f.), hour, time; d'hóra, early
l'horari (m.), timetable
l'horitzó (m.), horizon
horrorós -osa, horrible
l'hort (m.), vegetable garden
l'hospital (m.), hospital
i, and; i ara!, (well I) never!, go on!
la idea, idea
l'idioma (m.), language
ignorar, to ignore, to be ignorant of
igual, equal, same
imaginar(-se), to imagine
la imitació, imitation
la impaciència, impatience
impacient, impatient
impacientar-se, to grow impatient
la importància, importance
important, important
importar, to be of importance, to matter
l'impost (m.), tax
la impressió (f.), impression
inclusiu -iva, inclusive
increíble, incredible
industrial, industrial; l'industrial (m.), industrialist
a l'inrevés, the other (wrong)
way round
insistir, to insist, to persist
l'instant (m.), instant, moment
intentar (de), to try (to)
l'interprèt (m.), interpreter
inteligent, intelligent
interessant, interesting, of interest
interessar, to (be of) interest; interessar-se en (per), to take an interest in
inútil, useless
irreflexiu -iva, unthinking, spontaneous

ja, already, now; any (no) longer (6); ja que, since
el jardi, garden
el jardíner, gardener
el joc, game, play; set
la joguina, toy
jove, young
jugar, to play
junt -a, together
la junta, meeting; council, board
just -a, fair, just; in the right measure
el jutge, judge

la lent, lens
el llac, lake
el lladre, thief, robber, burglar
la llana, wool
llancar, to throw
el llapis, pencil
la llar, hearth, home
llarg -a, long
la llargada, length
la llàstima, pity

llavors, then
llegrir, to read
el llegum, vegetable
la llei, law; de bona llei, true, of proper quality
llençar, to throw out, to throw away
la llengua, tongue, language;
males llengües, gossip
llèst -a, quick, bright, sharp; ready
la llèct, milk
la lletra, writing, print, letter;
words (of song)
llevar, to lift, to raise
llevar de, except for, apart from
la llibertat, liberty, freedom
el llibre, book
la llibreta, (loose-leaf) notebook
la llicó, lesson
la llimona, lemon
la llista, list
el llit, bed
la lliura, pound; la lliura esterlina, pound sterling
el lluc, place
llugar, to rent, to hire
el llup, wolf
el lluminant, shine, brilliance
èl llum, lamp, (means of) light
la llum, light
lluny, far; al lluny, in the distance

la mà, hand
la mà d’obra, work-force, labour
madur -a, ripe, mature
el magatzem, store, warehouse
mai, never, ever
major, bigger, biggest; major, main
la majoria, majority, most
mal, badly
mal -a, bad
el mal, bad, evil; fèr* mal, to hurt
malalt -a, ill
la malaltia, illness
fèr* malbé, to spoil, to damage, to break
el maldecap, worry, problem, headache
la malèg, suitcase, bag
mamà, mother (familiar)
manar, to order, to command
mancat -ada de, lacking in
la mandra, idleness, lack of energy, disinclination
manejar, to handle
la manera, manner, way; de manera que, so, so that
la maniobra, manœuvre
el mapa, map
la màquina, machine; la màquina fotogràfica, camera
el mar, sea
marcar, to mark, to show; to score
la mare, mother
marejar-se, to be (feel) seasick, to be (feel) travel-sick
el marit, husband
marró, brown
marxar, to go away, to leave
la masia, farmhouse
el masó, farmer
massa, too, too much, too many
mateix -a, same; -self
el material, material
el matí, morning; de boc matí, early in the morning
màxim -a, maximum, greatest
el màxim, maximum
la medalla, medal
la medalleta, medallion
la medicina, medicine
la mèitat, (a) half
el membre, member
la memòria, memory; de memòria, by heart
la mena, sort, kind
el menjadar, dining room
menjar, to eat
el(s) menjar(s), food
menor, smaller, smallest;
menor d’edat, minor, under age
mental, mental
la mentida, lie
mentre, while
mentrestant, meanwhile
el menú, menu
menys, less, fewer, least
merèixer (p.p. merescut), to
deserve, to merit
eles més, month
més, more, most; més aviat, rather
e'l metall, metal
e'l metge, doctor
e'l metre, metre
e'l metró, underground rail-
way, tube
una mica, a little; slightly, just
la mida, measurement
e'l mig, middle
mig mitja, half
mil, a thousand
e'l milè, thousand
e'l millió, million
millor, better, best
e'l ministre, minister
la minyona, maid
mirar, to look (at)
el mitja, stocking
el mitjà, means
mitjà -ana, middle, average
la mitjana, midnight
e'l mitjà, sock
e'l moble, piece of furniture; pl. furniture
modern -a, modern
moftar-se de, to make fun of,
to poke fun at, to scoff at
molestar, to annoy, to upset
e'l molí, mill
molt, very, a lot
molt -a (de), much, a lot of;
pl. many
el moment, moment; d'aquí
a un moment, any time
now, shortly; de moment,
for the moment, at present
el món, world
la moral, morality, morals
morè [moreno] morena, dark
(hair, skin); sunburnt
morir (p.p. mort), to die; to
faide (light)
la mort, death
el motiu, reason, motive
la moto, motor-cycle
el motòr, motor, engine
mòrre*, to move
mudar, to change
la muntanya, mountain
el museu, museum
nacional, national
la nata, cream
natural, natural
la nebòda, niece
el nebot, nephew
necessitar, to need
negar, to deny; negar-se a, to
refuse to
el negoci, business, deal
negre -a, black; red (wine)
néixer*, to be born; to ori-
ginate, to rise

el nen, little boy; pl. child-
ren
la nenca, little girl
net -a, clean, clear
el nét, grandson
la nétia, grand-daughter
la netedat, cleanliness, clean-
liness
netejar, to clean
le neu, snow
ni, neither, nor; ni que, not
even if; ni (tan sols), not
even; ni un -a, not a single
(one)
ningú, no one, nobody
la nit, night; de nit(s), at
night
no, no, not; no... pas, not
(13)
el noi, boy
la noia, girl
el nom, name; reputation
el nombre, number (quantity,
total)
només, only, just; només que,
if only
el nord, north
normal, normal
la noça, obstruction; fer*
noça, to be in the way, to
be a nuisance
notar, to notice
la notícia, (piece of) news;
pl. news
nou, nova, new
el número, number

q, q bé, or; q... q..., either... or...
obert -a, open
l'objecte (m.), object
oblidar(-se de), to forget
l'obra (f.), work, job; (build-
ing) site; la bona obra,
good deed, good turn
l'obrèr (m.), worker, work-
man
obrir*, to open
observar, to observe
obtenir*, to obtain
l'ocasió (f.), occasion, op-
portunity, chance
l'ocell (m.), bird
ofegar, to drown, to choke,
to asphyxiate
oferir (p.p. ofert), to offer
l'oficial (m.), official, officer
l'oficina (f.), office
qi?, is that not so? (4)
l'oli (m.), oil
l'olla (f.), cooking pot
l'olor (m.), scent, aroma,
smell
l'ombra (f.), shade, shadow
omplir*, to fill
on, where; a on, where,
whither
l'oncele (m.), uncle
l'opinió (f.), opinion
l'or (m.), gold
l'ordre (m.), order
l'orella (f.), ear, hearing
qfe òr/en/a, orphan
organitzar, to organize
oriental, oriental, eastern
l’ou (m.), egg

el pa, bread; loaf
la paciència, patience
la paella, paella; frying pan
pagar, to pay (for)
el pagès, countryman, farmer, peasant
la pàgina, page
el país, country
el paisatge, landscape, countryside, scenery
el palau, palace
el paletà, bricklayer
la palla, straw; chaff, padding
els pantalons, trousers
el pany, lock
papà, father (familiar)
el paper, paper; role
el paquet, packet, parcel
la parada, stop
parar, to stop; to prepare, to lay (table), to pitch (tent)
la paraula, word
el parc, park
el pare, father
el parell, pair, couple
la parella, couple (people)
el parell, la parella, relative
la parella, wall
la parla, speech, language
parlar, to speak, to talk
la part, part, share

partir, to divide, to share; to depart; a partir de, (starting) from
el partit, game, match; (political) party
(no ...) pas, not (13)
el pas, pace, step
la passada, pace, step; la mala passada, nasty trick
el passadís, corridor, passage
passar, to pass; to happen; to spend (time); to go (through, across); passar de, to exceed; passi-ho bé, good day, goodbye
passat -ada, last
el passeig, walk, stroll; avenue
passejar(-se), to stroll, to go for a walk
la pastilla, tablet
la patata, potato
el pati, courtyard, patio
patir, to suffer; to be uneasy, to worry
la pau, peace
la peça, piece, item
la pedra, stone
pegar, to strike a blow
el peix, fish
pelar, to peel, to skin; un fred que peça, bitterly cold
la pel·lícula, film
la pena, penalty; sorrow, trouble; pity; a penes, hardly, scarcely

la penitència, penance
pensar, to think; + inf., to intend; pensar en (a + inf.), to remember; pensar-s’hi, to hesitate
la pensió, boarding house
per, by, for, through, along; in order to (21); per a, for; to (21); per (molts) ... que, however ... (25); per què, why; per tal de, in order to; per tant, therefore, so, consequently
la pèra, pear
perbocar, to vomit, to be sick
perdonar, to pardon, to forgive
perdre, to lose, to miss, to waste
la pèrduda, loss
el periodista, journalist
permetre (p.p. permés), to permit, to allow; permetre’s, to go as far as to, to take the liberty of
el permís, permission, leave, permit
el pernil, ham
però, but, however
perquè, because; so that, in order that (25)
la persona, person; pl. people
persuadir, to persuade
el pes, weight
pesar, to weigh
pesat -ada, heavy; dull, boring, tedious
el pescador, fisherman
la pesseta, peseta
petit -a, small; younger, youngest
el petó, kiss; fer* un petó, to give a kiss
el peu, foot
el piano, piano
picant, spicy, hot
el pijama, pyjamas
la pila, pile, heap; large amount
la pilota, ball
pintar, to paint
la pintura, painting
el pis, storey, flat, apartment
pitjor, worse, worst
el pla, plain
la plaça, square
la planta, plant
el plat, dish, plate
la platja, beach, sea-side
plau, to please; si us plau, please
ple plena, full; covered
plegar, to fold; to stop work; tot plegar, all in all, all together
la ploma, pen
ploure*, to rain
la població, population
el poble, village, town
pobre -a, poor
poc, (a) little, un-, not very
poc -a, a little, not much; 
pl. a few, not many
un poc, a little; a poc a poc, 
little by little, slowly
poder*, to be able, can (7, 12)
el poder, power, authority
el poema, poem
la poesia, poetry; poem
el poeta, poet
el policia, policeman
el politic, politician
la política, politics; policy
el pollastre, chicken
la pòl·la, dust
la poma, apple
la por, fear; tenir* por (de), 
to be afraid (of), to fear
el port, port
la porta, door
portar, to carry, to take, to 
bring; to wear; portar-se, 
to behave, to act
el porter, caretaker, janitor
la porteria, caretaker's wife
posar, to put, to put on; 
to impose; to pour; posar 
al dia; to bring up to 
date; posar-se, to become; 
posar-se a, to begin to
la posició, position
possible, possible
les postres, sweet, dessert
potser, perhaps
el prat, meadow, field
precís -isa, precise
prefixat -ada, prearranged
pregar, to pray; to beg, to 
request, to ask
la pregunta, question
preguntar, to ask; pregunta-
tar-se, to wonder
el premi, prize, reward
prendre*, to take
preparar, to prepare
present, present; tenir* pre-
resent, to remember, to bear in mind
presentar, to present, to in-
troduce; presentar-se, to appear
el president, president
la presó, prison
la pressa, haste, speed; cór-
rer* pressa, to be urgent; 
de pressa, quickly, in a hurry; tenir* (portar) 
pressa, to be in a hurry
el prèu, price
primer, first, before
principal, main, principal
el principi, principle
probable, probable, likely
el problema, problem
procedir, to proceed
proclamar, to proclaim, to declare
el professor, la professora, 
teacher
el profit, profit, benefit
el progrés, progress
prohibir, to prohibit, to for-
bid

354 Catalan

el promès (la promesa), 
fiancée(e)
la promesa, promise
prometre (p.p. promès), to 
promise
pronunciar, to pronounce, to 
utter
(a) prop (de), near (to)
propí pròpia, own
proposar, to propose; pro-
posar-se (de), to try to, to 
have in mind, to aim to, 
to set out to
el propòsit, intention, aim, 
plan
la província, province
pròxim -a, next
públic -a, public
el públic, public, audience
publicar, to publish
pujar, to rise, to go (come) 
up, to carry up; pujar a, to 
climb (up, on), to get on
el pulmó, lung
el punt, point; estar* a punt 
de, to be about to
la punta, tip, point, end
de puntetes, on tiptoe

el quadre, picture
el (la) qual, els (les) quals, 
who, which, etc. (15)
qualsevol (pl. qualsevol), 
any, whichever
quan, when
quant -a, how much; pl. how
many; uns quants, uns 
quantes, a few
el quart, quarter
que, who, which, etc. (15); 
that; than; how
què, what?; that, which, etc. 
(15)
quedar(-se), to stay, to be; 
to agree; to keep; via to 
have left
quelcom, something
la qüestió, question, matter
qui, who?; who, which, etc. 
(15)
el quilogram, kilogramme
el quilòmetre, kilometre
quin -a, which, what (14)
la quinzena, fortnight
la quóta, subscription
la ració, ration, helping, 
serving
el racó, corner
la ràdio, radio
la rambla, boulevard
la raó, reason, argument;
donar raó de, to account 
for; tenir* raó, to be right
ràpid -a, quick, fast
rar -a, rare
la rata, rat
la ratlla, line, stripe
rebre*, to receive
recitar, to recite
recollir*, to pick up, to 
gather, to collect
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Catalan</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>el secretari, la secretària,</td>
<td>secret</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>la seàda, silk</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>el segell, stamp</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>el segle, century</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>segons, according to (what, how)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>seguint, following, next</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>de seguida, immediately, straight away</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>seguir, to follow, to continue</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>seguits -ides, consecutive, one after the other</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>seguir -a, sure, certain</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>la semblança, similarity, resemblance</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>semblant, similar, alike</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>semblar, to seem, to appear; via to think</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sempre, always; com sempre, as usual</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sempre que, as long as, provided that</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sense -a, whole, complete</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sense, without</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sentir, to feel; to hear; to be sorry</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>el sentit, sense, meaning, direction</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>el seny, wisdom, discernment, sense of proportion</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>senyalar, to mark, to indicate</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>el senyor, (gentle)man, sir, Mr.; els senyors, Mr. and Mrs.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>la senyora, lady, wife, madam, Mrs.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>la senyorqa, young lady, miss</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>senzill -a, simple</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>separar, to separate</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ser (ésser)*, to be (11, 12)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>seriós -s, serious</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>la serra, mountain ridge, range</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>servir, to serve, to be of use; fèr* servir, to use</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>la setmana, week; la setmana entrant, next week</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>seure*, to sit down, to be seated</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>si, if, whether; si us plau, please</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sí, yes; sí (que), certainly</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>el silenci, silence</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>la simpatia, congeniality, niceness</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>simpàtic -a, nice, pleasant, likeable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sinó, sinó que, but (28)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>la situació, situation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sobre, on, upon, on to, on top of, over</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>el sobre, envelope</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>el sobresalt, surprise, sudden shock</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sobretot, especially, above all</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>de sòbte, suddenly</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>la societat, society</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>el sofà, sofa</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sofrir (p.p. sofert), to suffer</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>la sògrira, mother-in-law</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>el sògre, father-in-law</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
sol -a, alone, single
el sol, sun
solament, only
el soldat, soldier
sol·ler, to be wont (accustomed), via usually
sol·licitar, to request, to call for
solter -a, single, unmarried, bachelor, spinster
la solució, solution
la sònia, sleepiness; tenir* sònia, to be (feel) sleepy, tired
la sopa, soup
sopar, to have the evening meal (supper, dinner)
el sopar, evening meal, dinner, supper
el soroll, sound, noise
soprendre, to surprise, to take by surprise
la sorpresa, surprise
la sòrria, sand
la sort, luck, good luck
sortir*, to go (come) out, to turn out, to leave
sospitar, to suspect
el sostre, ceiling
sota (de), under, beneath, below
el sòu, salary
sovint, often
suat -ada, sweating, in a sweat, hot and bothered
submergir, to submerge, to immerse
la substància, substance, goodness
el suc, juice, gravy
la sucursal, branch (of business)
el sud, south
sugerir, to suggest
la suma, sum, amount
suposar, to suppose
suspendre, to suspend; to fail
el tabac, tobacco
tal, such (a); un tal, a certain; tal com, just as, just like
tallar, to cut
el taller, workshop
també, also, too, as well
tampoc, neither
tan, so, as; tan bon punt, as soon as
tancar, to close
tant -a, so much, as much; pl., so many, as many; de tant en tant, from time to time, occasionally, every now and then; i tant!, indeed!, definitely so!; per tant, consequently, therefore, so; tant de bò (que), if only
el tap, stopper, cork
la tapa, cover, lid
tard -a, late; fer* tard, to be late; tard o d'hora, sooner or later
la tarda, afternoon
tardà -ana, late
tardar a, to delay (in), to be a long time (doing)
là targeta, card, visiting card
la tassa, cup, cupful
tastar, to taste, to try (food)
taujà -ana, naive, simple-minded
la taula, table
el te, tea
el teatre, theatre
el tèdi, tedium, boredom, dullness
el telèfon, telephone
telefonar, to telephone
la televisió, television
el tema, subject, theme
la temperatura, temperature
el temps, time; weather
la tenda, tent
tenir*, to have (and numerous idioms)
el tercer, third
la terrassa, earth, land; el terra, ground, floor
la terrassa, area for chairs and tables outside bar, hotel, etc.
el terrat, flat roof, rooftop
el testimoni, witness
la tia, aunt
típic -a, typical
tirar, to pull, to draw; to push; to throw, to shoot (and numerous idioms)
les tisores, scissors
el toc, touch; striking, ringing
tocar, to touch; to play (music); to fall to one's turn
el tomàquet, tomato
tombar, to turn
la tonada, tune
el torn, turn
tornar, to return, to go (come) back; to give back, to put back; tornar a... to... again; tornar-se, to become
el tornavís, screwdriver
la torre, tower, steeple; chalet
la tòs, cough
tot, everything
tot -a, all, whole, every; pl., all; quite, completely; del tot, completely; totes dòs, totes dues, both
total, total
tothòm, everyone, everybody
tractar, to treat, to have dealings with; tractar de, to deal with
travessar, to go through (across), to cross
el treball, work, job
treballar, to work
temolar, to tremble, to shake
el tren, train		
trencar, to break
la vegada, time; a vegades, de vegades, sometimes; d’una vegada, una vegada per tôtes, once and for all

el veí, la veina, neighbour
vell -a, old
la venda, sale
vendre*, to sell
venir*, to come
el vent, wind
verd -a, green
la vergonya, shame, embarrassment
la veritat, truth
vermell -a, red
el vers, line of poetry
el vespre, evening
vestir, to dress
le veu, the voice
veure*, to see; a veure, vejam, let’s see, I wonder; es veu que, it is evident that
no tenir* res a veure amb, to have nothing to do with; pel que es veu, evidently, apparently; vêt aquí, here is; veure de + inf., to see to

el vi, wine
la via, way, track
el viatge, journey; el viatge de tornada, return journey
el viatger, traveller
el viatjant, travelling salesman
viatjar, to travel

la volta, turn; walk, stroll; time
la voluntat, will, will power
(a la) vora (de), near, near to
votar, to vote

el xai, lamb
xerrar, to chat
el xicot, boy
la xicota, girl
ximple, silly, simpleton
la xocolata, chocolate

zero, zero, nil
to abandon, abandonar
above, de, sobre
about, de, sobre
above to, estar* a punt de
abroad, a l’estranger
to accompany, acompanyar
to according to, segons
to account, el compte
to achieve, aconseguir
to acknowledge, reconèixer*
to across, a través de
to act (behave), portar-se
to actor, l’actor (m.), l’actriu (f.)
to address, l’adreça (f.)
to advantage, l’avantatge (m.)
to advice, el consell
to affair, l’asf (m.), l’assumpte (m.), la qüestió
to be afraid (of), tenir* pór (de), tèmer
after, després de; després que
afternoon, la tarda
afterwards, després
again, de nou, un altre cop; via tornar a; never again, mai més
age, l’edat (f.); to be of age, ésser* major d’edat
ago, fa, feia (26)
to agree, estar* d’acord; quedar
all, tot -a; all in all, tot plegat
to allow, permetre, deixar
almost, gairebé
alone, sol -a
along, per
already, ja
also, també
although, encara que
always, sempre
among(st), entre
amount, la quantitat
amusing, divertit -ida; to be amusing, fer* gràcia and, i
to be angry, enfadar-se, enutjar-se, empipar-se
to announce, anunciar
to be annoyed, enfadar-se, enutjar-se, empipar-se
annoying, enutjós -osa
another, un -a altre -a
to answer, contestar, respondre
any, (2), algun -a; qualsevol;
gens de; (after negative) cap
anyone, algú; (after negative) ningú
anything, qualsevol cosa;
(after negative) res
to appear, semblar; presentar-se
to applaud, aplaudir
apprentice, l’aprenent (m.), l’aprenentça (f.)
to approve of, aprovar
architect, l’arquitecte (m.)
to argue, discutir
argument, la discussió
arm, el braç
army, l’exèrcit (m.)
to arrive, arribar
article, l’article (m.)
as, tan; com; com a; de;
com que (20, 21); as...
as, tan ... com; as far as,
fins (a); as if, as though,
com si; as long as, mentre,
sempre que, amb que; as
much (many) ... as, tant
-a (tants -es) ... com; as
soon as, tot seguit que,
així que, tan bon punt
to ask, preguntar; demandar
to ask for, demanar
association, l’associació (f.)
to assure, assegurar
at, a; at all (with negative), gens
at least, almenys
to attend, assistir a
audience, el públic
aunt, la tia
autobiography, l’autobiografia (f.)
away, (a) fora; to go away,
marxar, anar-se’n*
back, l’esquena (f.)
bad, dolent -a, mal -a
badly, malament, mal (26)
bag, la bòssa, el sac
baker, el forner
balcony, el balcó
ball-point, el bolígraf
bank, el banc
bathroom, la cambra de bany
to be, ésser (ser)*, estar* (11, 12, 19)
beach, la platja
beam, la biga
be to bear, aguantar
beard, la barba
because, perquè
to become, esdevenir*, posar-se, tornar-se, fer-se* (19)
beer, la cervesa
before, abans; abans de, abans que
to beg (request), pregar
to begin, començar, posar-se (a)
on ...’s behalf, de part de
to behave, portar-se
behind, darrere (de)
to believe, creure*
to belong to, ésser* de
best, better, millor; més b (bona); més bé
between, entre
beyond, més enllà (de)
bicycle, la bicicleta
big, gran; grós grossa
bill, el compte, la factura
bird, l’ocell (m.)
a bit, una mica
black, negre -a
to blame (adj.), culpable

to block up, tapar

blouse, la brusa
to blow, bufar
blue, blau blava
boat, el vaixell, la barca
to boil, bullir
boiling, bullent
bone, l’os (m.)
book, el llibre
to be born, néixer*
boss, l’amo (m.)
both, tots dos, totes dues; ambdós -dues
to bother, amoinar
bottle, l’ampolla (f.)
bottom, el fons
box, la caixa, la caps
boy, el noi
branch, la branca; la sucursal
brandy, el conyac
bread, el pa
to break, trencar; (promise, etc.) faltar a; to break down, tenir* una averia
breakfast, l’esmorzar (m.); to have breakfast, esmorzar
bricklayer, el paletà
bridge, el pont
to bring, portar, dur*; to bring up, educar
brother, el germà
brother-in-law, el cunyat
brown, marró
to brush, raspallar
to build, construir

to burst into tears, rompre a
plorar
bus, l’autobús (m.)
business, el comerç, el negocí,
 l’assumpte (m.); la qües-
tió; that business about . . . ,
allò de . . .
but, però, sinó (28)
butcher, el carnisser

to button (up), corder
to buy, comprar
by, per; de (12); amb (trans-
port); prop de (near)
café, el càfed to call, cridar; (meeting)
citar; to be called, dir-se*
to calm down (to be quiet),
estar* quièt -a
camera, la màquina (fotogràfica)
can (to be able), poder*;
saber* (7, 12)
capable, capaç
capital (city), la capital;
(funds) el capital
captain, el capità
car, el cotxe, l’auto (m.)
card, la carta; postcard, la
postal; visiting card, la
targeta
carefully, amb compte, amb
cura
caretaker, el porter; care-
taker’s wife, la portèra
to carry, portar, dur*
to carry on, seguir (22)
case, el cas; suitcase, la
mala
ta
castle, el castell
cat, el gat
to catch, agafar; to catch up
with, aconseguir
cathedral, la catedral
ceiling, el sostre
census, el cens
cent, el cèntim
centimetre, el centímetre
central, central
centre, el centre

ceremony: to stand on cere-
mony, fer* compliments
certain, cert -a, segur -a;
a certain, un tal
chair, la cadira
champagne, el xampany
to change, canviar
chapter, el capítol
to charge, cobrar; to take
charge of, encarregar-se de
to chat, xerrar
cheap, barat -a, econòmic -a
to check, comprovar
cheerful, alegré
chicken, el pollastre
children, el nois, els nens;
(sons and daughters) els
fills
to choose, triar, escollir
Christmas, Nadal
church, l’església (f.)
cigarette, el cigarrèt
cinema, el cinema
city, la ciutat
class, classroom, la classe
clean, net -a
clear, clar -a
clerk, l’empleat (m.), el de-
pendent
to climb, pujar (a)
clock, el relòtge
to close, tancar
clothes, la roba
cloud, el núvol
coast, la còsta
coffee, el càfed
cold, el fred; fred -a; (chill)
el constipat; to be cold
(weather), fer* fred (23);
to be (feel) cold, tenir* fred
collar, el col
colleague, el col·lega
to collect, cobrar
college, el col·legi
colour, el color
to come, venir*; to come in,
entrar, passar; come on!,
apa!, au!; to come out,
sortir*; to come up, pujar
committee, el comitè
common, comú -una
commonplace, el lloc comú
company, la companyia
compass, la brúixola
to complain, queixar-se
complaint, la queixa
complication, la complicació
to depend (on), depend* (de)
to deposit, dipositar
to desire, desitjar; tenir*
ganes (de)
detail, el detall
to die, morir (p.p. mort)
difference, la diferència
difficult, difícil
dining room, el menjador
direction, la direcció
dirty, brut -a
disagreeable, antipàtic -a
disaster, el desastre
discount, el descòmpte
to discover, descobrir (p.p.
descobert)
to discuss, discutir
discussion, la discusió
disguised, disfressat -ada
dish, el plat
to distribute, distribuir
district, el barri
to do, fer*
doctor, el metge
dog, el gos
door, la porta
doubt, el dubte; without
doubt, sens dubte
to doubt (whether), dubtar
(que); to have doubts about,
dubtar de
down, avall
dozen, la dotzena
drawer, el calaix
to dress, vestir; to get dressed,
vestír-se
drink, la beguda
to drink, beure*
drop, la gota
to drop, deixar caure
dry, sec -a
to dry, eixugar, assecar
duck, el duc
during, durant
dust, la pòls
each, cada; each one, cadascú
(pron.), cadascun -a (adj.);
each other, l’un -a a
l’altre -a
early, d’hora, aviat, de bcn
matí
to earn, guanyar
easy, fàcil
to eat, menjar
effort, l’esforç (m.); to make
an effort (to), afanyar-se
(a, per)
egg, l’ou (m.)
empty, buit buida
dead, la fi, el final; el fi (aim,
object)
enemy, l’enemic (m.), l’enemiga
(f.)
to enjoy oneself, divertir-se
enormous, enorme
enough, prou, bastant
to enter, entrar (a)
entrance, l’entrada (f.)
envelope, el sobre
even, fins i tot; encara; not
even, ni tan sols; ni que(25)
evening, el vespre
ever, mai
every, cada; tots tots
everybody, everyone, tothom
everything, tot, tot el que
evidently, es veu que...
exactly, en punt
examination, l’examen (m.)
example, l’exemple (m.)
exception, l’excepció (f.)
to exchange, canviar
exercise, l’exercici (m.)
exhibition, l’exposició (f.)
expenses, les despeses
expensive, car -a
experience, l’experiència (f.),
la pràctica
to explain, explicar
explanation, l’explicació (f.)
extensive, extens -a
extraordinary, extraordinari
-ària
eye, l’ull (m.)

fact, el fet; in fact, de fet
not to fail to ... , no deixar de
dear (hair, etc.), ros rossa;
just -a
to fall, caure*
to fall out, renyir
family, la família
famous, famós -osa
far, far away, lluny; as far
as, fins a

farm, farmhouse, la masia,
el mas
farmer, el masover; el pagès
father, el pare
father-in-law, el sogre
to fear, tenir* pòr de, témer
feast, la festa
to feel, sentir; to feel well,
trobar-se bé
festival, la festa, la diada
to fetch, anar* a buscar
fever, la febre
few, pocs poques; a few, uns
quant, unes quantes
fewer, menys
fiancé(e), el promès, la promessa
field, el camp
finally, per fi, a la fi
to find, trobar

to finish, acabar; enllestir; to
finish work, plegar
fire, el foc
fim, ferm -a
first, primer -a
fisherman, el pescador
to fit, cabre*
flavour, el gust
floor, el tèrra
’flu, la grip
fog, la boira, la boirassa
to fold, plegar, doblegar
to follow, seguir
following, següent
food, el(s) menjar(s)
foot, el peu

football, el futbol; football
ground, el camp de futbol
footprint, la petjada
for, per, per a (21); cap a;
durant; for oneself, pel seu
compte
foreign, foreigner, estranger
-a
to forget, oblidar, oblidar-se
de; to forget to ... , des-
cuidar-se de
fortnight, la quinzena
fortune, la fortuna
fountain, la font
frank, franc -a
free, lliure
freshly, de nou
friend, l’amic (m.), l’amiga
(f.); el company, la company
from, de, des (de), de...
estant
in front of, davant (de), per
davant de
frontier, la frontera
full, ple plaça
funny, divertit -ida
furniture, els mobles

game, el partit; el joc

garage, el garatge
to gather, collir*, recollir*;
I gather that ... , tinc entès
que ...
gentleman, el senyor

gesture, el gest
to get off (out of) (vehicle),
baixar de; to get on
(vehicle), pujar a; to get
up, aixecer-se, llevar-se
girl, la nolla, la xicota; little
girl, la nena
to give, donar; (as present)
regalar; to give back, tornar

glass, el got; el vas; (for
spirits) la copa; (material)
el vidre; pl. (spectacles)
les ulleres
to go, anar*; to go away
(off), anar-se’n* (19); to
go back, tornar; to go
down, baixar; to go in(to),
entrar a; to go one’s own
way, anar* a la seva; to go
out, sortir*; to go through,
travessar; to go up, pujar;
to go up to (approach)
acostar-se a
good, bò [bòn] bona; a good,
ben bé; goodbye, adéu,
adéu-si aix, passi(न)-ho bé;
good morning, bon dia; to
be good at, saber* de,
tenéns el; to say good-
bye to, acomiadar(-se de)
government, el govern
to grab hold of, agafar-se a
grand-daughter, la neta
grandfather, l’avi (m.)
grandmother, l’àvia (f.)
grandson, el nèu
to be grateful for, agrair
gravy, el suc
great, gran
green, vèrd -a
grey, gris -a
ground, la terra
group, el grup, la colla
to grow, créixer*
guide, el guia
guide-book, la guia
gust of wind, la ventada

hair, el(s) cabell(s), el pèl
half, la meitat; mig mitja (28)
hammer, el martell
hand, la mà; by hand, a mà
to handle, manejar
to hang, penjar
happy, content -a; feliç
hard, dur -a
harshly, durament
hat, el barret


to have, tenir*; (auxiliary) haver* (10); to have just, acabar de (6); to have left, via quedar (21); to have something done, fer* + inf: (5); to have to, must, haver* de (9)
head, el cap
headache, el mal de cap;
(problem) el maldecap
to hear, sentir
hearing, l'orella (f.)
heart, el cor; by heart, de cor
heat, la calor

to heat (up), escalfar
heating, la calefacció
height, l'alçada (f.)
hello, hola
help, l'ajuda (f.), l'ajut (m.)
to help, ajudar
here, aquí, ací; here is, heus aquí, yet ací; here (you are), té, tingui
hero, l'herói (m.)
to hide, amagar
hire, el lloguer

to hire, llogar
history, la història

to hit, pegar
to (take) hold (of), agafar;
aguantar; to grab hold of,
agafar-se a; to hold (celebration) celebrar
hole, el forat
holidays, les vacances, les festes
home, (la) casa; at home, a
casa; home town, el poble;
to go home, anar* a casa
horrible, horroròs -osa; via
-qt -ota suffix
hospital, l'hospital (m.)
hot, calent -a; hot weather,
la calor; to be hot (people)
tenir* calor, (weather) fer*
calor (23)
hotel, l'hôtel (m.)
hour, l'hora (f.)
house, la casa
how, com; fins a quin punt

(28); how ...!, que ...!
(28); how many, quants,
quantes; how much, quant
however, però; per molt que;
however much, per més
that (25)
hundred, el centenar
to be hungry, tenir* gana
hurry, la prèss; to be in a
hurry, tenir* (portar)
prèss; to hurry, afanyarse;
hurry up!, apa!, au!
husband, el marit

ice-cream, el gelat
if, si
ill, malalt -a
to imagine, imaginar(-se)
immediately, de seguida, tot
seguit
impatience, la impaciència
to be important, importar (23)
impossible, impossible
to improve, millorar
in, a, en (21); (transport)
amb, en; in this (that) way,
així
inconvenience, l'inconveniènt
(m.)
influenza, la grip
inside, (a) dins (de), (a)
dintre (de); inside out, al
revés
instead of, en comptes de
insurance, l'assegurança (f.)

intelligent, intel·ligent
to intend to, pensar + inf.
interest, l'interès (m.)
to interest, interessar (23);
to take an interest in, interessar-se (en, per)
interesting, interessant
into, a, en (21), dins
to introduce, presentar; introduir
to invest, esmerçar, invertir
to invite, invitari, convidar
iron, el ferro
to iron, planxar
irony, la ironia

jacket, l'americana (f.)
to jot down, apuntar
journey, el viatge
judge, et jutge
jug, el gerro
juice, el succ

to jump, saltar
just, només; una mica; just
as, just like, tal com; to
have just, acabar de (6)
to justify, justificar


to keep, guardar; to keep
going, anar* fent, seguir
tirant (22); to keep quiet,
callar
key, la clau
to kill, matar
kilo(gramme), el quilo-
gramma
kilometre, el quilòmetre
kind (sort), la mena
kind, amable
king, el rei
kitchen, la cuina
knife, el ganiyet
to knock in, clavar
to know, saber*, conèixer*
(12)
lady, la senyora
language, la llengua, l'idioma (m.), el llenguatge
last, ultim -a, darrer -a; passat -ada
to last, durar
later, tard -a; ... later, al cap de ...; to be later, fer* tard
latest, ultim -a, darrer -a
the latter, aquest -a
to lead, conduir, portar
leaf, la fulla; (paper) el full
to learn, aprendre*
to leave, partir, sortir*, marxar, anar-se'n*; deixar; deixar córrer; to take one's leave, acomiadarse
left, esquerrre -a; on the left, a l'esquerra, a mà esquerra
to have left, via quedar; to be left over, sobrar (21)
leg, la cama
to lend, deixar
at length, llargament
lens, la lent
less, menys; less than, menys de
lesson, la lliçó
let to let (allow), deixar; to let know, avisar, fer* saber
letter, la carta; la lletra
library, la biblioteca
lie, la mentida
life, la vida
lift, l'escensor (m.)
to lift, aixecar, alçar, llevar
light, la llum; (lamp) el llum
like, çqm; like this (that), així
to like, via agradar (21); voler*
likeable, simpàtic -a
line, la ratlla, la línia
list, la llista
to listen (to), escolltar
lire, el litre
little, petit -a; (quantity) poc -a; a little, una mica
to live, viure*
lively, viu viva; animat -ada
living (livelihood), la vida
long, llarg -a; not long, no ... gaire
to look (at), mirar; fixar-se (en); (seem) semblar; to look for, buscar, cercar; to look like, semblar-se a; to look nice, fer* bonic, fer* goig
to lose, perdre
a lot, molt; molt -a (de)
to love, estimar; to fall in love with, enamorar-se de
to make, fer*
to make out, distingir
man, l'home (m.)
to mean, voler* dir; (want, intend), voler*, pensar
message, el missatge
money, el(s) diner(s)
mouth, el mes
mug, mugger, mugger -es; (+ adj.) via -issim

machine, la màquina
madam, senyora
magazine, la revista
maid, la minyona
majority, la majoria
to make, fer*
to make out, distingir
man, l'home (m.)
to mean, voler* dir; (want, intend), voler*, pensar
message, el missatge
money, el(s) diner(s)
mouth, el mes
mug, mugger, mugger -es; (+ adj.) via -issim

meeting, la reunió, la junta;
to call to a meeting, citar
member, el membre, el socí
to mend, adobar
method, el metode
metre, el metre
midday, el migdia
middle, el mig
mile, la milla
mill, el moli
millionth, milionèsim -a
minister, el ministre
mirror, el mirall
money, el(s) diner(s)
mouth, el mes
mug, mugger, mugger -es; (+ adj.) via -issim

misunderstanding, el malentès
to mix, barrejar; to get mixed up in, barrejar-se a/en
mixture, la barreja
modern, modern -a
moment, el moment; for the moment, de moment
money, el(s) diner(s)
mouth, el mes
mug, mugger, mugger -es; (+ adj.) via -issim

more, més; more than, més de; the more ... the more...
... çqm més ... més ...

mountain, el matí; (early) la matinada; good morning, bon dia
most, més; la majoria, la major part, gairebé tots -es; (+ adj.) via -issim

-issima suffix (20)
mother, la mare
mountain, la muntanya

to move, moure*; to get a
move on, afanyar-se, còr-
rer*
much, molt -a
must (to have to), haver* de
(9); must (probability, sup-
position) deure* (9)
nail, el clau
name, el nom
narrow, estret -a
nasty trick, la mala passada
near (to), (a) prop (de), (a la)
persona (de)
to need, necessitar, via
caldre*, fèr* falta (23)
neighbouring, vei
neither, tampoc; ni l’un -a ni
l’altre -a; neither ... nor
...; ni ... ni...
nephew, el nebot
nerve, el nervi
nervous, nerviós -osa
never, (nº) ... mai
nevertheless, per això
new, nou / nova
news, la notícia, les notícies
newspaper, el diari
next, altre -a; pròxim -a;
vinent, entrant
next day, l’endemà (m.)
nice, simpàtic -a, amable;
agradable; bonic -a; bö
[bön] bona; it would be

nice if ..., tant de bö
que ... (29)
niece, la nebòda
night, la nit; at night, de
nit(s); last night, anit (pas-
sada), aquesta nit
nil, zéro
no, ò
nobody, no one, ningú
none (at all), nò ... gens
(de), cap (13)
normally, normalment
nose, el nas
not, nò; not at all, nò gens
(13); not very (much, long),
nò ... gaire
notebook, la llibreta
nothing, (nº ... ) res (13)
otice, l’avis (m.); to take
notice of, fèr* cas de
to notify, avisar
novel, la novel-la
now, ara; right now, ara
matèix
to be a nuisance, fèr* nòsa
to observe, observar; fixar-se
en
occasionally, de tant en tant
of, de
to offend, ofendre
to offer, oferir (p.p. oferit)
office, el despactx, l’oficina
(f.)
officer, l’oficial (m.)
often, sovint

oil, l’oli (m.)
old, vell -a, antic -iga; to
be ... years old, tenir* ... 
ansys
on, a, en (21), sobre, damunt
(de); on top of, sobre,
damunt (de); on(wards),
edvant
once, una vegada; un cop
que; once and for all,
d’una vegada, una vegada
per totes
one another, l’un -a a l’altre
-a
onion, la ceba
only, només, solemment; únic
-a
open, obert -a
to open, obrir*
opposite, contrari -ària
or, o, bé
orange, la taronja
order, l’ordre (m.); in order
to, per (tal de) + inf. (21),
perquè (25)
to order, encarregar, dema-
inar; manar
to organize, organitzar, arre-
grar
other, altre -a
ought, haver* de (9)
out, outside, (a) fora (de)
over, (per) damunt (de); més
de
overcoat, l’abric (m.)
own, propi pròpia
pace, el pas
to pack (bag, case), fèr* la
maleta
packet, el paquet
padding, la palla
to paint, pintar
painting, la pintura
paper, el paper
parcel, el paquet
parents, els pares
to park, estacionar, aparcar
part, la part; (role) el paper
party, la festa
to pass, passar; (exam) apro-
var
passage, el passadís
passport, el pasaport
path, el camí, la drecèra
patience, la paciència
patio, el pati
patron saint, el patró
to pay (for), pagar; to be
paid, cobrar
peaceful, tranquil -il-la
peach, el prèsssec
(ball-point) pen, el bolígraf
pencil, el llapis
people, la gent, persones
perhaps, potser
permission, el permís
person, la persona
peseta, la pessèta
petrol, la benzina, la gasolina
photo(graph), la foto(grafia)
piano, el piano
picture, el quadre
### English–Catalan Vocabulary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Catalan</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pie, el pastís</td>
<td>to pour, posar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>piece, el tròss, la peça; little piece, el trosett</td>
<td>poverty, la pobresa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pile, the pila</td>
<td>practical, pràctic -a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pipe, the pipa</td>
<td>to prefer, estimar-se més</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to pitch (tent), parar</td>
<td>to prepare, preparar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pity, la llàstima</td>
<td>present, el regal; to make a present of, regalar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>place, el lloc</td>
<td>to present, presentar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plan, el projecte</td>
<td>president, el president</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plant, la planta</td>
<td>pretty, bonic -a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>play, the drama</td>
<td>prize, el prèmi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to play, jugar; (instrument, music) tocar</td>
<td>problem, el problema</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pleasant, agradable, amable</td>
<td>procession, la processó</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>please, si us plau</td>
<td>programme, el programa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to be pleased, alegrar-se</td>
<td>to prohibit, prohibir</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pleasure, el gust, el plaer</td>
<td>to promise, prometre (p.p. promès)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pocket, la butxaca</td>
<td>properly, com cal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>poet, el poeta</td>
<td>to protest, protestar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>point, el punt; la punta</td>
<td>to prove, provar; to prove to be, resultar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>police, la policia</td>
<td>provided that, amb que, sempre que, mentre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>policeman, el policia</td>
<td>public, públic -a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>political, polític -a</td>
<td>to publish, publicar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>politician, el polític</td>
<td>to punish, castigar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>politics, la política</td>
<td>pupil, l’alumne (m.), l’alumna (f.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>poor, pobre -a</td>
<td>purchase, la compra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>population, la població</td>
<td>push, l’empenta (f.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>port, el port</td>
<td>to put (on), posar; (question) fer*; to put on (light), encendre*; to put back, tornar; to put in, ficar; tirar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>post, the correu; post office, correus</td>
<td>to put an end to, posar fi a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to post, portar a correus, tirar a la bústia</td>
<td>to quarrel, barallar-se, renyir</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(cooking) pot, l’olla (f.)</td>
<td>quarter, el quart</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>potato, la patata</td>
<td>question, la pregunta; (matter, point) la qüestió</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pound, la lliura; pound sterling, la lliura esterlina</td>
<td>quick, ràpid -a; quickly, de pressa, ràpidament</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to reply, contestar</td>
<td>quiet: to be (come) quiet, to keep quiet, callar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>resemblance, la semblança</td>
<td>railway, el ferrocarril</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>responsible, responsable</td>
<td>to rain, ploure*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to rest, descansar</td>
<td>to raise, aixecar, alçar, llevar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>restaurant, el restaurant</td>
<td>rather, més aviat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>result, el resultat</td>
<td>to reach, arribar a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to return, tornar</td>
<td>ready, llest -a; preparat -ada</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ribbon, la cinta</td>
<td>to realize, adonar-se (de)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rice, l’arròs (m.)</td>
<td>really, de debò</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rich, ric -a</td>
<td>reason, la raó, el motiu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rid: to get rid of, desfer-se* de; llençar; treure*</td>
<td>to receive, rebre*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>right, el drèt; drèt -a; (with adv.) mateix; it is right that, convé que, cal que; on the right, a la dreta, a mà dreta; to be (all) right, estar* bé; to be quite right, tenir* tota la raó; to be right, tenir* raó</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>risky, arriscat -ada</td>
<td>road, la carretera</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>role, el paper</td>
<td>roof-garden, el terrat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>roof, the habitació (f.), la sala</td>
<td>round, rodó -ona</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rubbish, les escombraries</td>
<td>rule, la regla</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regime, les escombraries</td>
<td>to rummage (in, among), regirar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sad, trist -a</td>
<td>to run, córrer*; to run a business, portar un negoci</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>salary, el squ</td>
<td>for sale, per vendre</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
same, mateix -a; igual
sandwich, el sandvitx
sausage, la botifarra
to save, salvar; estalviar
savings bank, la caixa d’estalviar
to say, dir*
scale, l’escala (f.)
school, l’escola (f.), el col·legi
to scold, renyar
screw, el cargol
screwdriver, el tornavís
sea, el mar
sea-side, la platja
seated, sitting, assegut -uda
second, segon -ona
secret, el secret
secretary, el secretari, la secretària
to see, veure*; let’s see, a veure, vejam
to seem, semblar
-self, mateix -a
to sell, vendre*, despatxar
to send, enviar, trametre
(p.p. tramès)
to separate, separar
series, la sèrie
serious, gruè; serios -qs
servant, el criat, la criada
to serve, servir; despatxar
service, el servei
to set off, partir; to set out to do, proposar-se (de)
to settle differences, fer* les paus
shade, l’ombra (f.)
shadow, l’ombra (f.)
share (in company), l’acció
(f.)
to share out, repartir
sharp, fi fina; esmolat -ada
to shave, afairar(-se)
sheet, el llençol
to shine, brillar
ship, el vaixell
shirt, la camisa
shoe, la sabata
shop, la botiga
to be short of, via fer* falta,
faltar (21)
show, l’espectacle (m.)
to show, ensenyar
to shut up, callar (be silent);
tancar
side, la banda, el costat
silly, ximple
simple, senzill -a
since, com que, ja que; des
(de), d’ençà de; des que,
d’ençà que (26)
to sing, cantar
singer, el/la cantant
single, sòl -a; (unmarried),
soler -a; not a single, ni
un -a (sòl -a)
sir, senyor
sister, la germana
sister-in-law, la cunyada
to sit (down), seure*, as-
seure’s*
sitting, assegut -uda

skirt, la falda, la faldilla
(usually pl.)
to sleep, dormir
to be (feel) sleepy, tenir* son
to slip, via anar-se’n* (19)
slow, lent -a; to be slow
(watch) retardar
small, petit -a; via -et -eta
suffix
smart, elegant
to smile, somriure*
to smoke, fumar
to take a snack (afternoon),
berener
snow, la neu
so, així; tan; so many, tants
-es; so much, tant -a; so
that, perquè (25)
soap, el sabó
society, la societat
sock, el mitjó
soft, tou touva
soldier, el soldat
some, (2), uns unes; algun
-a, alguns, algunes
somebody, someone, algú
something, quelcom, (alg)una
cosa
sometimes, a vegades, de
vegades
son, el fill
song, la cançó
soon, aviat
to be sorry, sentir, via saber*
(gruè
sort, la mena
to sort out, arreglar
sound, el soroll
soup, la sopa
south, el sud; southwards,
cap al sud
to speak, parlar, enraonar
speech, el discurs
to spend, despèndre; (time)
passar
spoon, la cullera
spring, la font
square, la plaça
stain, la taca
stairs, stair-case, l’escala (f.)
stamp, el segell
star, l’estrella (f.)
station, l’estació (f.)
to stay, estar(-se)*, quedar
(-se)
steel, l’acer (m.)
stick, el bastó
to stick . . . into, ficar . . . a
still, encara
stocking, la mitja
stone, la pedra
stop, la parada
to stop, parar, aturar(-se);
estar*
storey, el pis
story, el conte, la història
straight, dret -a, recte -a;
straight away, de seguida;
straight to, de dret a
strange, estrany -a
stranger, el foraster, la foras-
terà
street, el carrer
go on,
strike, la vaga; to go on
strike, fer* vaga
it strikes me that, em fa
l'efecte que
to stroll, passejar(-se)
strong, fort-a
student, l'estudiant (m.), l'estudiant(a) (f.)
to study, estudiar
stupid, bèstia; stupid act,
{l'animalada (f.), la bestiessa
subject, el tema
to succeed, tenir* èxit, re-
eixir*
success, l'èxit (m.)
such, tal; such a, via tan
suddenly, de sobte
to suffer, patir, sofrir (p.p.
sofert)
suggestion, la suggerió, el
sugeriment
suitcase, la mala
ta
sun, el sol
supper, el sopar; to have
supper, sopar
supper-time, l'hora (f.) de
sopar
to support, suportar
to suppose, suposar
sure, segur-a
surname, el cognom
surprise, la sorpresa
to surprise, sorprendre, es-
tranyar; to be surprised,
estranyar-se
to suspect, sospitar
sweater, el suèter, el jersèi
to sweep, escombrar
sweet, dolç-a; el dolç
table, la taula
tablet, la pastilla
take, prendre*, agafar;
portar; to take away, em-
portar-se, endur-se*; to
take back, tornar; to take
down, baixar; to take off
(clothes) treure's*; to take
out (off, from, etc.), to
remove, treure*
to talk, parlar
tank, el dipòsit
taste, tastar
tax, l'impost (m.)
taxi, el taxi
tea, el té
teacher, el professor, la pro-
fessor(a); el mestre, la
mestressa
telephone, el telèfon
television, la televisió
tell, dir*
temperature, la temperatura
than, que; del que, que no
(pas) (20)
thank you, thanks, gràcies
that, això; allò; aquest -a,
aquell -a (14); que, qui, el
qual, la qual (15)
theatre, el teatre
then, llavors, aleshores;
doncs
there, allí, allà; there is, there
are, hi ha (9)
thick, espès -essa; gruixut
-uda
thickness, el gruix
thief, el lladró
thin, prim-a
thing, la cosa
to think, creure*, pensar(-se),
via semblar, fer* l'efecte;
to think (remember) to,
pensar a
to be thirsty, tenir* set
this, això; aquest -a (14)
through, per; a través de
to throw, tirar, llançar; to
throw away, llençar
ticket, el bitllet, l'entrada
(f.); return ticket, el bitllet
d'anar i tornar
time, l'hora (f.); la vegada,
el cop; el temps; from
time to time, de tant en
tant
tiny, petitó -ona
tip, la propina
tired, cansat
to, a; cap a; per, per a (21)
tobacco, el tabac
tobacconist's (shop), l'estanc
(m.)
today, avui
together, junt-a
tomato, el tomàquet
tomorrow, demà; day after
tomorrow, demà passat
too (also), també; too many,
too much), massa
tool, l'èquina (f.)
tooth, la dent
top: on top of, damunt (de);
at the top, a dalt; from top
to bottom, de dalt a baix;
right to (at) the top, at (to)
the very top, a dalt de tot
total, total
to touch, tocar
tourist, el/la turista
towards, cap (a)
towel, la toallola
tower, la torre
town, el poble
town hall, l'ajuntament (m.)
train, el tren
to travel, viatjar
traveller, el viatger
tree, l'arbre (m.)
trousers, els pantalons
true, cèrt -a; it is true, és
veritat
trunk, el bagu

to trust, fiar-se de, refiar-se
de
truth, la veritat

to try (out), provar; to try
to (to), intentar (de), provar
de
to turn, tombar; girar; tornar-se, fer-se*; to be some-
one's turn, via tocar; to
turn out, sortir*; to turn over (page), girar full good turn, la bona obra twice, dos cops, dues vegades typewriter, la màquina d'escriure typical, típic -a

ugly, llèig lleťja umbrella, el paraigua uncle, l’uncle (m.) under, sota (de), davall (de) underground (railway), el metre underneath, al dessota to understand, entendre, comprendre undertaking, l’empresa (f.) unfortunate, desgraciat -ada university, la universitat unless, si no until, fins (a); fins que up, amunt; (a) dalt to be upset, amoïnar-se, patir to use, emprar, fer* servir, servir-se de; to use up, gastar useful, útil useless, inútil

very, molt, via -íssim -íssima suffix (20); not very, no... gaire; poc victim, la víctima view, la vista visit, la visita to visit, visitar voice, la veu wages, la mesada, la setmana to wait (for), esperar waiter, el cambrèr waiting room, la sala d’espera to wake (up), despertar(-se) to walk, caminar, anar*; passejar(-se); to go out for a walk, sortir* a passeig wall, la paret wallet, la cartaia to want, voler*, desitjar; tenir* ganes de war, la guerría to wash, rentar(-se) to waste, perdre watch, el rellotge to watch, mirar; watch out!, compte! water, l’aigua (f.) to water, regar way, el camí; la manèra; to be in the way, fer* nosa to wear, portar, dur* weather, el temps week, la setmana to weigh, pesar; to weigh down on, aixafar, xafar weight, el pes well, bé, ben (26); doncs west, l’oest (m.) wet, mullat -ada what, què; quin -a (14); el que (15); what a lot of...!, quant -a, quants -es...! whatever, tot el que wheel, la roda when, quan; que (15) where, on, a on whether, si which, que, qui, què, el qual, la qual (15); which?, quin -a?

while, mentre; l’estònia (f.) white, blanc -a who(m), que, qui, el qual, la qual (15); who?, qui?
whole, tot -a; sencèr -a whose, del qual, de la qual why, per què wide, ample -a; to grow wider, eixamplar-se widow, la vídua widower, el vidiu wife, la mulèr, l’esposa (f.), la dona to win, guanyar to wind (up), donar còrd a a window, la finestra wine, el vi to wish, desitjar, voler*; tenir* ganes de with, amb within, (a) dins (de), (a) dintre (de); within a short time, d’aquí a poc temps without, sense witty, graclos -qa woman, la dona to wonder, preguntar-se wood, el bosc; la fusta wool, la llana word, la paraula work, la feina, el treball; l’obra (f.) to work, treballar; fer* feina; funcionar; pencar workshop, el taller world, el món; (adj.) mundial to be worth, valer*; to be worth while, valer* la pena to wrap (up), embolicar to write, escriure* to be wrong, equivocar-se; to take the wrong...; equivocar-se de...; what is wrong?, què passa?

year, l’any (m.) yellow, gròc groga yes, sí yesterday, ahir; day before yesterday, abans-d’ahir yet, encara; ja (6) young, jove; young lady, la senyoret; young people, els joves; younger, younger-est, (més) petit
Index

a
before an infinitive, 192–3, 194–5
combined with definite article, 33
a and en, 173–4
absolute superlative, 166
acabar de, 62
accentuation, 4–8
adjectives, 52–6
comparative and superlative, 163, 165–6
demonstrative, 114–15
position of, 52, 117–18
possessive, 67–9
adverbs, 214–15
comparative and superlative, 216–17
forming prepositions with de, 76–7
position of, 215
adverbial pronouns (en, hi), 137–9
age, 224
alphabet, 1
anar, 42
anan-se’n, 158
any, 36
article
definite, 27
without a noun, 76
indefinite, 27–8
neuter, 125–6
omission, 29, 33
special uses, 28–9
augmentative suffix, 246–7
bé, ben, 215–16
to be and to become, 158–9
cá, ca, can, cals, 62
capital letters, 25–6
com, com a, 174–5
commands, 116–17, 237–8
comparison, 163–5
compound tenses, 87–9
conditional indicative tense, 82
alternatives for ésser and haver, 245–6
conditional perfect tense, 88–9
conditional sentences, 244–5
conjugations
first, 41–2
irregular, 46–7, 254–66
second, 46–7
third (with Inceptive), 47–8
conjunctions governing the subjunctive, 208–10
consonants, 8–18
continents and countries, 271–73
contractions (al, del, pel, etc.), 33
can, caí, etc., 62
dates, 223–4
days of the week, 36
dé
before infinitive, 193–4
combined with article or contracted, 33
constructions with adverbial en, 138
general uses, 33–4
partitive, 70
demonstratives
adjectives, 114–15
pronouns, 115
déure in expressions of supposition, 83
diminutive suffix, 247
diphthongs, 5
dir, 61
direct object pronouns, 130–1
en with names, 28–9
en (n’, -ne’, -n’), 137–8
en and a, 173–4
en before infinitive, 195
ésser (ser), 29
ésser and estar, 94–7, 101–3
exclamations, 233
exhortations, 238
familiar and polite second person, 42–3
fer, 56–7
substituted by fúmer, 248–9
fear, verbs expressing, 202
fractions, 231
fúmer, 248–9
future indicative tense, 81–2
in relative clauses, 211
in temporal clauses, 82, 209–10
future perfect tense, 88
gerund, 182–4, 185–6
in progressive tenses, 185
government of infinitives, 192–5
haver, 83–4
in compound tenses, 87–9
in expressions of obligation, 83
hi, 138–9, 159
replacing li, 148–9
hom, 189
imperative mood
affirmative, 116–17
negative, 237–8
and subjunctive, 237
imperfect indicative tense, 60–2
v. pretérite, 75
imperfect subjunctive tense, 206
impersonal expressions, 189–91
impersonal verbs, 190–1
inceptive verbs, 47–8
indefinite adjectives, 109–11
indefinite pronouns, 111
indirect object
pronouns, 130–1
uses of, 140–1
infinitive, 40
government of, 192–5
in adverbial expressions of time, 195
interjections, 97
interrogation, 29–30, 48–9
irregular verbs, 46–8, 254–66
ja, 63
il, indirect object replaced by hi, 148–9
llur, llurs, 67–8
measurements, 224–5
negation, 37, 107–9
neuter article el, 125–6
neuter pronoun ho, 139–40
nouns
gender, 27
plural, 34–6
numbers
cardinal, 30, 38, 222–3
collective, 231–2
ordinal, 230
obligation, 83–4
partitives, 231
(no...pas, 108–9
més que no pas in comparisons, 164
passive voice, 102–3
past anterior tense, 240–1
past participle, 87–8
agreement of, 167–8, 192
pejorative suffix, 247
per combined with article, 33
per and per a, 175–8
perfect indicative tense, 88
perfect infinitive, 89
perfect subjunctive, 200
personal names, 271–2
use of article with, 28–9
pluperfect indicative tense, 88
pluperfect subjunctive tense, 206
plurals
adjectives, 54–5
nouns, 28, 34–6
polite forms, 42–3
possession
via indirect object, 141
with de, 33
possessives
adjectives, 67–9
pronouns, 69
prepositions
from adverbs (+ de), 76–7
governing infinitives, 192–5
with numbers, 225
prepositional objects, 172
Index 385

present indicative tense, 40–1
present participle, 182
present subjunctive tense, 199–200
preterite indicative tense
  periphrastical form, 74
  simple form, 238–40
  v. imperfect, 75
  v. perfect, 89–90
preterite subjunctive tense, 206–7
probability, 83
progressive tenses, 185
pronouns, adverbial (en, hi), 137–9
pronouns, demonstrative, 115
pronouns, personal
  combination of two, 145–8
  combination of three, 149–50
  combination of third person
  pronouns, 148–9, facing p. 266
strong object, 129–30
subject, 29
weak object, 130–3
pronouns, possessive, 69
pronouns, relative
  comopand, 123–4
  stressed, 122–3
  unstressed, 122
pronunciation, 1–25
punctuation, 25–6
qui, as subject of relative clause, 124
quin - a, 115–16
reinforcing questions, 48–9
reciprocal use of reflexive, 156
reflexive, uses of, 156–7 158–9
reflexive pronouns
  strong 129–30
  weak, 159
reflexive verbs, 154–5
relatives
  compound, 123–4
  stressed, 122–3
  unstressed, 122
saber and conocer, 103–4
saber v. poder, 103–4
sequence of tenses with subjunctive, 207–8
sin, 232
stress, 6–7
subject pronouns, 29
subjunctive
  after si, 244–5
  imperfect, 206
  perfect, 200
  pluriperm, 206
  present, 199–200
  preterite, 206–7
  uses in main clauses, 238
  uses in subordinate clauses, 200–3, 207–11
suffixes, 246–8
superlatives, 165–6
syllabification, 4–6
temporal expressions, 82, 209–10, 217–18
tenir, 37
  in compound tenses, 89
tenses
  compound, 87–9
  preterite v. imperfect, 75
  preterite v. perfect, 89–90
  progressive, 185
  see also under the name of each
tense
than in comparisons, 164–5
time of day, 225–7
towns, 269–70
valer, 82–3
verbs
  inceptive, 47–8
  irregular, 46–8
  orthographical changes, 41–2, 61, 199, 239
  see also under headings of
  verbal tenses and functions
vowels, 1–4
weather, 190–1
word liaison, 19–21
word order, 56, 117–18
written accent, 7–8

Catalan
Alan Yates

Catalan is the mother tongue of several million people living principally in eastern Spain and is spoken in Barcelona and the popular tourist areas of the Mediterranean coast and Balearic islands.

This course has been designed to meet the needs of both the visitor to Spain and the student who comes to Catalan through Hispanic studies. Each of the thirty graded lessons incorporates examples and exercises, selected for their variety and interest as well as for their coverage of basic grammar and common idioms. There is also an extensive vocabulary and suggested further reading for those who wish to pursue their studies of this fascinating language.

NTC Publishing Group
Long-rensomed as the authoritative source for self-guided learning—with more than 30 million copies sold worldwide—the Teach Yourself series includes over 200 titles in the fields of languages, crafts, hobbies, sports, and other leisure activities.